

# THULAMELA LOCAL MUNICIPALITY



## UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS

**BID NUMBER: 40/2023/2024**

**CIDB GRADING: 7 CE OR HIGHER**

<b>THULAMELA LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</b>		<b>EMPLOYER'S AGENT</b>	
Contact Person: Mr T.P Mudzili Tel: (015) 962 7629 Mr R Mulaudzi Tel: (015) 962 7607		Contact Person: Mr. Neluheni P.D. Tel: (015) 291 4365	
<b>Name of Bidder:</b>			
<b>Bid Amount (VAT Incl.):</b>			
<b>Bidder Address:</b>			
<b>Receipt Number:</b>			
<b>Email Address:</b>			
<b>Contact numbers:</b>	<b>Tel:</b>	<b>Cell:</b>	<b>Fax:</b>
 <b>Municipal Infrastructure Grant</b>	 <b>EXPANDED PUBLIC WORKS PROGRAMME</b> Creating opportunities towards human fulfilment		

## CONTENTS

### THE TENDER

#### PART T1: TENDERING PROCEDURES

T1.1	Tender Notice and Invitation to Tender (White pages) .....	T.3
T1.2	Tender Data (Pink pages) .....	T7

#### PART T2: RETURNABLE DOCUMENTS

T2.1	List of Returnable Schedules (Yellow pages) .....	T.24
T2.2	Other Documents required for Tender Evaluation (Yellow pages) .....	T.62
T2.3	Returnable Schedules that will be Incorporated into the Contract (Yellow pages) .....	T.86

### THE CONTRACT

#### PART C1: AGREEMENT AND CONTRACT DATA

C1.1	Form of Offer and Acceptance (White pages) .....	C.3
C1.2	Performance Guarantee (White pages) .....	C.8
C1.3	Contract Data (White pages) .....	C.11
C1.4	Performance Guarantee for Materials and Equipment Not Yet Built into the works (White pages) .....	C.26
C1.5	Retention Money Guarantee (White pages) .....	C.29
C1.6	AGREEMENT IN TERMS OF THE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT 85 of 1993 AND APPOINTMENT AS MINE MANAGER IN TERMS OF SECTION 3(1)(a) OF MINE HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT 29 of 1996. ....	C.31
C1.7	ABSTRACTS OF THE MINE HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT No. 29 OF 1996 AND AMENDMENT ACT No. 72 OF 1997 .....	C.38
C1.8	Agreement with Adjudicator (White pages) .....	C.39

---

## **PART C2: PRICING DATA**

C2.1	Pricing Instructions (Yellow pages) .....	C.42
C2.2	Bills of Quantities (Yellow pages) .....	C.46

## **PART C3: SCOPE OF WORK**

C3.1	Description of Works (Blue pages) .....	C.83
C3.2	Engineering (Blue pages) .....	C.90
C3.3	Procurement (Blue pages) .....	C.91
C3.4	Construction (Blue pages) .....	C.97
C3.5	Management (Blue pages) .....	C.216

## **PART C4: SITE INFORMATION**

C4.1	Site Information (Green pages) .....	C.218
C4.2	Locality Plan (Green pages) .....	C.220

## **PART C5: ANNEXURES**

C5.1 :	Proforma Documents (White Pages) .....	C.222
C5.2 :	Contract Drawings (White Pages) .....	C.226
C5.3 :	Government Procurement : General Condition of Contract - July 2010 (White pages) .....	C.230

# THE TENDER

**PART T1: TENDERING PROCEDURES**

**PART T2: RETURNABLE DOCUMENTS**

---

## PART T1: TENDERING PROCEDURES

T1.1	TENDER NOTICE AND INVITATION TO TENDER .....	T.3
T1.2	TENDER DATA .....	T.7



## T1.1 TENDER NOTICE AND INVITATION TO TENDER



### THULAMELA LOCAL MUNICIPALITY

#### INVITATION TO BID

#### UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT. 3 INTERNAL STREETS

Thulamela Local Municipality is inviting capable service providers for the Upgrading of Shayandima Ext. 3 Internal Streets.

Bid number	Project Description	Contact Persons	CIDB Grading	Compulsory Briefing	Evaluation Criteria
No. 40/2023/2024	Upgrading of Shayandima Ext. 3 Internal Streets	Mr P.D. Neluheni (015) 291 4365 Mr Mulaudzi R. (015) 962 7551 Mr T.P. Mudzili (015) 962 7629	7CE or Higher	Location: Thulamela Municipality Council Chamber Date: 24 November 2023 Time : 11H00	80/20 Preference points system and functionality

Tender documents are obtainable from Procurement Office, Office No. 02 at Thulamela Local Municipality Head Office, during the following times: 08:00 to 15:30 (Monday to Friday) as from **13 November 2023 at a non-refundable bid price of R3.00 per page**. or can alternatively be downloaded from Thulamela website ([www.thulamela.gov.za](http://www.thulamela.gov.za)) for free. The bidders should also download SCM forms that are found in the **SCM-FORMS sub folder** on the website and complete as part of the Bid documents.

**The service providers must submit the completed Bid documents (in black ink) and hand deliver or courier them to Thulamela Municipality. All completed Bid documents (hand delivered or couriered) must be dropped in the BID BOX before the closing date and time of the Bids closure. The onus is on the service providers to make sure the Bid documents are submitted on time and late submission won't be accepted.**

**Interested service providers must attend a compulsory briefing session on 24 November 2023 at 11h00. Location: Thulamela Municipality Council Chamber.**

**Interested Contractors or service providers** will be expected to submit the Bid documents with the following compulsory requirements.

- ❖ **Tax Compliance Status Letter or Tax Compliance Pin Number.**
- ❖ **Company registration documents (e.g., CK).**
- ❖ **Company profile.**
- ❖ **Valid proof of registration with CIDB**
- ❖ **Proof of registration on CSD**
- ❖ **Curriculum vitae of the proposed project team**
- ❖ **Organogram of the project team indicating project key personnel**
- ❖ **Certified copy of partnership or JV agreement (if tenderer is a partnership or JV)**
- ❖ **If the company is required by law to be audited, we need audited annual financial statements for the past three (3) years or audited financial statements since the establishment of the company if the company was established during the past three (3) years. If the company is not required by law to be audited, please provide us with a letter from a registered accountant stating that you are not required to be audited and the reasons thereof.**
- ❖ **Certified copy of partnership or JV agreement (if tenderer is a partnership or JV)**
- ❖ **Proof of municipal rates and taxes or municipal service charges owed by the bidder and ALL its directors, not in arrears for more than 3 months. (The proof of municipal rates and taxes or municipal service charges to be submitted must not be older than three (3) months from the closing date of the bid. Attach valid lease agreement in case of rental of office facilities and municipal clearance in respect of the areas exempted from billing by municipalities.**
- ❖ **List of Roads and Stormwater projects completed by the contractor in the past 10 years with clients contact details, description, and contract values. NB: Only projects that were completed within the municipal environment or RAL or SANRAL (Attach signed appointment letters, completion certificates and reference letters). NB: The municipality reserves the right to conduct verification with the referred clients of the similar completed projects.**



- ❖ All documentation listed in the Tender document under Part T2: Compliance with Tender Conditions and other Requirements under section T2.1 and T2.2 should be submitted as compulsory requirements.
- ❖ All records of any additional information posted should be submitted as compulsory requirements and it is the responsibility of the bidders to check with the respective project engineer or client representatives (contact details as provided above) if there are any additional information before submission of the tender documents.

Tenderers should note the following: Functionality will be scored out of **100%** and the **minimum threshold to qualify is 70%**. Tenderers who fail to meet the minimum threshold will not be considered for further evaluation. **The submitted tender document must contain all pages, as indicated, in specified colour, page sequence (*incl. double sided*) and binding method. The binding method must be staples plus an adhesive tape binding.**

	TARGETED GOALS:	WEIGHT
<b>Points for functionality</b>	Experience in Road and Stormwater Construction Projects: (Demonstrated company experience in Roads and Stormwater project and past performance).	<b>40</b>
	Key staff – Demonstrated experience- Qualifications and experience.	<b>25</b>
	Proof of Plant and Equipment owned by the bidder: Details of major equipment owned (please provide proof of ownership).	<b>25</b>
	Valid proof of license disk and registration	
	Financial Reference	<b>10</b>
<b>TOTAL</b>		<b>100</b>

Bids will be assessed under the provisions of the following Acts and its Regulations: Municipal Finance Management Act, (Act 56 of 2003); PPPFA, Supply Chain Management Policy of the municipality in accordance with the specifications and in terms of **80/20 preferential points system and functionality as per the advert and bid document.**

Specific Goals Categories (CSD will be used for verification)	Number of Points (80/20 system) 20 Points breakdown
1. 100% Black ownership	10
2. 100% Women ownership	5
3. Youth	3
4. Disability (Medical certificate will be used to verify the disability status of the bidder).	2

Sealed bid documents must be submitted in envelopes clearly indicating **“BID NUMBER AND DESCRIPTION”** on the outside and must reach the undersigned by depositing it into the official Bid Box at the front of the main entrance to **Thohoyandou Civic Centre, Old Agriven Building, Thohoyandou**, by no later than **11h00 on, 13 December 2023.**

The Municipality is not bound to accept the lowest Bid and reserves the right to accept any part of a Bid. Bids must remain valid for a period of ninety (90) days after closing date of the submission thereof.

Bids may only be submitted on the bid documentation provided by the municipality.

***NB: Bids which are late, incomplete, unsigned, completed by pencil, sent by telegraph, facsimile, electronically (Fax), or E- mail and without the compulsory requirements will be disqualified.***

\_\_\_\_\_  
MR M.T MAKUMULE  
MUNICIPAL MANAGER

\_\_\_\_\_  
DATE

## T1.2 TENDER DATA

The Conditions of Tender are the Standard Conditions of Tender as contained in Annex F of the CIDB Standard for Uniformity in Construction Procurement, (July 2015) as published in Government Gazette No 38960, Board Notice 136 of 2015 of 10 July 2015. (See www.cidb.org.za).

The Standard Conditions of Tender make several references to the Tender Data for details that apply specifically to this tender. The Tender Data shall have precedence in the interpretation of any ambiguity or inconsistency between it and the Standard Conditions of Tender.

Each item of data given below is cross-referenced to the clause in the Standard Conditions of Tender to which it applies.

Clause Number	Tender Data
<p><b>2. <u>EMPLOYER</u></b>   <b>CI. F1.1</b></p>	<p>The “Employer” is “<b>THULAMELA MUNICIPALITY</b>”</p> <p>The Employer’s domicilium citandi et executandi (permanent physical business address) is:            Thulamela Municipality, Civic Centre, Old Agriven Building, Thohoyandou.</p> <p>The Employer’s address for communication relating to this project is:            Private Bag x 5066, Thohoyandou, 0950.</p>
<p><b>3. <u>TENDER DOCUMENTS</u></b>   <b>CI. F.1.2</b></p>	<p>“The following documents form part of this tender:</p> <p><b>VOLUME 1</b></p> <p><b>THE TENDER</b></p> <p><b>Part T1: Tendering procedures:</b></p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">T1.1 Tender notice and invitation to tender</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">T1.2 Tender Data</p> <p><b>Part T2: Returnable documents</b></p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">T2.1 Returnable Schedules required for Tender Evaluation</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">T2.2 Other Documents required for Tender Evaluation</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">T2.3 Returnable Schedules that will be incorporated into the Contract</p> <p><b>THE CONTRACT</b></p> <p><b>Part C1: Agreements and contract data</b></p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">C1.1 Form of Offer and Acceptance</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">C1.2 Performance Guarantee</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">C1.3 Contract Data</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">C1.4 Performance Guarantee for materials and equipment not yet built into the works</p>

Clause Number	Tender Data
	<p>C1.5 Retention money guarantee</p> <p>C1.6 Agreement in Terms of the Occupational Health and Safety Act 85 of 1993</p> <p>C1.7 Abstracts of the mine health and safety Act No 29 of 1996 and Amendment act No.72 of 1997</p> <p>C1.8 Agreement with Adjudicator</p> <p><b>Part C2: Pricing data</b></p> <p>C2.1 Pricing instructions</p> <p>C2.2 Bills of quantities</p> <p><b>Part C3: Scope of work</b></p> <p>C3.1 Description of Works</p> <p>C3.2 Engineering</p> <p>C3.3 Procurement</p> <p>C3.4 Construction</p> <p>C3.5 Management</p> <p><b>Part C4: Site information</b></p> <p>C4.1 Site Information</p> <p>C4.2 Locality Plan</p> <p><b>Part C5: Annexures</b></p> <p>C5.1 : Proforma Documents</p> <p>C5.2 : Contract Drawings List</p> <p><b>VOLUME 2</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tender Drawings</li> </ul>
<p><b>4. EMPLOYER'S AGENT</b> <b>Cl. F.1.4</b></p>	<p>The Employer's agents are: <b>a) Tshashu Consulting and Project Managers</b></p> <p><u>Physical Address:</u> Suite 11, Office 06 Hans van Rensburg street Polokwane 0700 Tel.: (015) 291 4365 E-mail: <a href="mailto:admin@tsconsulting.co.za">admin@tsconsulting.co.za</a></p> <p><u>Postal Address:</u> P.O.BOX 5617 Polokwane-North 0750 Fax: (015) 291 5392</p>
<p><b>5. TENDERER'S OBLIGATIONS</b></p>	

Clause Number	Tender Data
<p><b>5.1. <u>Eligibility</u></b> <b>Cl. F.2.1</b></p>	<p>Only those tenderers who are registered with the CIDB or are capable of being so prior to the evaluation of submissions, in a contractor grading designation equal to or higher than a contractor grading designation determined in accordance with the sum tendered, are eligible to have their tenders evaluated.</p> <p>Joint ventures are eligible to submit tenders provided that:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. every member of the joint venture is registered with the CIDB;</li> <li>2. the lead partner has a contractor grading designation of minimum <b>7CE (or higher)</b></li> <li>3. the combined contractor grading designation calculated in accordance with the Construction Industry Development Regulations is equal to or higher than a contractor grading designation determined in accordance with the sum tendered for an <b>7CE (or higher)</b>.</li> </ol>
<p><b>5.2. <u>Site Visit</u></b> <b>Cl. F.2.7</b></p>	<p>The arrangements for a site visit meeting are:</p> <p><b>Location: Shayandima</b></p> <p><b>Time : After the clarification meeting)</b></p>
<p><b>5.3. <u>Insurance</u></b> <b>Cl. F.2.9</b></p>	<p>No insurance cover will be provided by the Employer.</p>
<p><b>5.4. <u>Alternative Tender Offers</u></b> <b>Cl. F. 2.12</b></p>	<p>No alternative tender offers will be considered</p>
<p><b>5.1. <u>Submitting a Tender Offer</u></b> <b>Cl. F2.13</b></p>	<p><b>5.1.1. Whole of the Works (Cl. F.2.13.1)</b></p> <p>Tenderers shall offer to provide for the whole of the Works identified.</p> <p><b>5.1.2. Original tender documents (Cl. F2.13.3)</b></p> <p>The original tender document, issued to the Bidder, shall be submitted in its entirety. No copies are required.</p> <p><b>5.1.3. Marking of Tender Submissions (Cl. F2.13.5)</b></p> <p>The complete tender documents shall be enclosed and sealed in a single envelope, marked:</p>

Clause Number	Tender Data
	<p>"BID NO. 40/2023/2024: UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS IN THULAMELA MUNICIPALITY OF THE VHEMBE DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY"</p> <p>The Employer's address for delivery of tender offers to be shown on each tender submission package is the Tender Box located at:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">The Tender Box Municipality's Boardroom, Civic Centre, Old Agriven Building, Thohoyandou</p> <p><b>5.1.4 Two envelope system (Cl. F.2.13.6)</b></p> <p>A two-envelope procedure will not be followed.</p> <p><b>5.1.5. Closing time (Cl. F.2.15)</b></p> <p>The closing time for submission of tender offers is: 12H00</p> <p>Telegraphic, telephonic, telex, facsimile, e-mail, electronic and late tender offers will not be accepted.</p> <p><b>5.1.6. Tender offer validity (Cl. F.2.16)</b></p> <p>The tender offer validity period is 90 days after tender closing date.</p> <p><b>5.1.7. Clarification of tender offer after submission (Cl. F.2.17)</b></p> <p>Delete the last part of the second sentence, commencing with the word "and". Furthermore, delete the last two sentences of Cl. F.2.17.</p> <p>Add the following sentence: "The rates stated by the Bidder shall be binding".</p> <p><b>5.1.8. Provide other Material (Cl. F.2.18.1)</b></p> <p>Upon request by the Employer, the Bidder shall promptly supply any other material that has a bearing on the tender offer, the bidder's commercial position (including, where applicable, notarized joint venture agreements), preferencing arrangements, or samples of materials, considered necessary by the Employer for the purpose of a full and fair assessment. Should the Bidder not provide the information or material called for, by the time for submission stated in the Employer's request, the Employer will regard the tender offer as being non-responsive.</p>

Clause Number	Tender Data
	<p><b>5.1.9. Letter of Intent</b></p> <p>The bidder is required to submit with his tender a letter of intent from an approved financial institution undertaking to provide the Construction Guarantee in the format included in Part C1.2 of this procurement document.</p> <p><b>5.1.10 Certificates (Cl. F.2.23)</b></p> <p>The following certificates are to be provided with this tender:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Provide a valid Central Supplier Database (CSD) number.</li> <li>b) Compensation Fund registration certificate</li> <li>c) Certificate of Contractor Registration issued by the Construction Industry Development Board or a copy of the application Form for registration in terms of the Construction Industry Development Board Act (Form F006). A minimum grading of 7CE or Higher is required.</li> <li>d) A copy of a valid Tax Compliance Status letter. No tender will be awarded to a bidder whose tax matters are not in order with the South African Revenue Service (SARS) at the time of award.</li> <li>e) Documents and Schedules listed in Part T2.</li> </ul> <p>Important Note:</p> <p>Failure to provide the required particulars as per the above-listed certificates implies a non-responsive tender and warrants rejection of the tender on account of non-compliance with the requirements of the Tender Data</p>
<p><b><u>EMPLOYER'S UNDERTAKING</u></b></p>	
<p><b>6. <u>Opening of Tender Submissions</u></b> <b><u>Cl. F3.4</u></b></p>	<p>The time and location for opening of the tender offers are:</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>11:00 on 13 December 2023</b></p> <p><b>Location: The Tender Box</b> <b>Municipality's Boardroom,</b> <b>Civic Centre, Old Agriven Building, Thohoyandou</b></p>
<p><b>7. <u>Arithmetical Errors</u></b></p> <p><b>Cl. F.3.9</b></p>	<p>Delete Clause 3.9.1</p> <p>Insert the following new clause</p> <p>F.3.9.1 Check responsive bids for discrepancies between amounts in words and amounts in figures. Where there is a discrepancy between the amounts in figures and the amount in words, the amount in words shall govern.</p>

Clause Number	Tender Data
	<p>F3.9.2 Check the highest ranked bid or bidder with the highest number of bid evaluation points after the evaluation of bid offers in accordance with F.3.11 for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) the gross misplacement of the decimal point in any unit rate;</li> <li>b) omissions made in completing the pricing schedule or bills of quantities; or</li> <li>c) arithmetic errors in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) line-item totals resulting from the product of a unit rate and a quantity in bills of quantities or schedules of prices;</li> <li style="text-align: center;">or</li> <li>(ii) the summation of the prices</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>F.3.9.3 Notify the bidder of all errors or omissions that are identified in the bid offer and either confirm the bid offer as bid or accept the corrected total of prices.</p> <p>F.3.9.4 Where the bidder elects to confirm the bid offer as bid, correct the errors as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) If bills of quantities or pricing schedules apply and there is an error in the line-item total resulting from the product of the unit rate and the quantity, the line-item total shall govern, and the rate shall be corrected. Where there is an obviously gross misplacement of the decimal point in the unit rate, the line-item total as quoted shall govern, and the unit rate shall be corrected.</li> <li>b) Where there is an error in the total of the prices either as a result of other corrections required by this checking process or in the tenderer's addition of prices, the total shall govern and the tenderer will be asked to revised selected item prices (and their rates if bills of quantities apply) to achieve the tendered total of the prices.</li> </ul>
<p><b>8. EVALUATION OF BIDS</b> <b>Cl. F.3.11</b></p>	<p>The procedure for the evaluation of responsive tenders is Method 2 (Price and Preferences). No Technical evaluation. Only compliance and Price and Preference point system will be applied.</p> <p>The Preference Point System assigns a score to each tenderer based on the tender price and on the tenderer's Specific Goals status. These scores are combined to determine an overall score for the tender. The tenderer with the highest score will be considered for acceptance.</p>



Clause Number	Tender Data
	<p>The Preference Point System will be applied as follows.</p> <p>For tenders below R50 million</p> <p>80 points are assigned to price</p> <p>Up to 20 points are assigned to Specific Goals status For tenders of R50 million and above:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 90 points are assigned to price</li> <li>• Up to 10 points are assigned to Specific Goals status</li> </ul> <p>Points scored will be rounded off to the nearest 2 decimal places.</p>
<p><b>9. <u>ACCEPTANCE OF TENDER OFFER</u></b> <b>CI. F3.13</b></p>	<p>Tender offers will only be accepted if:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) The bidder has in his or her possession an original valid Tax Clearance Certificate issued by the South Africa Revenue Services or in case wherein the Bidder provide the municipality with a printed tax clearance from e-filing, it is compulsory that the bidder provide municipality with tax compliance status pin for verification;</li> <li>b) The bidder is registered with the Construction Industry Development Board in an appropriate contractor grading designation.  A minimum grading of <b>7 CE</b> is required for the main contractor;</li> <li>c) The bidder has demonstrated previous experience within the local government spheres, Provincial and National Departments; i.e Municipal, RAL and SANRAL with the type of work required under this contract, having successfully completed projects of Roads and Stormwater scope and size.</li> <li>d) The bidder or any of its principals is not listed on the Register of Tender Defaulters in terms of the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act of 2004 as a person prohibited from doing business with the public sector; and</li> <li>e) The bidder has not abused the Employer’s Supply Chain Management System.</li> <li>f) The bidder has not failed to perform on any previous contract.</li> <li>g) Has completed the Compulsory Enterprise Questionnaire and there are no conflicts of interest which may impact on the bidder’s ability to perform the contract in the best interests of the employer or potentially compromise the tender process.</li> </ol>

Clause Number	Tender Data
<p><b>10. <u>PROVIDE COPIES OF THE CONTRACT DOCUMENT</u></b> CI. F.3.18</p>	<p>The number of paper copies of the signed contract to be provided by the employer is one.</p>
<p><b>11. <u>COMPLIANCE/ DISQUALIFICATION</u></b></p>	<p><b>BIDDERS WILL BE DISQUALIFIED FOR:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>FAILURE TO COMPLETE AND SIGN THE FORM OF OFFER PAGE;</b></li> <li>• <b>FAILURE TO COMPLETE AND SUBMIT A PRICED BILL OF QUANTITIES IN FULL;</b></li> <li>• <b>FAILURE TO DULY COMPLETE FORM T 2.2 C (WHERE REQUIRED) THAT INCLUDES FOR ANY ADDENDA THAT MAY HAVE BEEN ISSUED WHERE SUCH ADDENDA HAS A MATERIAL EFFECT ON THE PRICING OF THE TENDER;</b></li> <li>• <b>FAILURE TO BE REGISTERED AND ACTIVE WITH CIDB ON THE RELEVANT GRADING;</b></li> <li>• <b>COMPLETING TENDER DOCUMENT IN PENCIL OR ERASABLE INK;</b></li> <li>• <b>IN THE CASE OF A BIDDER WHO DURING THE LAST FIVE YEARS HAS BEEN TERMINATED ON PREVIOUS CONTRACTS WITH THULAMELA MUNICIPALITY</b></li> <li>• <b>FAILURE TO ATTEND THE COMPULSORY SITE BRIEFING</b></li> <li>• <b>FAILURE TO DULY COMPLETE ALL MBD FORMS AS ISSUED ON PART T2 OF THE BID DOCUMENT</b></li> <li>• <b>A TENDER THAT IS RECEIVED AFTER THE CLOSING DATE AND TIME</b></li> </ul>
<p><b>12. <u>PRICE AND PREFERENCE</u></b></p>	<p>Having completed compliance checks, the procedure for the evaluation of compliant tenders is Method 2 (Price and Specific Goals).</p> <p>The Preference Point System assigns a score to each tenderer based on the tender price and on the tenderer's Specific Goals status. These scores are combined to determine an overall score for the tender. The tenderer with the highest score will be considered for acceptance.</p> <p>Points scored will be rounded off to the nearest 2 decimal places.</p> <p><b>FORMULA FOR SCORING TENDER PRICE</b></p> <p>The following formula will be used to calculate the points for price. <b>Ps = X [1 – (Pt – Pmin)]</b></p> <p><b>Pmin</b> Where</p> <p><b>Ps</b> = Points scored for comparative price of tender under consideration  <b>Pt</b> = Comparative price of tender under consideration  <b>Pmin</b> = Comparative price of lowest acceptable tender  <b>X</b> = Points assigned to price</p>

Clause Number	Tender Data										
	<p><b>POINTS AWARDED FOR SPECIFIC GOALS</b></p> <p>Points will be awarded for Specific Goals, in accordance with the Preferential Procurement Regulations 2022 published in Government Gazette No. 47452 dated 4 November 2022. The table overleaf is applicable in this regard:</p> <p>The following table is applicable.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Specific Goals Categories (CSD will be used for verification)</th> <th>Number of Points (80/20 system) 20 Points breakdown</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1. 100% Black ownership</td> <td>10</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2. 100% Women ownership</td> <td>5</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3. Youth</td> <td>3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4. Disability (Medical certificate will be used to verify the disability status of the bidder).</td> <td>2</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>TOTAL PREFERENCE POINTS</b></p> <p>The total preference points for a tender are calculated with the formula <b>PP = Ps + Pbee</b> where  <b>PP</b> is the total number of preference points scored by the tenderer  <b>Ps</b> is the points scored for the comparative price of the tenderer, and <b>Pbee</b> is the number of points awarded to the tenderer based on Specific Goals number of points.</p>	Specific Goals Categories (CSD will be used for verification)	Number of Points (80/20 system) 20 Points breakdown	1. 100% Black ownership	10	2. 100% Women ownership	5	3. Youth	3	4. Disability (Medical certificate will be used to verify the disability status of the bidder).	2
Specific Goals Categories (CSD will be used for verification)	Number of Points (80/20 system) 20 Points breakdown										
1. 100% Black ownership	10										
2. 100% Women ownership	5										
3. Youth	3										
4. Disability (Medical certificate will be used to verify the disability status of the bidder).	2										
<p><b>13. <u>CONDITIONS OF CONTRACT AWARD</u></b></p>	<p>Contracts will only be awarded if:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A copy of a valid Tax Compliance Status letter. No tender will be awarded to a bidder whose tax matters are not in order with the South African Revenue Service (SARS) at the time of award.</li> <li>the tenderer submits a letter of intent from an approved financial institution undertaking to provide the Construction Guarantee in the format included in Part C1.3 of this procurement document;</li> </ol>										

Clause Number	Tender Data
	<p>c) the tenderer is registered with the Construction Industry Development Board in an appropriate contractor grading designation;</p> <p>d) the tenderer or any of its directors/shareholders is not listed on the Register of Tender Defaulters in terms of the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act of 2004 as a person prohibited from doing business with the public sector;</p> <p>e) the tenderer has not:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. abused the Employer's Supply Chain Management System; or</li> <li>ii. failed to perform on any previous contract and has been given a written notice to this effect;</li> </ul> <p>f) the tenderer has completed the Declaration of Interest and there are no conflicts of interest which may impact on the tenderer's ability to perform the contract in the best interests of the employer or potentially compromise the tender process.</p> <p>g) the tenderer is registered and in good standing with the compensation fund or with a licensed compensation insurer; the employer is reasonably satisfied that the tenderer has in terms of the Construction Regulations, 2014, issued in terms of the Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993, the necessary competencies and resources to carry out the work safely.</p> <p>h) The tendering entity or the directors/partners of the tendering entity are in good standing with the local authority/municipality.</p> <p>i) No tender will be awarded to a bidder not registered on the National Treasury Central Supplier Database (CSD)</p> <p>j) Contracts Manager &amp; OHS officer must be registered with SACPCMP at the time of award</p> <p>k) No tender will be awarded to a bidder who does not have a valid COIDA Letter of Good Standing</p>
<p><b>14. <u>Proof of Availability of Staff with LI Competencies</u></b></p>	<p>Only those tenderers who can demonstrate that they will have in their employ management and supervisory staff satisfying the requirement of the scope of work for labour-intensive competencies for supervisory and management staff during the validity of the contract are eligible to submit tenders</p>
<p><b>15. <u>Requirement for submission of names of LI staff</u></b></p>	<p>The tenderer must submit to the Employer, names of all management and supervisory staff that will be employed to supervise the labour-intensive portion of the works together with satisfactory evidence that such staff members satisfy eligibility requirements.</p>

### EVALUATION CRITERIA

The bids will be evaluated in two stages. The first stage will check whether the bidders have submitted all documents as requested on the advert. Although functionality does not form part of the final tender points scoring for award purpose, tenderer will be assessed for responsiveness and functionality first and if the tender is not responsive or meet the minimum functionality score, the tenderer will be eliminated and not considered further for second stage of evaluation.

The second stage of the evaluation will be based on Price (80) and preference points for Specific goals (20).

Detailed points scoring for functionality are as follows:

### Functional Requirements

A tenderer must score a minimum of **Seventy points (70/100)** to qualify for further evaluation. Tenders will be evaluated individually and scored by an evaluation panel according to the evaluation criteria mentioned below:

Functionality Evaluation Criteria	Sub Criteria	Points Allocation for Sub Criteria	Maximum Points obtainable per main functionality Criteria
<p><b>Company Experience</b> (Demonstrated company experience on similar projects and past performance in Roads and Stormwater Construction) NB: Attach, signed appointment letters, completion certificates and reference letters with contactable references within the local government spheres, Provincial and National Departments: i.e., Municipal, RAL and SANRAL.</p>	<p><b>Appointment letter indicating the project value and Completion Certificates of completed projects:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Roads and Stormwater Construction completed within the municipality environment, RAL and SANRAL.</li> <li>• <b>Completed works with Minimum CIDB grading of 7CE or higher in the past 10 years.</b></li> <li>• Completed 1 Project : 6 Points</li> <li>• Completed 2 Projects :12 Points</li> <li>• Completed 3 projects :18 Points</li> <li>• Completed 4 projects : 24 Points</li> <li>• Completed 5 Projects and above :30 Points.</li> </ul>	30	<b>40</b>

	<p><b>NOTE:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Projects that do not meet the requirements as mentioned <b>WILL NOT BE ACCEPTED.</b></li> <li>Project where the contractor was a subcontractor will not get points. The Contractor must have been the main contractor on the project to get full points.</li> </ul>		
	<p><b>Reference letter from the clients for each of the above-mentioned projects indicating:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The full project description,</li> <li>Project value; and</li> <li>Completion date.</li> </ul> <p><b>Each Refence letter must be on the client letterhead, have a client stamp, signed, and contact details (Name, phone, and E-mail) of the project manager included.</b></p> <p>One (1) point will be awarded for each project as per requirements above to a maximum of 5 points</p>	5	
	<p><b>Project Programme</b> – Understanding the scope and provide a concise and clear methodology of the tasks as well as adequacy of the programme of work.</p>	2.5	
	<p><b>Schedule of estimated monthly expenditure</b> – Realistic cash-flow based on estimated construction period and project cost.</p>	2.5	

<p><b>Key Personnel CV's</b>          (Demonstrated experience, Qualifications, and experience)</p>	<p><b>A. Contract Manager with the following Requirements</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Must be professionally registered with ECSA and / or SACPCMP (Pr Eng / Pr</li> <li>• Tech Eng / Pr Techni / Pr CPM or Pr CM only) (4 Points)</li> <li>• Minimum Ten (10) Years of relevant experience – calculated post registration: <b>(4 Points)</b></li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o 10 years and above = 4 points</li> <li>o 09 years = 3 Points</li> <li>o 08 years = 2,5 Points</li> <li>o 07 years = 2 Points</li> <li>o 06 years = 1 Point</li> <li>o 0-05 years = 0</li> </ul> <p><b>B. Construction Manager (Site Agent) with the following Requirements:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• B-Tech: Civil Engineering Qualification or higher <b>(4 Points)</b></li> <li>• Minimum Ten (10) years relevant experience <b>(3 Points)</b></li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o 10 years and above = 3 points</li> <li>o 09 years = 2,5 Points</li> <li>o 08 years = 2 Points</li> <li>o 07 years = 1,5 Points</li> <li>o 06 years = 1 Point</li> <li>o 0-5 years = 0 Points</li> </ul>	<p style="text-align: center;">8</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>25</b></p>
		<p style="text-align: center;">7</p>	

	<p><b>C. General Foreman with the following Requirements:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Minimum of 10 years of experience as a General Foreman in Civil projects <b>(Max 5 points)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o 10 years &amp; above = 5</li> <li>o 09 years = 4 Points</li> <li>o 08 years = 3 Points</li> <li>o 6-7 years = 2 Points</li> <li>o 0-5 years = 1 Points</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>D. OHS Officer with the following Requirements:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Registered with SACPCMP as Construction Health and Safety Officer <b>( Max. 3 points).</b></li> <li>• Minimum five (5) Years of relevant experience <b>(Max. 2 points)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o 05 Years and above = 2 points</li> <li>o 4 Years = 1.5 points</li> <li>o 03 years = 1 point</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: CVs of Key Personnel (Contract Manager, Site Agent, General Foreman and OHS Officer) must clearly demonstrate Relevant experience (actual duties performed, involvement and responsibility), including locations, dates, and durations of assignments, starting with the latest.</b></p> <p>Full points will be awarded for all the requirements met.</p>	<p>5</p> <p>5</p>	
--	--	-------------------	--



<p><b>Plant and Equipment</b></p> <p>Details of major equipment owned by the bidder (please provide proof of ownership). Valid proof of license disk and registration</p>	<p><b>Plant and Equipment for this project (Tenderer's own plant)</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Plant required</th> <th>Min. Number Required</th> <th>Weight</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Dozer</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Excavator</td> <td>2</td> <td>4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TLB</td> <td>2</td> <td>4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Watercart min.10 000 litres</td> <td>2</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Grader</td> <td>2</td> <td>4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>10t Smooth drum roller</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>10t Grid roller</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Tipper Truck, min. 6m<sup>3</sup></td> <td>5</td> <td>5</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2"><b>SUB-TOTAL</b></td> <td><b>25</b></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Plant required	Min. Number Required	Weight	Dozer	1	2	Excavator	2	4	TLB	2	4	Watercart min.10 000 litres	2	2	Grader	2	4	10t Smooth drum roller	1	2	10t Grid roller	1	2	Tipper Truck, min. 6m <sup>3</sup>	5	5	<b>SUB-TOTAL</b>		<b>25</b>	<p>25</p>	<p><b>25</b></p>
Plant required	Min. Number Required	Weight																															
Dozer	1	2																															
Excavator	2	4																															
TLB	2	4																															
Watercart min.10 000 litres	2	2																															
Grader	2	4																															
10t Smooth drum roller	1	2																															
10t Grid roller	1	2																															
Tipper Truck, min. 6m <sup>3</sup>	5	5																															
<b>SUB-TOTAL</b>		<b>25</b>																															
<p><b>Company's Financial Standing</b></p>	<p><b>Original stamped bank reference letter indicating the Bank Rating:</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Bank Rating</th> <th>Points</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>A</td> <td>10</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B</td> <td>8</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C</td> <td>6</td> </tr> <tr> <td>D</td> <td>4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>E</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>F-G</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Bank Rating	Points	A	10	B	8	C	6	D	4	E	2	F-G	0	<p>10</p>	<p><b>10</b></p>																
Bank Rating	Points																																
A	10																																
B	8																																
C	6																																
D	4																																
E	2																																
F-G	0																																
<p><b>TOTAL</b></p>			<p><b>100</b></p>																														

The following is a statement of Roads and Stormwater (similar) works executed by the company/ies in the last ten (10) years:

Employer Contact person telephone number	Description of contract	Value of work inclusive of VAT (Rand) if applicable	Start Date	Date Completed	Project Duration

## **PART T2: LIST OF RETURNABLE DOCUMENTS**

The tenderer must complete the following returnable documents:

T2.1	LIST OF RETURNABLE SCHEDULES .....	T.24
T2.2	OTHER DOCUMENTS REQUIRED FOR TENDER EVALUATION .....	T.62
T2.3	RETURNABLE SCHEDULES THAT WILL BE INCORPORATED INTO THE CONTRACT .....	T.86

## **T2.1 LIST OF RETURNABLE SCHEDULES**

T2.1 A	INVITATION TO BID AND TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR BIDDING-MBD1	T.25
T2.1 B	DECLARATION OF GOOD STANDING REGARDING TAX-MBD 2 .....	T.28
T2.1 C	PRICING SCHEDULE – FIRM PRICES-MBD 3.1 .....	T.31
T2.1 D	PRICING SCHEDULE – NON-FIRM PRICES-MBD 3.2 .....	T.32
T2.1 E	DECLARATION OF INTEREST -MBD 4 .....	T.35
T2.1 F	DECLARATION FOR PROCUREMENT ABOVE R10 MILLION (ALL APPLICABLE TAXES INCLUDED) – MBD 5 .....	T.38
T2.1 G	PREFERENCE POINTS CLAIM FORM IN TERMS OF THE PREFERENTIAL PROCUREMENT REGULATIONS 2022 – MBD 6.1 .....	T.40
T2.1 H	DECLARATION CERTIFICATE FOR LOCAL PRODUCTION AND CONTENT- MBD 6.2 .....	T.46
T2.1 I	CONTRACT FORM - PURCHASE OF GOODS/WORKS- MBD 7.1 .....	T.50
T2.1 J	CONTRACT FORM – RENDERING OF SERVICES – MBD 7.2 .....	T.52
T2.1 K	CONTRACT FORM – SALE OF GOODS/WORKS – MBD 7.3 .....	T.54
T2.1 L	DECLARATION OF BIDDER’S PAST SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT PRACTICES-MBD 8 .....	T.56
T2.1 M	CERTIFICATE OF INDEPENDENT BID DETERMINATION -MBD 9 .....	T.58
T2.1 N	PROPOSED KEY PERSONNEL.....	T.61

**T2.1 A INVITATION TO BID AND TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR BIDDING-MBD1  
 PART A: INVITATION TO BID**

<b>YOU ARE HEREBY INVITED TO BID FOR REQUIREMENTS OF THE THULAMELA LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</b>					
BID NUMBER:	40/2023/2024	CLOSING DATE:	<b>13 DECEMBER 2023</b>	CLOSING TIME:	<b>11:00 HRS</b>
DESCRIPTION	<b>UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 INTERNAL STREETS</b>				
<b>BID RESPONSE DOCUMENTS MAY BE DEPOSITED IN THE BID BOX SITUATED AT (STREET ADDRESS)</b>					
<b>THULAMELA MUNICIPALITY OFFICES</b>					
<b>OLD AGRIVEN BUILDING</b>					
<b>THOHOYANDOU</b>					
<b>0950</b>					
<b>BIDDING PROCEDURE ENQUIRIES MAY BE DIRECTED TO</b>			<b>TECHNICAL ENQUIRIES MAY BE DIRECTED TO:</b>		
CONTACT PERSON	Mr T.P Mudzili		CONTACT PERSON	Mr P.D. Neluheni	
TELEPHONE NUMBER	+27(0)15 962 7629		TELEPHONE NUMBER	+27 (0)15 291 4365	
FACSIMILE NUMBER	+27(0)15 962 4020		FACSIMILE NUMBER	+27 (0) 15 291 5392	
E-MAIL ADDRESS	mudziltp@thulamela.gov.za		E-MAIL ADDRESS	admin@tsconsulting.co.za	
<b>SUPPLIER INFORMATION</b>					
NAME OF BIDDER					
POSTAL ADDRESS					
STREET ADDRESS					
TELEPHONE NUMBER	CODE		NUMBER		
CELLPHONE NUMBER					
FACSIMILE NUMBER	CODE		NUMBER		
E-MAIL ADDRESS					
VAT REGISTRATION NUMBER					
SUPPLIER COMPLIANCE STATUS	TAX COMPLIANCE SYSTEM PIN:		OR	CENTRAL SUPPLIER DATABASE No:	MAAA



**2. TAX COMPLIANCE REQUIREMENTS**

2.1 BIDDERS MUST ENSURE COMPLIANCE WITH THEIR TAX OBLIGATIONS.

2.2 BIDDERS ARE REQUIRED TO SUBMIT THEIR UNIQUE PERSONAL IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (PIN) ISSUED BY SARS TO ENABLE THE ORGAN OF STATE TO VIEW THE TAXPAYER'S PROFILE AND TAX STATUS.

2.3 APPLICATION FOR TAX COMPLIANCE STATUS (TCS) OR PIN MAY ALSO BE MADE VIA E-FILING. THROUGH THE

SARS WEBSITE, WWW.SARS.GOV.ZA.

2.4 BIDDERS MAY ALSO SUBMIT A PRINTED TCS TOGETHER WITH THE BID.

2.5 IN BIDS WHERE CONSORTIA/JOINT VENTURES/SUB-CONTRACTORS ARE INVOLVED; EACH PARTY MUST SUBMIT A SEPARATE TCS/PIN/CSD NUMBER.

2.6 WHERE NO TCS IS AVAILABLE BUT THE BIDDER IS REGISTERED ON THE CENTRAL SUPPLIER DATABASE (CSD), A CSD NUMBER MUST BE PROVIDED.

2.7 NO BIDS WILL BE CONSIDERED FROM PERSONS IN THE SERVICE OF THE STATE, COMPANIES WITH DIRECTORS WHO ARE PERSONS IN THE SERVICE OF THE STATE, OR CLOSE CORPORATIONS WITH MEMBERS PERSONS IN THE SERVICE OF THE STATE.

**NB: FAILURE TO PROVIDE ANY OF THE ABOVE PARTICULARS MAY RENDER THE BID INVALID.**

SIGNATURE OF BIDDER: .....

CAPACITY UNDER WHICH THIS BID IS SIGNED: .....

(Proof of authority must be submitted, e.g. Company Resolution)

DATE: .....

---

**T2.1 B            DECLARATION OF GOOD STANDING REGARDING TAX-MBD 2**

It is a condition of bid that the taxes of the successful bidder must be in order, or that satisfactory arrangements have been made with South African Revenue Service (SARS) to meet the bidder's tax obligations.

1. In order to meet this requirement bidders are required to apply for a Tax Clearance Certificate by using SARS form TCC 001 "Application for a Tax Clearance Certificate", and submit it to any SARS branch office nationally. The Tax Clearance Certificate Requirements are also applicable to foreign bidders / individuals who wish to submit bids.
2. SARS will then furnish the bidder with a Tax Clearance Certificate that will be valid for a period of 1 (one) year from the date of approval.
3. **The original Tax Clearance Certificate must be submitted together with the bid.** Failure to submit the **original and valid** Tax Clearance Certificate will result in the invalidation/disqualification of the bid. Certified copies of the Tax Clearance Certificate will not be acceptable.
4. In bids where Consortia / Joint Ventures / Sub-contractors are involved; each party must submit a separate Tax Clearance Certificate.
5. Copies of the TCC 001 "Application for a Tax Clearance Certificate" form are available from any SARS branch office nationally or on the website [www.sars.gov.za](http://www.sars.gov.za).
6. Applications for the Tax Clearance Certificates may also be made via eFiling. In order to use this provision, taxpayers will need to register with SARS as eFilers through the website [www.efiling.co.za](http://www.efiling.co.za)





TAX CLEARANCE

**TCC 001**

**Application for a Tax Clearance Certificate**

**Purpose**

Select the applicable option .....Tenders  Good standing

If "Good standing", please state the purpose of this application


**Particulars of applicant**

Name/Legal name (Initials & Surname or registered name)											
Trading name (if applicable)											
ID/Passport no						Company/Close Corp. registered no					
Income Tax ref no						PAYE ref no	7				
VAT registration no	4					SDL ref no	L				
Customs code						UIF ref no	U				
Telephone no	CODE	NUMBER				Fax no	CODE	NUMBER			
E-mail address											
Physical address											
Postal address											

**Particulars of representative (Public Officer/Trustee/Partner)**

Surname											
First names											
ID/Passport no						Income Tax ref no					
Telephone no	CODE	NUMBER				Fax no	CODE	NUMBER			
E-mail address											
Physical address											



**T2.1 C                      PRICING SCHEDULE – FIRM PRICES-MBD 3.1  
 (PURCHASES)**

**NOTE:                      ONLY FIRM PRICES WILL BE ACCEPTED. NON-FIRM PRICES (INCLUDING PRICES SUBJECT TO RATES OF EXCHANGE VARIATIONS) WILL NOT BE CONSIDERED**

**IN CASES WHERE DIFFERENT DELIVERY POINTS INFLUENCE THE PRICING, A SEPARATE PRICING SCHEDULE MUST BE SUBMITTED FOR EACH DELIVERY POINT**

Name of Bidder .....	Bid Number .....
Closing Time .....	Closing Date .....

OFFER TO BE VALID FOR ..... DAYS FROM THE CLOSING DATE OF BID.

ITEM CURRENCY NO. (average) INCLUDED)	QUANTITY	DESCRIPTION	BID PRICE IN RSA
		**(ALL	APPLICABLE      TAXES
-	Required by:	.....	
-	At:	..... .....	
-	Brand and Model	.....	
-	Country of Origin	.....	
-	Does the offer comply with the specification(s)?		*YES/NO
-	If not to specification, indicate deviation(s)	.....	
-	Period required for delivery	.....	*Delivery: Firm/Not firm
-	Delivery basis	.....	

Note: All delivery costs must be included in the bid price, for delivery at the prescribed destination.

\*\* "all applicable taxes" includes value- added tax, pay as you earn, income tax, unemployment insurance fund contributions and skills development levies.

\*Delete if not applicable

**T2.1 D PRICING SCHEDULE – NON-FIRM PRICES-MBD 3.2  
 (PURCHASES)**

**NOTE: PRICE ADJUSTMENTS WILL BE ALLOWED AT THE PERIODS AND TIMES SPECIFIED  
 IN THE BIDDING DOCUMENTS.**

**IN CASES WHERE DIFFERENT DELIVERY POINTS INFLUENCE THE PRICING, A  
 SEPARATE PRICING SCHEDULE MUST BE SUBMITTED FOR EACH DELIVERY POINT**

Name of Tenderer .....	Tender No.
Closing Time .....	Closing Date

OFFER TO BE VALID FOR ..... DAYS FROM THE CLOSING DATE OF TENDER.

ITEM	QUANTITY	DESCRIPTION	BID PRICE IN RSA CURRENCY
NO.			..... ** (ALL APPLICABLE TAXES INCLUDED)
- Required by:			.....
- At:			.....
- Brand and model			.....
- County of origin			.....
- Does the offer comply with the specification(s)?			*YES/NO      - Period required for delivery
- If not to specification, indicate deviation(s)			..... .....
- Delivery			*Firm/Not Firm

\*\* "all applicable taxes" includes value- added tax, pay as you earn, income tax, unemployment insurance fund contributions and skills development levies.

\*Delete if not applicable

**PRICE ADJUSTMENTS**

**A NON-FIRM PRICES SUBJECT TO ESCALATION**

1. IN CASES OF PERIOD CONTRACTS, NON FIRM PRICES WILL BE ADJUSTED (LOADED) WITH THE ASSESSED CONTRACT PRICE ADJUSTMENTS IMPLICIT IN NON FIRM PRICES WHEN CALCULATING THE COMPARATIVE PRICES
2. IN THIS CATEGORY PRICE ESCALATIONS WILL ONLY BE CONSIDERED IN TERMS OF THE FOLLOWING FORMULA:

$$Pa = (1 - V)Pt \left( D1 \frac{R1t}{R1o} + D2 \frac{R2t}{R2o} + D3 \frac{R3t}{R3o} + D4 \frac{R4t}{R4o} \right) + VPt$$

Where:

- Pa = The new escalated price to be calculated.  
 (1-V) Pt = 85% of the original bid price. **Note that Pt must always be the original bid price and not an escalated price.**  
 D1, D2.. = Each factor of the bid price eg. labour, transport, clothing, footwear, etc. The total of the various factors D1,D2...etc. must add up to 100%.  
 R1t, R2t..... = Index figure obtained from new index (depends on the number of factors used).  
 R1o, R2o = Index figure at time of bidding.  
 VPt = 15% of the original bid price. This portion of the bid price remains firm

i.e. it is not subject to any price escalations.

3. The following index/indices must be used to calculate your bid price:

Index "x" = 0.10. Dated..... Index Labour "a" = 0.15 Dated..... Index  
 Plant "b" = 0.2 Dated..... Index Material "c" = 0.55 Dated..... Index  
 Fuel "e" = 0.1 Dated.....

4. FURNISH A BREAKDOWN OF YOUR PRICE IN TERMS OF ABOVE-MENTIONED FORMULA. THE TOTAL OF THE VARIOUS FACTORS MUST ADD UP TO 100%.

FACTOR (D1, D2 etc. eg. Labour, transport etc.)	PERCENTAGE OF BID PRICE
Labour	
Plant	
Material	
Fuel	

**B PRICES SUBJECT TO RATE OF EXCHANGE VARIATIONS**

1. Please furnish full particulars of your financial institution, state the currencies used in the conversion of the prices of the items to South African currency, which portion of the price is subject to rate of exchange variations and the amounts remitted abroad.

PARTICULARS OF FINANCIAL INSTITUTION	ITEM NO.	PRICE	CURRENCY	RATE	PORTION OF PRICE SUBJECT TO ROE	AMOUNT IN FOREIGN CURRENCY REMITTED ABROAD
				ZAR =		
				ZAR =		
				ZAR =		
				ZAR =		
				ZAR =		
				ZAR =		

2. Adjustments for rate of exchange variations during the contract period will be calculated by using the average monthly exchange rates as issued by your commercial bank for the periods indicated hereunder: (Proof from bank required)

AVERAGE MONTHLY EXCHANGE RATES FOR THE PERIOD:	DATE DOCUMENTATION MUST BE SUBMITTED TO THIS OFFICE	DATE FROM WHICH NEW CALCULATED PRICES WILL BECOME EFFECTIVE	DATE UNTIL WHICH NEW CALCULATED PRICE WILL BE EFFECTIVE

**T2.1 E DECLARATION OF INTEREST -MBD 4**

1. No bid will be accepted from persons in the service of the state .
2. Any person, having a kinship with persons in the service of the state, including a blood relationship, may make an offer or offers in terms of this invitation to bid. In view of possible allegations of favouritism, should the resulting bid, or part thereof, be awarded to persons connected with or related to persons in service of the state, it is required that the bidder or their authorised representative declare their position in relation to the evaluating/adjudicating authority and/or take an oath declaring his/her interest.

**3 In order to give effect to the above, the following questionnaire must be completed and submitted with the bid.**

3.1 Full Name: .....

3.2 Identity Number: .....

3.3 Company Registration Number: .....

3.4 Tax Reference Number: .....

3.5 VAT Registration Number: .....

3.6 Are you presently in the service of the state  **YES / NO**

3.6.1 If so, furnish particulars.

.....  
.....

3.7 Have you been in the service of the state for the past twelve months? **YES / NO**

3.7.1 If so, furnish particulars.

.....  
.....

3.8 Do you, have any relationship (family, friend, other) with persons in the service of the state and who may be involved with the evaluation and or adjudication of this bid?

MSCM Regulations: "in the service of the state" means to be –

- (a) a member of –
  - (i) any municipal council;
  - (ii) any provincial legislature; or
  - (iii) the national Assembly or the national Council of provinces;
- (b) a member of the board of directors of any municipal entity;
- (c) an official of any municipality or municipal entity;
- (d) an employee of any national or provincial department, national or provincial public entity or constitutional institution within the meaning of the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act No.1 of 1999);
- (e) a member of the accounting authority of any national or provincial public entity; or
- (f) an employee of Parliament or a
- (g) provincial legislature.

YES / NO

3.8.1 If so, furnish particulars.

.....  
.....

3.9 Are you, aware of any relationship (family, friend, other) between a bidder and any persons in the service of the state who may be involved with the evaluation and or adjudication of this bid?

YES / NO

3.9.1 If so, furnish particulars

.....  
.....

3.10 Are any of the company's directors, managers, principal shareholders or stakeholders in service of the state?

YES

/ NO

3.10.1 If so, furnish particulars.

.....  
.....

3.11 Are any spouse, child or parent of the company's directors, managers, principal shareholders or stakeholders in service of the state?

YES / NO

3.11.1 If so, furnish particulars.

.....  
.....



**CERTIFICATION**

I, THE UNDERSIGNED (NAME) .....

**CERTIFY THAT THE INFORMATION FURNISHED ON THIS DECLARATION FORM IS  
CORRECT.**

**I ACCEPT THAT THE STATE MAY ACT AGAINST ME SHOULD THIS DECLARATION PROVE  
TO BE FALSE.**

.....  
Signature

.....  
Date

.....  
Position

.....  
Name of Bidder

**T2.1 F DECLARATION FOR PROCUREMENT ABOVE R10 MILLION (ALL APPLICABLE TAXES INCLUDED) – MBD 5**

For all procurement expected to exceed R10 million (all applicable taxes included), bidders must complete the following questionnaire:

1. Are you by law required to prepare annual financial statements for auditing? **\*YES / NO**

If yes, submit audited annual financial statements for the past three years or since the date of establishment if established during the past three years.

.....  
.....

2. Do you have any outstanding undisputed commitments for municipal services towards any municipality for more than three months or any other service provider in respect of which payment is overdue for more than 30 days? **\*YES / NO**

- 2.1 If no, this serves to certify that the bidder has no undisputed commitments for municipal services towards any municipality for more than three months or other service provider in respect of which payment is overdue for more than 30 days.

- 2.2 If yes, provide particulars.  
.....  
.....  
.....

3. Has any contract been awarded to you by an organ of state during the past five years, including particulars of any material non-compliance or dispute concerning the execution of such contract? **\*YES / NO**

- 3.1 If yes, furnish particulars  
.....  
.....  
.....

4. Will any portion of goods or services be sourced from outside the Republic, and, if so, what portion and whether any portion of payment from the municipality / municipal entity is expected to be transferred out of the Republic? **\*YES / NO**

4.1 If yes, furnish particulars

.....  
.....  
.....

**CERTIFICATION**

I, THE UNDERSIGNED (NAME) .....

CERTIFY THAT THE INFORMATION FURNISHED ON THIS DECLARATION FORM IS CORRECT.

I ACCEPT THAT THE STATE MAY ACT AGAINST ME SHOULD THIS DECLARATION PROVE TO BE FALSE.

\_\_\_\_\_  
**Signature**

\_\_\_\_\_  
**Date**

\_\_\_\_\_  
**Position**

\_\_\_\_\_  
**Name of Bidder**

## T2.1 G PREFERENCE POINTS CLAIM FORM IN TERMS OF THE PREFERENTIAL PROCUREMENT REGULATIONS 2022 – MBD 6.1

This preference form must form part of all tenders invited. It contains general information and serves as a claim form for preference points for specific goals.

**NB: BEFORE COMPLETING THIS FORM, TENDERERS MUST STUDY THE GENERAL CONDITIONS, DEFINITIONS AND DIRECTIVES APPLICABLE IN RESPECT OF THE TENDER AND PREFERENTIAL PROCUREMENT REGULATIONS, 2022.**

### 1. GENERAL CONDITIONS

1.1 The following preference point systems are applicable to all bids:

- the 80/20 system for requirements with a Rand value of up to R50 000 000 (all applicable taxes included); and
- the 90/10 system for requirements with a Rand value above R50 000 000 (all applicable taxes included).

### 1.2 To be completed by the organ of state

- (a) The applicable preference point system for this tender is the **80/20** preference point system.
- (b) The 80/20 preference point system will be applicable in this tender. The lowest/ highest acceptable tender will be used to determine the accurate system once tenders are received.

1.3 Points for this bid shall be awarded for:

- (a) Price; and
- (b) Specific Goals.

### 1.4 To be completed by the organ of state:

The maximum points for this tender are allocated as follows:

Specific Goals Categories (CSD will be used for verification)	Number of Points (80/20 system) 20 Points breakdown
PRICE	80
SPECIFIC GOALS	20

<b>TOTAL POINTS FOR PRICE AND SPECIFIC GOALS</b>	
<b>1. 100% Black ownership</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>2. 100% Women ownership</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>3. Youth</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>4. Disability</b> (Medical certificate will be used to verify the disability status of the bidder).	<b>2</b>

- 1.5** Failure on the part of a tenderer to submit proof or documentation required in terms of this tender to claim points for specific goals with the tender, will be interpreted to mean that preference points for specific goals are not claimed.
- 1.6** The organ of state reserves the right to require of a tenderer, either before a tender is adjudicated or at any time subsequently, to substantiate any claim in regard to preferences, in any manner required by the organ of state.

**2. DEFINITIONS**

- (a) **“tender”** means a written offer in the form determined by an organ of state in response to an invitation to provide goods or services through price quotations, competitive tendering process or any other method envisaged in legislation;
- (b) **“price”** means an amount of money tendered for goods or services, and includes all applicable taxes less all unconditional discounts;
- (c) **“rand value”** means the total estimated value of a contract in Rand, calculated at the time of bid invitation, and includes all applicable taxes;
- (d) **“tender for income-generating contracts”** means a written offer in the form determined by an organ of state in response to an invitation for the origination of income-generating contracts through any method envisaged in legislation that will result in a legal agreement between the organ of state and a third party that produces revenue for the organ of state, and includes, but is not limited to, leasing and disposal of assets and concession contracts, excluding direct sales and disposal of assets through public auctions; and
- (e) **“the Act”** means the Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act, 2000 (Act No. 5 of 2000).

### 3. FORMULAE FOR PROCUREMENT OF GOODS AND SERVICES

#### 3.1. POINTS AWARDED FOR PRICE

##### 3.1.1. THE 80/20 OR 90/10 PREFERENCE POINT SYSTEMS

A maximum of 80 or 90 points is allocated for price on the following basis:

$$P_s = 80 \left( 1 - \frac{P_t - P_{\min}}{P_{\min}} \right) \quad \text{or} \quad P_s = 90 \left( 1 - \frac{P_t - P_{\min}}{P_{\min}} \right)$$

Where

$P_s$  = Points scored for price of bid under consideration

$P_t$  = Price of bid under consideration

$P_{\min}$  = Price of lowest acceptable bid

### FORMULAE FOR DISPOSAL OR LEASING OF STATE ASSETS AND INCOME GENERATING PROCUREMENT

#### 3.1.2. POINTS AWARDED FOR PRICE

A maximum of 80 or 90 points is allocated for price on the following basis:

**80/20**                      **or**                      **90/10**

$$P_s = 80 \left( 1 - \frac{P_t - P_{\min}}{P_{\min}} \right) \quad \text{or} \quad P_s = 90 \left( 1 - \frac{P_t - P_{\min}}{P_{\min}} \right)$$

Where

$P_s$  = Points scored for price of tender under consideration

$P_t$  = Price of tender under consideration

$P_{\max}$  = Price of highest acceptable tender

### 4. POINTS AWARDED FOR SPECIFIC GOALS

4.1. In terms of Regulation 4(2); 5(2); 6(2) and 7(2) of the Preferential Procurement Regulations, preference points must be awarded for specific goals stated in the tender. For the purposes of this tender the tenderer will be allocated points based on the goals stated in table 1 below as may be supported by proof/ documentation stated in the conditions of this tender:

4.2. In cases where organs of state intend to use Regulation 3(2) of the Regulations, which states that, if it is unclear whether the 80/20 or 90/10 preference point system applies, an organ of state must, in the tender documents, stipulate in the case of—

- a) an invitation for tender for income-generating contracts, that either the 80/20 or 90/10 preference point system will apply and that the highest acceptable tender will be used to determine the applicable preference point system; or

- b) any other invitation for tender, that either the 80/20 or 90/10 preference point system will apply and that the lowest acceptable tender will be used to determine the applicable preference point system,

then the organ of state must indicate the points allocated for specific goals for both the 90/10 and 80/20 preference point system.

**Table 1: Specific goals for the tender and points claimed are indicated per the table below.**

**(Note to organs of state: Where either the 90/10 or 80/20 preference point system is applicable, corresponding points must also be indicated as such.**

**Note to tenderers: The tenderer must indicate how they claim points for each preference point system.)**

The specific goals allocated points in terms of this tender	Number of points allocated (90/10 system) (To be completed by the organ of state)	Number of points claimed (80/20 system) (To be completed by the tenderer)
1. 100% Black ownership		8
2. 100% Women ownership		6
3. Youth		4
4. Disability (Medical certificate will be used to verify the disability status of the bidder).		2

**Source Documents to be submitted with the Bid**

- CIPC Document (Company Registration Document will be required for verification (CIPC DOC))
- Woman (Originally Certified ID Document)
- Youth (Originally Certified ID Document)
- People with Disability (Letter from the Dr. Confirming the Disability)
- Black Ownership (Originally Certified ID Document)

**DECLARATION WITH REGARD TO COMPANY/FIRM**

- 4.3 Name of company/firm.....
- 4.4 Company registration number: .....

4.5 TYPE OF COMPANY/ FIRM

- Partnership/Joint Venture / Consortium
- One-person business/sole propriety
- Close corporation
- Public Company
- (Pty) Limited
- Non-Profit Company
- State Owned Company

[TICK APPLICABLE BOX]

4.6 I, the undersigned, who is duly authorised to do so on behalf of the company/firm, certify that the points claimed, based on the specific goals as advised in the tender, qualifies the company/ firm for the preference(s) shown and I acknowledge that:

- (i) The information furnished is true and correct;
- (ii) The preference points claimed are in accordance with the General Conditions as indicated in paragraph 1 of this form;
- (iii) In the event of a contract being awarded as a result of points claimed as shown in paragraphs 1.4 and 4.2, the contractor may be required to furnish documentary proof to the satisfaction of the organ of state that the claims are correct;
- (iv) If the specific goals have been claimed or obtained on a fraudulent basis or any of the conditions of contract have not been fulfilled, the organ of state may, in addition to any other remedy it may have –
  - (a) disqualify the person from the tendering process;
  - (b) recover costs, losses or damages it has incurred or suffered as a result of that person's conduct;
  - (c) cancel the contract and claim any damages which it has suffered as a result of having to make less favourable arrangements due to such cancellation;
  - (d) recommend that the tenderer or contractor, its shareholders and directors, or only the shareholders and directors who acted on a fraudulent basis, be restricted from obtaining business from any organ of state for a period not exceeding 10 years, after the audi alteram partem (hear the other side) rule has been applied;
  - and (e) forward the matter for criminal prosecution, if deemed necessary.



.....  
**SIGNATURE(S) OF TENDERER(S)**

**SURNAME AND NAME:** .....

**DATE:** .....

**ADDRESS:** .....

.....

.....

.....

## T2.1 H DECLARATION CERTIFICATE FOR LOCAL PRODUCTION AND CONTENT- MBD 6.2

This Standard Bidding Document (MBD) must form part of all bids invited. It contains general information and serves as a declaration form for local content (local production and local content are used interchangeably).

Before completing this declaration, bidders must study the General Conditions, Definitions, Directives applicable in respect of Local Content as prescribed in the Preferential Procurement Regulations, 2017 and the South African Bureau of Standards (SABS) approved technical specification number SATS 1286:201x.

### 1. General Conditions

- 1.1. Preferential Procurement Regulations, 2017 (Regulation 9. (1) and 9. (3) make provision for the promotion of local production and content.
- 1.2. Regulation 9.(1) prescribes that in the case of designated sectors, where in the award of bids local production and content is of critical importance, such bids must be advertised with the specific bidding condition that only locally produced goods, services or works or locally manufactured goods, with a stipulated minimum threshold for local production and content will be considered.
- 1.3. Where necessary, for bids referred to in paragraphs 1.2 above, a two-stage bidding process may be followed, where the first stage involves a minimum threshold for local production and content and the second stage price and Specific goals
- 1.4. A person awarded a contract in relation to a designated sector, may not sub-contract in such a manner that the local production and content of the overall value of the contract is reduced to below the stipulated minimum threshold.
- 1.5. The local content (LC) as a percentage of the bid price must be calculated in accordance with the SABS approved technical specification number SATS 1286: 201x as follows:

$$LC = 1 - \left( \frac{x}{y} \right) \times 100$$

Where

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| x | imported content                          |
| y | bid price excluding value added tax (VAT) |

Prices referred to in the determination of x must be converted to Rand (ZAR) by using the exchange rate published by South African Reserve Bank (SARB) at 12:00 on the date, one week (7 calendar days) prior to the closing date of the bid as indicated in paragraph 4.1 below.

- 1.6. A bid will be disqualified if this this declaration certificate and Annex C (Local Content Declaration: Summary Schedule) are not submitted as part of the bid documentation.

**2. The stipulated minimum threshold(s) for local production and content for this bid is/are as follows:**

<u>Description of services, works or goods</u>	<u>Stipulated minimum threshold</u>
_____	_____ %
_____	_____ %
_____	_____ %

**3. Does any portion of the services, works or goods offered have any imported content?**

<b>YES</b>		<b>NO</b>	
------------	--	-----------	--

**3.1 If yes, the rate(s) of exchange to be used in this bid to calculate the local content as prescribed in paragraph 1.5 of the general conditions must be the rate(s) published by SARB for the specific currency at 12:00 on the date of advertisement of the bid.**

The relevant rates of exchange information is accessible on [www.reservebank.co.za](http://www.reservebank.co.za).

Indicate the rate(s) of exchange against the appropriate currency in the table below (refer to Annex A of SATS 1286: 2011)::

<b>Currency</b>	<b>Rates of exchange</b>
US Dollar	
Pound Sterling	
Euro	
Yen	
Other	

NB: Bidders must submit proof of the SARB rate (s) of exchange used.

**4. Where, after the award of a bid, challenges are experienced in meeting the stipulated minimum threshold for local content the dti must me informed accordingly in order for dti to verify and in consultation with the AO/AA provide directives in this regard.**

**LOCAL CONTENT DECLARATION**  
**(REFER TO ANNEX B OF SATS 1286:2011)**

<p><b>LOCAL CONTENT DECLARATION BY CHIEF FINANCIAL OFFICER OR OTHER LEGALLY RESPONSIBLE PERSON NOMINATED IN WRITING BY THE CHIEF EXECUTIVE OR SENIOR MEMBER/PERSON WITH MANAGEMENT RESPONSIBILITY (CLOSE CORPORATION, PARTNERSHIP OR INDIVIDUAL)</b></p> <p><b>IN RESPECT OF BID No.....</b></p> <p><b>ISSUED BY:</b> (Procurement Authority / Name of Institution):</p> <p>.....</p>
---

NB

1. The obligation to complete, duly sign and submit this declaration cannot be transferred to an external authorized representative, auditor or any other third party acting on behalf of the bidder.
2. Guidance on the Calculation of Local Content together with Local Content Declaration Templates (Annex C, D and E) is accessible on [http://www.thdti.gov.za/industrial\\_development/ip.jsp](http://www.thdti.gov.za/industrial_development/ip.jsp). Bidders should first complete Declaration D. After completing Declaration D, bidders should complete Declaration E and then consolidate the information on Declaration C. **Declaration C should be submitted with the bid documentation at the closing date and time of the bid in order to substantiate the declaration made in paragraph (c) below.** Declarations D and E should be kept by the bidders for verification purposes for a period of at least 5 years. The successful bidder is required to continuously update Declarations C, D and E with the actual values for the duration of the contract.

I, the undersigned ..... (full names),  
 do hereby declare, in my capacity

a.....

of ..... (name of bidder entity),  
 the following:

- (a) The facts contained herein are within my own personal knowledge.
- (b) I have satisfied myself that:
  - (i) the goods/services/works to be delivered in terms of the above specified bid comply with the minimum local content requirements as specified in the bid, and as measured in terms of SATS 1286.
- (c) The local content percentage (%) indicated below has been calculated using the formula given in clause 3 of SATS 1286:2011, the rates of exchange indicated in paragraph 4.1 above and the information contained in Declaration D and E which has been consolidated in Declaration C:

Bid price, excluding VAT (y)	R
Imported content (x)	R
Stipulated minimum threshold for Local content (paragraph 3 above)	
Local content % , as calculated in terms of SATS 1286	

If the bid is for more than one product, the local content percentages for each product contained in Declaration C shall be used instead of the table above. The local content percentages for each product have been calculated using the formula given in clause 3 of SATS 1286:2011, the rates of exchange indicated in paragraph 4.1 above and the information contained in Declaration D and E.

(d) I accept that the Procurement Authority / Institution has the right to request that the local content be verified in terms of the requirements of SATS 1286:2011.

(e) I understand that the awarding of the bid is dependent on the accuracy of the information furnished in this application. I also understand that the submission of incorrect data, or data that are not verifiable as described in SATS 1286:2011, may result in the Procurement Authority / Institution imposing any or all of the remedies as provided for in Regulation 14 of the Preferential Procurement Regulations, 2017 promulgated under the Preferential Policy Framework Act (PPFA), 2000 (Act No. 5 of 2000).

**SIGNATURE:** \_\_\_\_\_

**DATE:** \_\_\_\_\_

**WITNESS No. 1** \_\_\_\_\_

**DATE:** \_\_\_\_\_

**WITNESS No. 2** \_\_\_\_\_

**DATE:** \_\_\_\_\_

**T2.1 I CONTRACT FORM - PURCHASE OF GOODS/WORKS- MBD 7.1**

**THIS FORM MUST BE FILLED IN DUPLICATE BY BOTH THE SUCCESSFUL BIDDER (PART 1) AND THE PURCHASER (PART 2). BOTH FORMS MUST BE SIGNED IN THE ORIGINAL SO THAT THE SUCCESSFUL BIDDER AND THE PURCHASER WOULD BE IN POSSESSION OF ORIGINALLY SIGNED CONTRACTS FOR THEIR RESPECTIVE RECORDS.**

**PART 1 (TO BE FILLED IN BY THE BIDDER)**

1. I hereby undertake to supply all or any of the goods and/or works described in the attached bidding documents to (name of institution)..... in accordance with the requirements and specifications stipulated in bid number..... at the price/s quoted. My offer/s remain binding upon me and open for acceptance by the purchaser during the validity period indicated and calculated from the closing time of bid.
  
2. The following documents shall be deemed to form and be read and construed as part of this agreement:
  - i) Bidding documents, viz
    - Invitation to bid;
    - Tax clearance certificate;
    - Pricing schedule(s);
    - Technical Specification(s);
    - Preference claims for Specific goals;
    - Declaration of interest;
    - Declaration of bidder's past SCM practices;
    - Certificate of Independent Bid Determination;
    - Special Conditions of Contract; ii) General Conditions of Contract; and iii) Other (specify)
  
3. I confirm that I have satisfied myself as to the correctness and validity of my bid; that the price(s) and rate(s) quoted cover all the goods and/or works specified in the bidding documents; that the price(s) and rate(s) cover all my obligations and I accept that any mistakes regarding price(s) and rate(s) and calculations will be at my own risk.
  
4. I accept full responsibility for the proper execution and fulfilment of all obligations and conditions devolving on me under this agreement as the principal liable for the due fulfilment of this contract.
  
5. I declare that I have no participation in any collusive practices with any bidder or any other person regarding this or any other bid.
  
6. I confirm that I am duly authorised to sign this contract.

NAME (PRINT) \_\_\_\_\_  
CAPACITY \_\_\_\_\_  
SIGNATURE \_\_\_\_\_  
NAME OF FIRM \_\_\_\_\_  
DATE \_\_\_\_\_

WITNESSES  
1. ....  
2. ....  
DATE: .....

**CONTRACT FORM - PURCHASE OF GOODS/WORKS**

**PART 2 (TO BE FILLED IN BY THE PURCHASER)**

1. I..... in my capacity as..... accept your bid under reference number .....dated.....for the supply of goods/works indicated hereunder and/or further specified in the annexure(s).
2. An official order indicating delivery instructions is forthcoming.
3. I undertake to make payment for the goods/works delivered in accordance with the terms and conditions of the contract, within 30 (thirty) days after receipt of an invoice accompanied by the delivery note.

ITEM NO.	PRICE (ALL APPLICABLE TAXES INCLUDED)	BRAND	DELIVERY PERIOD	SPECIFIC GOALS	MINIMUM THRESHOLD FOR LOCAL PRODUCTION AND CONTENT (if applicable)

4. I confirm that I am duly authorized to sign this contract.

SIGNED AT ..... ON .....

NAME (PRINT) .....

SIGNATURE .....

OFFICIAL STAMP

WITNESSES

1. ....

2.....

**THIS FORM MUST BE FILLED IN DUPLICATE BY BOTH THE SERVICE PROVIDER (PART 1) AND THE PURCHASER (PART 2). BOTH FORMS MUST BE SIGNED IN THE ORIGINAL SO THAT THE SERVICE PROVIDER AND THE PURCHASER WOULD BE IN POSSESSION OF ORIGINALLY SIGNED CONTRACTS FOR THEIR RESPECTIVE RECORDS.**

**PART 1 (TO BE FILLED IN BY THE SERVICE PROVIDER)**

1. I hereby undertake to render services described in the attached bidding documents to (name of the institution)..... in accordance with the requirements and task directives / proposals specifications stipulated in Bid Number..... at the price/s quoted. My offer/s remain binding upon me and open for acceptance by the Purchaser during the validity period indicated and calculated from the closing date of the bid.
  
2. The following documents shall be deemed to form and be read and construed as part of this agreement:
  - i) Bidding documents, viz
    - Invitation to bid;
    - Tax clearance certificate;
    - Pricing schedule(s);
    - Filled in task directive/proposal;
    - Preference claims for Specific goals
    - Declaration of interest;
    - Declaration of Bidder's past SCM practices;
    - Certificate of Independent Bid Determination;
    - Special Conditions of Contract; ii) General Conditions of Contract; and iii) Other (specify)
  
3. I confirm that I have satisfied myself as to the correctness and validity of my bid; that the price(s) and rate(s) quoted cover all the services specified in the bidding documents; that the price(s) and rate(s) cover all my obligations and I accept that any mistakes regarding price(s) and rate(s) and calculations will be at my own risk.
  
4. I accept full responsibility for the proper execution and fulfilment of all obligations and conditions devolving on me under this agreement as the principal liable for the due fulfilment of this contract.
  
5. I declare that I have no participation in any collusive practices with any bidder or any other person regarding this or any other bid.
  
6. I confirm that I am duly authorised to sign this contract.

.....  
CAPACITY .....

.....  
SIGNATURE .....

.....  
NAME OF FIRM .....

.....  
DATE .....

.....  
NAME (PRINT) .....

WITNESSES
1. ....
2. ....
DATE: .....



**CONTRACT FORM – RENDERING OF SERVICES**

**PART 2 (TO BE FILLED IN BY THE PURCHASER)**

1. I..... in my capacity ..... accept your bid under reference number .....dated.....for the rendering of services indicated hereunder and/or further specified in the annexure(s).
2. An official order indicating delivery instructions is forthcoming.
3. I undertake to make payment for the services rendered in accordance with the terms and conditions of the contract, within 30 (thirty) days after receipt of an invoice.

DESCRIPTION OF SERVICE	PRICE (ALL APPLICABLE TAXES INCLUDED)	COMPLETION DATE	SPECIFIC GOALS	MINIMUM THRESHOLD FOR LOCAL PRODUCTION AND CONTENT (if applicable)

4. I confirm that I am duly authorized to sign this contract.

SIGNED AT ..... ON .....

NAME (PRINT) .....

SIGNATURE .....

OFFICIAL STAMP

WITNESSES

1. ....

2. ....

**T2.1 K CONTRACT FORM – SALE OF GOODS/WORKS – MBD 7.3**

**THIS FORM MUST BE FILLED IN DUPLICATE BY BOTH THE SUCCESSFUL BIDDER (PART 1) AND THE SELLER (PART 2). BOTH FORMS MUST BE SIGNED IN THE ORIGINAL SO THAT THE SUCCESSFUL BIDDER AND THE SELLER WOULD BE IN POSSESSION OF ORIGINALLY SIGNED CONTRACTS FOR THEIR RESPECTIVE RECORDS.**

**PART 1 (TO BE FILLED IN BY THE BIDDER)**

1. I hereby undertake to purchase all or any of the goods and/or works described in the attached bidding documents from (name of institution)..... in accordance with the requirements stipulated in (bid number)..... at the price/s quoted. My offer/s remain binding upon me and open for acceptance by the seller during the validity period indicated and calculated from the closing time of bid.
2. The following documents shall be deemed to form and be read and construed as part of this agreement:
  - i) Bidding documents, viz
    - Invitation to bid;
    - Tax clearance certificate;
    - Pricing schedule(s);
    - Declaration of interest;
    - Declaration of Bidder's past SCM practices;
    - Special Conditions of Contract; ii) General Conditions of Contract; and iii) Other (specify)
3. I confirm that I have satisfied myself as to the correctness and validity of my bid; that the price(s) quoted cover all the goods and/or works specified in the bidding documents; that the price(s) cover all my obligations and I accept that any mistakes regarding price(s) and calculations will be at my own risk.
4. I accept full responsibility for the proper execution and fulfilment of all obligations and conditions devolving on me under this agreement as the principal liable for the due fulfilment of this contract.
5. I undertake to make payment for the goods/works as specified in the bidding documents.
6. I declare that I have no participation in any collusive practices with any bidder or any other person regarding this or any other bid.
7. I confirm that I am duly authorised to sign this contract.

NAME (PRINT) \_\_\_\_\_  
CAPACITY \_\_\_\_\_  
SIGNATURE \_\_\_\_\_  
NAME OF FIRM \_\_\_\_\_  
DATE \_\_\_\_\_

<b>WITNESSES</b>
1. ....
2. ....
<b>DATE:</b> .....

**CONTRACT FORM – SALE OF GOODS/WORKS**

**PART 2 (TO BE FILLED IN BY THE PURCHASER)**

1. I..... in my capacity as.....  
accept your bid under reference number .....dated.....for the purchase  
of goods/works indicated hereunder and/or further specified in the annexure(s).
2. I undertake to make the goods/works available in accordance with the terms and conditions of the  
contract.

ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	PRICE (ALL APPLICABLE TAXES INCLUDED)		

3. I confirm that I am duly authorized to sign this contract.

SIGNED AT ..... ON .....

NAME (PRINT) .....

SIGNATURE .....

OFFICIAL STAMP

WITNESSES

1. ....

2. ....

**T2.1 L DECLARATION OF BIDDER'S PAST SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT PRACTICES-MBD 8**

- 1 This Municipal Bidding Document must form part of all bids invited.
- 2 It serves as a declaration to be used by municipalities and municipal entities in ensuring that when goods and services are being procured, all reasonable steps are taken to combat the abuse of the supply chain management system.
- 3 The bid of any bidder may be rejected if that bidder, or any of its directors have:
  - a. abused the municipality's / municipal entity's supply chain management system or committed any improper conduct in relation to such system;
  - b. been convicted for fraud or corruption during the past five years;
  - c. wilfully neglected, reneged on or failed to comply with any government, municipal or other public sector contract during the past five years; or
  - d. been listed in the Register for Tender Defaulters in terms of section 29 of the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act (No 12 of 2004).
- 4 **In order to give effect to the above, the following questionnaire must be completed and submitted with the bid.**

Item	Question	Yes	No
4.1	<p>Is the bidder or any of its directors listed on the National Treasury's Database of Restricted Suppliers as companies or persons prohibited from doing business with the public sector?</p> <p>(Companies or persons who are listed on this Database were informed in writing of this restriction by the Accounting Officer/Authority of the institution that imposed the restriction after the <i>audi alteram partem</i> rule was applied).</p> <p><b>The Database of Restricted Suppliers now resides on the National Treasury's website(<a href="http://www.treasury.gov.za">www.treasury.gov.za</a>) and can be accessed by clicking on its link at the bottom of the home page.</b></p>	Yes <input type="checkbox"/>	No <input type="checkbox"/>
4.1.1	If so, furnish particulars:		
4.2	<p>Is the bidder or any of its directors listed on the Register for Tender Defaulters in terms of section 29 of the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act (No 12 of 2004)?</p> <p><b>The Register for Tender Defaulters can be accessed on the National Treasury's website (<a href="http://www.treasury.gov.za">www.treasury.gov.za</a>) by clicking on its link at the bottom of the home page.</b></p>	Yes <input type="checkbox"/>	No <input type="checkbox"/>
4.2.1	If so, furnish particulars:		
4.3	<p>Was the bidder or any of its directors convicted by a court of law (including a court of law outside the Republic of South Africa) for fraud or corruption during the past five years?</p>	Yes <input type="checkbox"/>	No <input type="checkbox"/>

Item	Question	Yes	No
4.3.1	If so, furnish particulars:		
4.4	Does the bidder or any of its directors owe any municipal rates and taxes or municipal charges to the municipality / municipal entity, or to any other municipality / municipal entity, that is in arrears for more than three months?	Yes <input type="checkbox"/>	No <input type="checkbox"/>
4.4.1	If so, furnish particulars:		
4.5	Was any contract between the bidder and the municipality / municipal entity or any other organ of state terminated during the past five years on account of failure to perform on or comply with the contract?	Yes <input type="checkbox"/>	No <input type="checkbox"/>
4.7.1	If so, furnish particulars:		

**CERTIFICATION**

I, THE UNDERSIGNED (FULL NAME) .....  
 CERTIFY THAT THE INFORMATION FURNISHED ON THIS DECLARATION FORM TRUE  
 AND CORRECT.

I ACCEPT THAT, IN ADDITION TO CANCELLATION OF A CONTRACT, ACTION MAY BE  
 TAKEN AGAINST ME SHOULD THIS DECLARATION PROVE TO BE FALSE.

.....  
**Signature**

.....  
**Date**

.....  
**Position**

.....  
**Name of Bidder**

## T2.1 M CERTIFICATE OF INDEPENDENT BID DETERMINATION -MBD 9

- 1 This Municipal Bidding Document (MBD) must form part of all bids<sup>1</sup> invited.
- 2 Section 4 (1) (b) (iii) of the Competition Act No. 89 of 1998, as amended, prohibits an agreement between, or concerted practice by, firms, or a decision by an association of firms, if it is between parties in a horizontal relationship and if it involves collusive bidding (or bid rigging).<sup>2</sup> Collusive bidding is a *pe se* prohibition meaning that it cannot be justified under any grounds.
- 3 Municipal Supply Regulation 38 (1) prescribes that a supply chain management policy must provide measures for the combating of abuse of the supply chain management system, and must enable the accounting officer, among others, to:
  - a. take all reasonable steps to prevent such abuse;
  - b. reject the bid of any bidder if that bidder or any of its directors has abused the supply chain management system of the municipality or municipal entity or has committed any improper conduct in relation to such system; and
  - c. cancel a contract awarded to a person if the person committed any corrupt or fraudulent act during the bidding process or the execution of the contract.
- 4 This MBD serves as a certificate of declaration that would be used by institutions to ensure that, when bids are considered, reasonable steps are taken to prevent any form of bid-rigging.
- 5 In order to give effect to the above, the attached Certificate of Bid Determination (MBD 9) must be completed and submitted with the bid:

<sup>1</sup> Includes price quotations, advertised competitive bids, limited bids and proposals.

<sup>2</sup> Bid rigging (or collusive bidding) occurs when businesses, that would otherwise be expected to compete, secretly conspire to raise prices or lower the quality of goods and / or services for purchasers who wish to acquire goods and / or services through a bidding process. Bid rigging is, therefore, an agreement between competitors not to compete.

<sup>3</sup> Joint venture or Consortium means an association of persons for the purpose of combining their expertise, property, capital, efforts, skill and knowledge in an activity for the execution of a contract.

---

**CERTIFICATE OF INDEPENDENT BID DETERMINATION**

I, the undersigned, in submitting the accompanying bid:

---

(Bid Number and Description)

in response to the invitation for the bid made by:

---

(Name of Municipality / Municipal Entity)

do hereby make the following statements that I certify to be true and complete in every respect:

I certify, on behalf of:

\_\_\_\_\_ that:

(Name of Bidder)

1. I have read and I understand the contents of this Certificate;
2. I understand that the accompanying bid will be disqualified if this Certificate is found not to be true and complete in every respect;
3. I am authorized by the bidder to sign this Certificate, and to submit the accompanying bid, on behalf of the bidder;
4. Each person whose signature appears on the accompanying bid has been authorized by the bidder to determine the terms of, and to sign, the bid, on behalf of the bidder;
5. For the purposes of this Certificate and the accompanying bid, I understand that the word "competitor" shall include any individual or organization, other than the bidder, whether or not affiliated with the bidder, who:
  - (a) has been requested to submit a bid in response to this bid invitation;
  - (b) could potentially submit a bid in response to this bid invitation, based on their qualifications, abilities or experience; and
  - (c) provides the same goods and services as the bidder and/or is in the same line of business as the bidder
6. The bidder has arrived at the accompanying bid independently from, and without consultation, communication, agreement or arrangement with any competitor. However, communication between partners in a joint venture or consortium<sup>3</sup> will not be construed as collusive bidding.
7. In particular, without limiting the generality of paragraphs 6 above, there has been no consultation, communication, agreement or arrangement with any competitor regarding:

- 
- (a) prices;
  - (b) geographical area where product or service will be rendered (market allocation)
  - (c) methods, factors or formulas used to calculate prices;
  - (d) the intention or decision to submit or not to submit, a bid;
  - (e) the submission of a bid which does not meet the specifications and conditions of the bid; or
  - (f) bidding with the intention not to win the bid.
8. In addition, there have been no consultations, communications, agreements or arrangements with any competitor regarding the quality, quantity, specifications and conditions or delivery particulars of the products or services to which this bid invitation relates.
9. The terms of the accompanying bid have not been, and will not be, disclosed by the bidder, directly or indirectly, to any competitor, prior to the date and time of the official bid opening or of the awarding of the contract.
10. I am aware that, in addition and without prejudice to any other remedy provided to combat any restrictive practices related to bids and contracts, bids that are suspicious will be reported to the Competition Commission for investigation and possible imposition of administrative penalties in terms of section 59 of the Competition Act No 89 of 1998 and or may be reported to the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA) for criminal investigation and or may be restricted from conducting business with the public sector for a period not exceeding ten (10) years in terms of the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act No 12 of 2004 or any other applicable legislation.

.....  
Signature

.....  
Date

.....  
Position

.....  
Name of Bidder



**T2.1 N PROPOSED KEY PERSONNEL**

The Tenderer shall list below the key personnel whom he proposes to employ on the contract should his offer be accepted, both at his headquarters and on the site, together with their qualifications, experience and positions held.

DESIGNATION	REQUIREMENTS	NAME AND NATIONALITY OF PROPOSED CANDIDATE	REGISTRATION NUMBER	QUALIFICATION AND EXPERIENCE
<b>Contracts Manager</b>	Minimum of a National Diploma and 10 years' experience as a Contracts Manager in major civil works projects and registered as a Professional Construction Manager (Pr CM/CPM) with the SACPCMP.			
<b>Site Agent</b>	Minimum of 10 years of experience as a Site Agent on major civil works projects with minimum qualification of a BTech in the Built Environment.			
<b>General Foreman</b>	Minimum of 10 years of experience as a General Foreman in Civil projects			
<b>OHS Officer</b>	5 years' experience as a construction health and safety officer and has experience in major civil works projects. Registered with SACPCMP as Construction Health and Safety Officer or equivalent.			

**NOTE: Detailed Curriculum Vitae of proposed candidates are to be separately provided. Said Curriculum Vitae MUST indicate the name and description of the project, the value of project completed, role played in the project and the start and end dates of the project.**

.....  
 Signature

.....  
 Date

.....  
 Position

.....  
 Name of Bidder

---

**T2.2 OTHER DOCUMENTS REQUIRED FOR TENDER EVALUATION**

T2.2 A	CERTIFICATE OF AUTHORITY OF SIGNATORY .....	T.63
T2.2 B	CERTIFICATE OF REGISTRATION WITH THE CONSTRUCTION INDUSTRY DEVELOPMENT BOARD .....	T.67
T2.2 C	RECORD OF ADDENDA TO BID DOCUMENTS .....	T.72
T2.2 D	FORM OF INTENT TO PROVIDE A DEMAND GUARANTEE .....	T.73
T2.2 E	HEALTH AND SAFETY PLAN: DECLARATION BY BIDDER .....	T.74
T2.2 F	SCHEDULE OF PROPOSED SUB-CONTRACTORS .....	T.75
T2.2 G	QUALITY ASSURANCE PROGRAMME .....	T.78
T2.2 H	INSURANCE STATEMENT .....	T.79
T2.2 I	FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF BIDDER .....	T.80
T2.2 J	ALTERATIONS BY BIDDER .....	T.82
T2.2 K	AUDITED ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENT FOR THE PAST THREE YEARS .....	T.83
T2.2 L	MUNICIPAL UTILITY ACCOUNT .....	T.84

## T2.2 A CERTIFICATE OF AUTHORITY OF SIGNATORY

Indicate the status of the Bidder by ticking the appropriate box hereunder. The Bidder must complete the certificate set out below for the relevant category.

A Company

B Partnership

C Joint Venture

D Sole Proprietor

E Close Corporation

**A. Certificate for company**

I, ....., chairperson of the board of directors of .....  
 ....., hereby confirm that by resolution of the board (copy  
 attached) taken on ..... 20....., Mr/Ms .....,  
 acting in the capacity of ....., was authorised to sign all  
 documents in connection with this bid and any contract resulting from it on behalf of the company.

As witnesses:

1. ....  
 .....  
 Chairman  
 .....  
 Print Name  
 Print Name

2. ....  
 .....  
 Date  
 .....  
 Print Name

**B. Certificate of partnership**

We, the undersigned, being the key partners in the business trading as .....  
 ....., hereby authorise Mr/Ms ....., acting in  
 the capacity of ....., to sign all documents in connection with  
 the bid for Contract ....., and any contract resulting from it on  
 our behalf.

Name	Address	Signature	Date

**NOTE:** This certificate is to be completed and **signed by each and all of the key partners** upon whom rests the direction of the affairs of the Partnership as a whole.

**C. Certificate for Joint Venture**

We, the undersigned, are submitting this bid offer in Joint Venture and hereby authorize Mr/Ms ..... authorised signatory of the firm ..... acting in the capacity of lead partner, to sign all documents in connection with the bid offer for Contract ..... and any contract resulting from it on our behalf.

This authorisation is evidenced by the attached power of attorney signed by legally authorised signatories of all the partners to the Joint Venture.

Name of Firm	Address	Authorising	
		Signature	Name
Lead Partner			

**D. Certificate for sole proprietor**

I, ....., hereby confirm that I am the sole owner of the business trading as .....

.....

Signature: Sole Owner

Print Name

As witnesses:-

1. ....  
 Print Name Date

2. ....  
 Print Name Date

---

**E. Certificate for Close Corporation**

We, the undersigned, being the key members in the business trading as .....  
..... hereby authorise Mr/Ms ....., acting  
in  
the capacity of ....., to sign all documents in connection with the bid  
for Contract ..... and any contract resulting from it on our behalf.

Name	Address	Signature	Date

Note: This Certificate is to be completed and signed by each and all of the key members upon whom rests the direction of the affairs of the Close Corporation as a whole.

---

## T2.2 B CERTIFICATE OF REGISTRATION WITH THE CONSTRUCTION INDUSTRY DEVELOPMENT BOARD

### 1. General

The Register of Contractors is established by the Construction Industry Development Board in terms of the CIDB Act 38 of 2000 and Construction Industry Development Regulations as published in Government Gazette number 26427 of 2004.

The Act makes it mandatory for public sector clients to apply this register when considering bids. Any enterprise that submits a bid or enters into contract for construction works with the public sector, must be registered.

Once-off joint ventures do not have to register, provided that each partner of the joint venture is separately registered.

### 2. Status

Bidders shall fill in the following sections of this form, depending on their status:

#### 2.1 Section A

Bidders who have accomplished registration and can provide proof of their grading designation.

#### 2.2 Section B

Bidders who are in the process of registration of an update to an existing registration or a renewal.

#### 2.3 Section C

Bidders who have submitted the first application.

#### 2.4 Section D

Bidders submitting this Bid offer in Joint Venture and can provide proof that each partner of the Joint Venture is separately registered.

**Note: Only complete one of Sections A, B, C or D.**

**SECTION A**

I, ..... acting in capacity of .....  
was authorised to sign all documents in connection with this bid an any contract resulting from it on  
behalf of the following entity: .....

hereby declare that the above mentioned entity has achieved registration with the Construction Indus-  
try Development Board on date ..... and declare that the grading  
designation is reflected in the following **symbols** on the registration certificate.

Contract Value	
----------------	--

Type of Work		
--------------	--	--

.....  
Signature of Bidder

.....  
Signature of Witness

.....  
Print Name

.....  
Print Name



**SECTION B**

I, ..... acting in capacity of .....  
 was authorised to sign all documents in connection with this bid and any contract resulting from it on  
 behalf of the following entity: .....  
 hereby declare that the above mentioned entity has achieved registration with the Construction Industry  
 Development Board on date ..... furthermore declare  
 that the existing grading designation is:

Contract Value	
----------------	--

Type of Work		
--------------	--	--

and the following update has been applied for:

mark with a "☐"

Amendment of Category Status	
Change of Particulars	
Annual Confirmation of Particulars	
Renewal of Registration	

.....  
 Signature of Bidder

.....  
 Signature of Witness

.....  
 Print Name

.....  
 Print Name

**SECTION C**

I, ..... acting in capacity of .....  
was authorised to sign all documents in connection with this bid and any contract resulting from in/on  
behalf of the following entity: .....  
hereby declare that the above-mentioned entity has submitted its FIRST APPLICATION FOR  
REGISTRATION with the Construction Industry Development Board on date .....

I furthermore accept that failure to achieve registration with the Construction Industry Development Board in a category stipulated in the Bid Data within 10 days from the date of closing this bid, implies a non-responsive bid and warrants rejection of the Bid on account of non-compliance with the requirements of the Bid Data.

.....  
Signature of Bidder

.....  
Signature of Witness

.....  
Print Name

.....  
Print Name

**SECTION D**

I, ..... acting in capacity of the LEAD PARTNER in the Joint Venture

.....  
 . was authorised to sign all documents in connection with this bid and any contract resulting from it, hereby declare that each of the Joint Venture is separately registered with the Construction Industry Development Board and declare that the grading designation is reflected in the following **symbols** on the registration certificates:

Name of Lead Partner:		
Contract Value		
Type of Work		

Name of 2 <sup>nd</sup> Partner:		
Contract Value		
Type of Work		

Name of 3 <sup>rd</sup> Partner:		
Contract Value		
Type of Work		

.....  
 Signature of Bidder

.....  
 Signature of Witness

.....  
 Print Name

.....  
 Print Name

**T2.2 C RECORD OF ADDENDA TO BID DOCUMENTS**

We confirm that the following communications received from the Procuring Department before the submission of this Bid Offer, amending the Bid Documents, have been taken into account in this Bid Offer:

	<b>Date</b>	<b>Title or Details</b>
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		

Attach additional pages if more space is required.

Signed ..... Date .....

Print Name ..... Position .....

Bidder .....

---

**T2.2 D FORM OF INTENT TO PROVIDE A DEMAND GUARANTEE**

If my/our bid is accepted, I/we will, when required and within the time stipulated, provide a guarantee of

Insurance Company (name) .....

(of address) .....

.....

or

Commercial Bank (Name) .....

(Branch) .....

(of address) .....

.....

to be approved by you, the Employer, for the amount stipulated.

I/we understand that failure to produce an acceptable Demand Guarantee within the stipulated period is a fundamental breach of Contract, entitling the Employer to:

- (i) withhold all payments which may be due to the Contractor pending compliance with the stipulated requirements to produce an acceptable Demand Guarantee.
- (ii) instruct the Contractor to cease all work pending provision of the Demand Guarantee, and
- (iii) cancel the Contract.

Signed ..... Date .....

Print Name ..... Position .....

Bidder .....

---

**T2.2 E HEALTH AND SAFETY PLAN: DECLARATION BY BIDDER**

I/we declare that we have read and understand the health and safety specifications contained in the Contract Data and undertake to:

- provide and demonstrate to the Employer a suitably and sufficiently documented health and safety plan, which shall be applied from the date of commencement of and for the duration of the construction work,
- appoint a full-time competent employee in writing as the Construction Supervisor from the date of commencement of and for the duration of construction work,
- appoint a full time/part time competent employee in writing as the Construction Safety Officer from the date of commencement of and for the duration of construction work.

I/we undertake to rectify all non-conforming conditions for which we are responsible. I/we accept that, should I/we not rectify these timeously, they will be corrected by the Employer and the cost subtracted from any amounts due to me/us in terms of the Contract Data.

I/we confirm that I/we am/are registered and in good standing with the Compensation Fund and our registration number is: .....

alternatively, my/our licensed compensation insurer is:

(Name) .....

(Address) .....

.....

To this effect, I/we attach proof of registration and good standing.

I/we certify that to the best of my/our knowledge and belief, the curricula vitae of our proposed key health and safety personnel cited hereinafter correctly describe their qualifications and experience.

Signed ..... Date .....

Print Name ..... Position .....

Bidder .....

---

**T2.2 F SCHEDULE OF PROPOSED SUB-CONTRACTORS**

We notify you that it is our intention to employ the following Sub-Contractors for work in this contract.

If we are awarded a contract, we agree that this notification does not change the requirement for us to submit the names of proposed Sub-Contractors in accordance with requirements in the Contract for such appointments.

	<b>Name and Address of Proposed Sub-Contractor</b>	<b>Nature and Extent of Work</b>	<b>Previous Experience with Sub-Contractor</b>
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			

Signed ..... Date .....

Print Name ..... Position .....

Bidder .....

---

**SUB-CONTRACTING UNDERTAKING**

LETTER OF UNDERTAKING TO PERFORM AS A SUB-CONTRACTOR  
(Copy as many as necessary)

Contract Number: .....

From: (Name and address of Sub-contractor)

.....  
.....  
.....

To: (Name and address of Contractor)

.....  
.....  
.....

The undersigned undertakes to \*perform work/provide services/supply goods in connection with the above Contract as a \*close corporation/sole proprietor/partnership/company and is prepared to perform in connection with the above-named Contract as Sub-contractor to the Contractor, the following \*work/provide the following services/supply the following goods:  
**\*(delete that which is not applicable)**

.....  
.....

for an estimated amount of R..... excluding VAT, subject to the terms of any agreement made between us for the purpose of the Contract which agreement shall include the General Conditions of Contract and relevant Special Conditions that govern this Contract.

Signature: .....

Name: .....

Designation: .....

Date: .....

who duly warrants that he/she is authorised to sign this letter.



---

**SUB-CONTRACTING UNDERTAKING**

LETTER OF UNDERTAKING TO PERFORM AS A SUB-CONTRACTOR  
(Copy as many as necessary)

Contract Number: .....

From: (Name and address of Sub-contractor)

.....  
.....  
.....

To: (Name and address of Contractor)

.....  
.....  
.....

The undersigned undertakes to \*perform work/provide services/supply goods in connection with the above Contract as a \*close corporation/sole proprietor/partnership/company and is prepared to perform in connection with the above-named Contract as Sub-contractor to the Contractor, the following \*work/provide the following services/supply the following goods:  
**\*(delete that which is not applicable)**

.....  
.....

for an estimated amount of R..... excluding VAT, subject to the terms of any agreement made between us for the purpose of the Contract which agreement shall include the General Conditions of Contract and relevant Special Conditions that govern this Contract.

Signature: .....

Name: .....

Designation: .....

Date: .....

who duly warrants that he/she is authorised to sign this letter.

---

## T2.2 G QUALITY ASSURANCE PROGRAMME

Bidder to submit details here below of his Quality Assurance Policy whereby he shall demonstrate that he has the following:

- (a) An Operating Quality Management System based on SABS/ISO 9001: 2000 international standards, if not, state alternative.
- (b) Proof of Quality Assurance Co-ordination.
- (c) Proven technical capabilities and resources to ensure Quality Management.
- (d) A recent assessment/audit report on his Quality Management and Quality Control System(s).

Contractor's details with respect to items a), b), c) and d):

SIGNATURE OF BIDDER ..... DATE .....

.....  
Print Name of Signatory

ON BEHALF OF: ..... (the Bidder)

**T2.2 H INSURANCE STATEMENT**

**BIDDER'S DECLARATION OF INSURANCES**

I/We hereby declare that the insurances enumerated below have been affected by me/us.

I/We further declare that all premiums in respect of the insurances are fully paid up to date.

<b>Cover Effected</b>	<b>Insurer and Policy Number</b>	<b>Expiry Date</b>	<b>Limits of Indemnity / Sums Insured</b>	<b>Deductibles</b>
Contractor's All Risks				
Occupational Injuries and Diseases				
Unemployment Insurance				
Motor Vehicle Insurance				
Other:				

We submit herewith a letter of good standing from the Workman's Compensation Commissioner in respect of Occupational Injuries and Diseases Insurance.

Bidder: .....

.....  
 Signature of Bidder

.....  
 Print Name of Signatory

.....  
 Capacity

**T2.2 I FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF BIDDER**

This information sheet has to be filled in by the financier of the Bidder, duly signed and stamped on behalf of the financial institution he represents.

**Bidder / Bid Details**

Bid Description : .....

Contract Period : .....

Name of Bidder : .....

Bank Account Number : .....

Bidding Amount : .....

Demand Guarantee will be provided by this Bank: YES  NO

If yes, state amount of Demand Guarantee: R .....

**Financial Institution**

Name of Commercial Bank : .....

Branch : .....

Name of Bank Manager : .....

Telephone Number : .....

I / We acting on behalf of the above Commercial Bank confirm that

..... (Bidder)

has operated an account with us for the last ..... years.

We have been requested to provide a bank rating based in relation to the financial capability of the Bidder, taking into account directives set out in the following two tables.

**Financial Capability**

Maximum value of contract that the Bidder is considered capable of	Value on which Bank Rating must be used
up to R300 000	R24 000
R1 000 000	R78 000
R3 000 000	R240 000
R5 000 000	R480 000
R10 000 000	R900 000
R30 000 000	R2 400 000
R100 000 000	R7 800 000

<b>BANK RATING</b>	
<b>Bank Code</b>	<b>Description of Bank Code</b>
A	Undoubted for the amount of enquiry
B	Good for the amount of enquiry
C	Good for the amount quoted if strictly in the way of business
D	Fair trade risk for amount of enquiry
E	Figures considered too high
F	Financial position unknown
G	Occasional dishonours
H	Frequent dishonours

The value on which our Bank Rating of the Bidder is based is R.....

(In words ..... only)

The Bank Rating is code: .....

.....  
Signature: Manager Financial Institution

.....  
Print Name

.....  
Date

**RUBBER STAMP OF INSTITUTION**



**T2.2 J ALTERATIONS BY BIDDER**

Should the Bidder desire to make any departures from or modifications to the “Bid” or “Contract”, or to qualify his bid in any way, he shall set out his proposals clearly hereunder or alternatively state them in a covering letter attached to his bid and referred to hereunder, failing which the bid will be deemed to be unqualified.

Page	Item of Clause	Details	Cost Involved (R)

Signed ..... Date .....

Print Name ..... Position .....

Bidder .....

---

**T2.2 K AUDITED ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENT FOR THE PAST THREE YEARS**

**ATTACH AUDITED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

---

**T2.2 L MUNICIPAL UTILITY ACCOUNT**

**DECLARATION BY THE TENDERER**

I the undersigned \_\_\_\_\_, has  
been duly authorized to sign all documents with the Bid Number  
\_\_\_\_\_ on behalf of \_\_\_\_\_  
hereby make a declaration as follows:(referred to herein as “the Bidder”)

1. I declare that the bidder and /or any of its director(s) / member(s) does not owe the municipality, or any other municipality and/or municipal entity any amount which is in arrears in respect of any municipal rates and taxes or municipal service charges.
2. I understand and accept that in the event that this declaration is proved to be false, the bid shall be rejected forthwith. All other rights of the municipality (including but not limited to the right to claim damages where applicable) shall remain reserved in full.

SIGNED ON BEHALF OF THE COMPANY

\_\_\_\_\_

IN HIS CAPACITY AS

\_\_\_\_\_

DATE

\_\_\_\_\_

FULL NAMES OF SIGNATORY

\_\_\_\_\_



<b>UTILITY ACCOUNT NUMBER</b>	<b>NAME OF MUNICIPALITY</b>	<b>NAME OF OWNER</b>

**ATTACH AN ORIGINAL A CERTIFIED COPY OF A MUNICIPAL UTILITY ACCOUNT (NOT OLDER THAN THREE (3) MONTHS)**

**Important: Note the following**

- List Account(s) registered either in the name(s) of the Director(s) or the Company on the declaration form attached hereto.
- Attach Municipal Utility account of Company's registered office (if applicable) and in case of leased premises, attach lease agreement and the services account of leased premises. (issued in the name of the bidding company)

---

**T2.3      RETURNABLE SCHEDULES THAT WILL BE INCORPORATED INTO THE  
CONTRACT**

T2.3 A	PROJECT PROGRAMME AND METHOD STATEMENT .....	T.87
T2.3 B	SCHEDULE OF ESTIMATED MONTHLY EXPENDITURE .....	T.88
T2.3 C	RATES FOR SPECIAL MATERIALS .....	T.89

**T2.3 A PROJECT PROGRAMME AND METHOD STATEMENT**

Tenderer to supply project programme, using acceptable software, in sufficient detail to cover the various facets of the work.

This programme is to be supported by a method statement indicating the tenderer's proposed work plan for the construction of the works.

SIGNED ON BEHALF OF TENDERER: .....

**Note to Tenderer**

**If a tenderer wishes to submit an alternative tender, then this form, appropriately completed, shall be attached to the bill of quantities for the alternative proposal.**

**T2.3 B SCHEDULE OF ESTIMATED MONTHLY EXPENDITURE**

The tenderer shall state his estimated value of the work to be completed every month, based on his preliminary programme and his tendered unit rates, in the table below. The amounts for contingencies and contract price adjustment shall not be included.

MONTH	VALUE (INCLUDING VAT)
1	R
2	R
3	R
4	R
5	R
6	R
7	R
8	R
9	R
10	R
11	R
12	R
13	R
14	R
15 (FINAL)	R
<b>TOTAL: R.....</b> <b>(EXCLUDING CONTINGENCIES AND CONTRACT PRICE ADJUSTMENT)</b>	

SIGNED ON BEHALF OF TENDERER: .....

**T2.3 C RATES FOR SPECIAL MATERIALS**

Only bitumen products will be dealt with as a special material in terms of subclause 6.8.3 of the General Conditions of Contract. All bitumen products, as indicated in the contract data must be stated in the list below.

The rates and prices for the special materials shall be furnished by the contractor, which rates and prices shall exclude VAT but shall include all other obligatory taxes and levies.

**BASE MONTH = AUGUST 2023**

SPECIAL MATERIALS	UNIT *	RATE OR PRICE FOR THE BASE MONTH

\* Indicate whether the material will be delivered in bulk or in containers.

When called upon to do so, the contractor shall substantiate the above rates or prices with acceptable documentary evidence from the applicable refinery supplying the bitumen.

SIGNED ON BEHALF OF TENDERER: .....

## THE CONTRACT

PART C1	AGREEMENT AND CONTRACT DATA
PART C2	PRICING DATA
PART C3	SCOPE OF WORKS
PART C4	SITE INFORMATION

## PART C1: AGREEMENT AND CONTRACT DATA

C1.1	FORM OF OFFER AND ACCEPTANCE .....	C.3
C1.2	PERFORMANCE GUARANTEE .....	C.8
C1.3	CONTRACT DATA .....	C.11
C1.4	PERFORMANCE GUARANTEE FOR MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT NOT YET BUILT INTO THE WORKS .....	C.26
C1.5	RETENTION MONEY GUARANTEE .....	C.29
C1.6	AGREEMENT IN TERMS OF THE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT 85 OF 1993 AND APPOINTMENT AS MINE MANAGER IN TERMS OF SECTION 3(1)(A) OF MINE HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT 29 OF 1996. ....	C.31
C1.7	ABSTRACTS OF THE MINE HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT NO. 29 OF 1996 AND AMENDMENT ACT NO. 72 OF 1997 .....	C.38
C1.8	AGREEMENT WITH ADJUDICATOR .....	C.39

**C1.1 FORM OF OFFER AND ACCEPTANCE**

**Offer**

The employer, identified in the acceptance signature block, has solicited offers to enter into a contract in respect of the following works:

**BID NO.: 40/2023/2024**

**For the**

**UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS**

The tenderer, identified in the offer signature block, has examined the documents listed in the tender data and addenda thereto as listed in the tender schedules, and by submitting this offer has accepted the conditions of tender.

By the representative of the tenderer, deemed to be duly authorized, signing this part of the Form of Offer and Acceptance, the tenderer offers to perform all of the obligations and liabilities of the contractor under the contract including compliance with all its terms and conditions according to their true intent and meaning for an amount to be determined in accordance with the conditions of contract identified in the contract data.

**THE OFFERED TOTAL OF THE PRICE INCLUSIVE OF VALUE ADDED TAX IS (CONTRACT PRICE)**

.....  
.....

Rand (in words); R ..... (in figures)

This offer may be accepted by the employer by signing the acceptance part of this form of offer and acceptance and returning one copy of this document to the tenderer before the end of the period of validity stated in the tender data, whereupon the tenderer becomes the party named as the contractor in the conditions of contract identified in the contract data.

For the Tenderer:

Signature(s) .. .. .

Name(s) .. .. .

Capacity .. .. .

Name and address of organization

.....  
.....

Signature and Name of Witness:

Signature .. .. .

Name .. .. .

Date .. .. .



## Acceptance

By signing this part of this form of offer and acceptance, the employer identified below accepts the tenderer's offer. In consideration thereof, the employer shall pay the contractor the amount due in accordance with the conditions of contract identified in the contract data. Acceptance of the tenderer's offer shall form an agreement between the employer and the tenderer upon the terms and conditions contained in this agreement and in the contract that is the subject of this agreement.

The terms of the contract are contained in:

PART C1 Agreements and contract data, (which includes this agreement)

PART C2 Pricing data

PART C3 Scope of work

PART C4 Site information

and drawings and documents or parts thereof, which may be incorporated by reference into Parts C1 to C4 above.

Deviations from and amendments to the documents listed in the tender data and any addenda thereto as listed in the tender schedules as well as any changes to the terms of the offer agreed by the tenderer and the employer during this process of offer and acceptance, are contained in the schedule of deviations attached to and forming part of this agreement. No amendments to or deviations from said documents are valid unless contained in this schedule, which must be signed by the authorised representative(s) of both parties.

The tenderer shall within two weeks after receiving a completed copy of this agreement, including the schedule of deviations (if any), contact the employer's agent (whose details are given in the contract data) to arrange the delivery of any bonds, guarantees, proof of insurance and any other documentation to be provided in terms of the conditions of contract identified in the contract data at, or just after, the date this agreement comes into effect. Failure to fulfil any of these obligations in accordance with those terms shall constitute a repudiation of this agreement.

Notwithstanding anything contained herein, this agreement comes into effect on the date when the tenderer receives one copy of the fully signed original document, including the schedule of deviations (if any). Unless the tenderer (now contractor) within five days of the date of such receipt notifies the employer in writing of any reason why he cannot accept the contents of this agreement, this agreement shall constitute a binding contract between the parties.

**For the Employer**

Signature .....

Name .....

Capacity .....

**Name and address of organization**

**Thulamela Local Municipality  
Private Bag x 5066  
Thohoyandou  
0950**

**Signature and Name of Witness**

Signature .....

Name .....

Capacity .....

---

**Schedule of Deviations**

Notes:

1. The extent of deviations from the tender documents issued by the Employer prior to the tender closing date is limited to those permitted in terms of the Conditions of Tender,
2. A Tenderer's covering letter shall not be included in the final contract document. Should any matter in such, letter, which constitutes a deviation as aforesaid become the subject of agreements reached during the process of, offer and acceptance, the outcome of such agreement shall be recorded here,
3. Any other matter arising from the process of offer and acceptance either as a confirmation, clarification or change to the tender documents and which it is agreed by the Parties becomes an obligation of the contract shall also be recorded here,
4. Any change or addition to the tender documents arising from the above agreements and recorded here, shall also be incorporated into the final draft of the Contract,
  - 4.1 Subject .....
  - Details .....
  - 4.2 Subject .....
  - Details .....

By the duly authorised representatives signing this schedule of deviations, the employer and the tenderer agree to and accept the foregoing schedule of deviations as the only deviations from and amendments to the documents listed in the tender data and addenda thereto as listed in the tender schedules, as well as any confirmation, clarification or changes to the terms of the offer agreed by the tenderer and the employer during this process of offer and acceptance.

It is expressly agreed that no other matter whether in writing, oral communication or implied during the period between the issue of the tender documents and the receipt by the tenderer of a completed signed copy of this Agreement shall have any meaning or effect in the contract between the parties arising from this agreement.

**For the Tenderer:**

..... Signature  
..... Name  
..... Capacity

Name and address of organisation:

.....  
.....  
.....

**For the Employer**

.....  
.....  
.....

Name and address of organisation

**THULAMELA LOCAL MUNICIPALITY**  
Private Bag x 5066  
**THOHOYANDOU**  
**0950**

..... Witness Signature .....

..... Witness Name .....

..... Date .....

**Confirmation of Receipt**

The Tenderer, (now Contractor), identified in the Offer part of this Agreement hereby confirms receipt from the Employer, identified in the Acceptance part of this Agreement, of one fully completed original copy of this Agreement, including the Schedule of Deviations (if any) today:

the ..... (day) of ..... (month) 20.... (year) at  
..... (place)

**For the Contractor:**

Signature .....

Name .....

Capacity .....

**Signature and name of witness:**

Signature

Name .....

---

**C1.2 PERFORMANCE GUARANTEE**

**(Not to be completed at tender stage)**

In accordance with clause 6.2.1 of General Conditions of Contract, 3<sup>rd</sup> Edition (2015)

“Guarantor” means: .....

Physical address: .....

“Employer” means: .....

“Contractor” means: .....

“Engineer” means: .....

“Works” means: .....

“Site” means: .....

“Contract” means: The Agreement made in terms of the Form of Offer and Acceptance and such amendments or additions to the Contract as may be agreed in writing between the parties.

“Contract Sum” means: The accepted amount inclusive of tax of R .....

Amount in words: .....

“Guaranteed Sum” means: The maximum aggregate amount of R .....

Amount in words: .....

“Expiry Date” means: .....

**CONTRACT DETAILS**

Engineer issues: Interim Payment Certificates, Final Payment Certificate and the Certificate Completion of the Works as defined in the Contract.

---

## PERFORMANCE GUARANTEE

1. The Guarantor's liability shall be limited to the amount of the Guaranteed Sum.
2. The Guarantor's period of liability shall be from and including the date of issue of this Performance Guarantee and up to and including the Expiry Date or the date of issue by the Engineer of the Certificate of Completion of the Works or the date of payment in full of the Guaranteed Sum, whichever occurs first. The Engineer and/or the Employer shall advise the Guarantor in writing of the date on which the Certificate of Completion of the Works has been issued.
3. The Guarantor hereby acknowledges that:
  - 3.1 any reference in this Performance Guarantee to the Contract is made for the purpose of convenience and shall not be construed as any intention whatsoever to create an accessory obligation or any intention whatsoever to create a suretyship;
  - 3.2 its obligation under this Performance Guarantee is restricted to the payment of money.
4. Subject to the Guarantor's maximum liability referred to in 1, the Guarantor hereby undertakes to pay the Employer the sum certified upon receipt of the documents identified in 4.1 to 4.3:
  - 4.1 A copy of a first written demand issued by the Employer to the Contractor stating that payment of a sum certified by the Engineer in an Interim or Final Payment Certificate has not been made in terms of the Contract and failing such payment within seven (7) calendar days, the Employer intends to call upon the Guarantor to make payment in terms of 4.2;
  - 4.2 A first written demand issued by the Employer to the Guarantor at the Guarantor's physical address with a copy to the Contractor stating that a period of seven (7) days has elapsed since the first written demand in terms of 4.1 and the sum certified has still not been paid;
  - 4.3 A copy of the aforesaid payment certificate which entitles the Employer to receive payment in terms of the Contract of the sum certified in 4.
5. Subject to the Guarantor's maximum liability referred to in 1, the Guarantor undertakes to pay to the Employer the Guaranteed Sum or the full outstanding balance upon receipt of a first written demand from the Employer to the Guarantor at the Guarantor's physical address calling up this Performance Guarantee, such demand stating that:
  - 5.1 the Contract has been terminated due to the Contractor's default and that this Performance Guarantee is called up in terms of 5; or
  - 5.2 a provisional or final sequestration or liquidation court order has been granted against the Contractor and that the Performance Guarantee is called up in terms of 5; and
  - 5.3 the aforesaid written demand is accompanied by a copy of the notice of termination and/or the provisional/final sequestration and/or the provisional liquidation court order.
6. It is recorded that the aggregate amount of payments required to be made by the Guarantor in terms of 4 and 5 shall not exceed the Guarantor's maximum liability in terms of 1.
7. Where the Guarantor has made payment in terms of 5, the Employer shall upon the date of issue of the Final Payment Certificate submit an expense account to the Guarantor showing how all monies received in terms of this Performance Guarantee have been expended and shall refund to the Guarantor any resulting surplus. All monies refunded to the Guarantor in terms of this Performance Guarantee shall bear interest at the prime

- overdraft rate of the Employer’s bank compounded monthly and calculated from the date payment was made by the Guarantor to the Employer until the date of refund.
8. Payment by the Guarantor in terms of 4 or 5 shall be made within seven (7) calendar days upon receipt of the first written demand to the Guarantor.
  9. Payment by the Guarantor in terms of 5 will only be made against the return of the original Performance Guarantee by the Employer.
  10. The Employer shall have the absolute right to arrange his affairs with the Contractor in any manner which the Employer may deem fit and the Guarantor shall not have the right to claim his release from this Performance Guarantee on account of any conduct alleged to be prejudicial to the Guarantor.
  11. The Guarantor chooses the physical address as stated above for the service of all notices for all purposes in connection herewith.
  12. This Performance Guarantee is neither negotiable nor transferable and shall expire in terms of 2, where after no claims will be considered by the Guarantor. The original of this Guarantee shall be returned to the Guarantor after it has expired.
  13. This Performance Guarantee, with the required demand notices in terms of 4 or 5, shall be regarded as a liquid document for the purposes of obtaining a court order.
  14. Where this Performance Guarantee is issued in the Republic of South Africa the Guarantor hereby consents in terms of Section 45 of the Magistrate’s Courts Act No 32 of 1944, as amended, to the jurisdiction of the Magistrate’s Court of any district having jurisdiction in terms of Section 28 of the said Act, notwithstanding that the amount of the claim may exceed the jurisdiction of the Magistrate’s Court.

Signed at .....

Date .....

Guarantor’s signatory (1) .....

Capacity.....

Guarantor's signatory (2) .....

Capacity .....

Witness signatory (1) .....

Witness signatory (2) .....

---

**C1.3 CONTRACT DATA**

**C1.3.1 Conditions of Contract**

The Conditions of Contract are:

- the “General Conditions of Contract” as they appear in the commercially available publication “General Conditions of Contract for Construction Works, Third Edition, 2015”, hereinafter referred to as “GCC 2015”; and
- Specific data as contained in this Contract Data.

Each party to the Contract shall purchase its own copy of the GCC 2015 (Third Edition) that applies to this Contract, available from its publisher:

**South African Institution of Civil Engineering**

**Private Bag X200**

**Halfway House**

**1685**

**South Africa**

**Tel +27 (0)11 805 5947**

**The following Notes apply:**

**Note 1**

The GCC 2015 makes several references to the Contract Data.

Each item of data below is cross-referenced to the clause in the Conditions of Contract to which it applies. Notwithstanding anything specified to the contrary, the Contract Data shall take precedence in the interpretation of any ambiguity or inconsistency between it and the GCC 2015.

The documents forming the Contract are to be taken as mutually explanatory of one another. For the purpose of interpretation, the priority of the documents shall be in accordance with the following order of precedence:

- (a) The Form of Offer and Acceptance.
- (b) Amendments to the General Conditions of Contract within the Contract Data.
- (c) Additional conditions to the General Conditions of Contract within the Contract Data.
- (d) corrigenda to the General Conditions of Contract.
- (e) The General Conditions of Contract.
- (f) The Specifications, Drawings, Schedules and other documents forming part of the Contract (in that order) contained in the Scope of Work and the Site Information.



If any ambiguity or discrepancy is found in the documents, the Engineer needs to be contacted to issue any necessary clarification or instruction.

**Note 2**

Certain pro-forma forms and pro-forma agreements contained in the GCC 2015 have been adapted for this particular contract. Those pro-forma forms and pro-forma agreements contained in the GCC 2015 do not apply where replaced by similar pro-forma forms and pro-forma agreements in this document.

**C1.3.2 Contract Specific Data**

The following contract-specific data, referring to the General Conditions of Contract, are applicable to this Contract:

**Section 1: Data provided by the Employer**

Clause	Data
1.1.1.13	The Defects Liability Period is <b>12 calendar months</b> calculated from the date of the Certificate of Completion.
1.1.1.14	The time for achieving Practical Completion is <b>15 months</b> calculated from the Commencement Date, excluding special non-working days.
1.1.1.15	The name of the Employer is <b>Thulamela Local Municipality</b>
1.1.1.26	The Pricing Strategy of a Re-measurement Contract shall apply
1.2.1.2	<p>The address of the Employer is:</p> <p>Physical address:            Civic Centre            Old Agriven Building            Thohoyandou</p> <p>Postal address:            Private Bag x 5066            Thohoyandou            0950</p> <p>e-mail address: <a href="mailto:mphagiact@thulamela.gov.za">mphagiact@thulamela.gov.za</a> Contact numbers:</p> <p>Corporate: 015 962 7500            Direct: 015 962 7665            Fax: 015 962 4020</p>

Clause	Data
1.1.1.16	'Engineer' means any Director, Associate or Professional Engineer appointed by a Director of Tshashu Consulting and Project Managers to fulfil the functions of the Engineer in terms of the Contract Data.
1.2.1.2	<p>The employer's agent address for receipt of communication is:</p> <p>Physical address:                      29 Bendor Drive                      Propark- Pro Arch Building                      Bendor- Ext 8                      Polokwane,                      0699</p> <p>Postal address:                      P O Box 1249                      Fauna Park; 0787</p> <p>e-mail address:                      admin@tsconsulting.co.za</p> <p>Contact numbers:                      Corporate: 015 291 4365                      Mobile: 082 779 0876                      Fax: 015 291 5392</p>
3.2.1	<p>The Employer's Agent is required in terms of his appointment with the Employer to obtain the following specific approvals from the employer: e.g.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Approval of extension of time;</li> <li>2. Approval of additional costs;</li> <li>3. Approval of variation orders;</li> <li>4. Approval of penalties;</li> <li>5. Approval from Thulamela Local Municipality for the utilization of any Contingencies.</li> </ol>
4.4	<p>A minimum of 30% of the contract value must be sub-contracted to local contractors or suppliers for Contract more than R 30 million as defined in the Scope of Works.</p>

Clause	Data
4.9.1	The Contractor shall deliver to the Employer Agent, on a monthly basis, a detailed inventory of Construction Equipment kept on Site, full particulars given for each day of the month. Distinction shall be made between Owned Equipment and Hired Equipment as well as Equipment in working order and Equipment out of order. Such inventory shall be submitted by the seventh day of the month following the month to be reported.
4.10.2	The Contractor shall deliver to the Employer Agent, on a monthly basis, a return in detail of supervisory staff and the number of categorized classes of labour employed each day for the said period by the Contractor for execution of the Contract. Such return shall be submitted by the seventh day of the month following the month to be reported.
5.3.1	The documentation required <b>before commencement with Works execution</b> are: a) Health and Safety Plan (Refer to clause 4.3) b) Initial Programme (Refer to clause 5.6) c) Initial cash flow projection linked to the programme (Refer to clause 5.6.2.6) d) Security (Refer to clause 6.2) e) Insurance (refer to clause 8.6) f) Approach and methodology document for inclusion of QSE / EME sub-contractors, including detailed breakdown of rates. As described in Section 1.3.2 in Part C3 – Scope of Works.
5.3.1	The Works are to be commenced within fourteen <b>(14)</b> Days of the Commencement Date taken as Date of Site Hand-over.
5.3.2	The time to submit the documentation required before commencement with Works execution is <b>14 Days</b> .
5.4.2	The access and possession of Site shall not be exclusive to the Contractor but as set out in the Scope of Work and Site Information, as well as other Municipality appointed contractors, and in terms of all legislation, including the Construction Regulations 2014.
5.6.2	The programme shall contain the following activities and or items as a minimum requirement: a) Testing and acceptance control b) As-built levels and drawings c) Date for Practical Completion d) Date for Completion e) Health & Safety Compliance Audits f) Environmental Compliance Audits

Clause	Data
5.8.1	<p>The non-working Days are Sundays.</p> <p>The special non-working Days are:            Statutory public holidays; and            All annual year-end shutdown periods as recommended by the South African Federation of Civil Engineering Contractors (SAFCEC), and which commence after the Commencement Date, and which commence before the Due Completion Date.</p>
5.9.7	<p>All designs, calculations, drawings and operation and maintenance manuals shall be fully endorsed by a third-party registered engineer, accomplished in such specific field of practice and the cost thereof shall be borne solely by the Contractor.</p> <p>Once the alternative design has been approved, the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Engineer, the Employer, their agents and assigns, against all claims howsoever arising out of the said design, whether in contract or delict”.</p>
5.13.1	<p>The penalty for delay is <b>R 3 500.00 per calendar day.</b></p>
5.16.3	<p>The latent defect period is <b>10 years</b>, commencing on the Day after the date of certification of Practical Completion.</p>
6.2.1	<p>The type of security required for the due performance of the Contract shall be restricted to one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cash deposit of <b>10 (ten) percent of the Contract Sum</b>,</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">or</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Performance Guarantee of 10 (ten) percent of the Contract Sum, issued by a Commercial Bank registered in the Republic of South Africa,</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">or</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Performance Guarantee of 10 (Ten) percent of the Contract Sum, issued by an Insurance Company registered in terms of the Short-tem Insurance Act (Act 53 of 1998).</li> </ul> <p><b>Whenever a Joint Venture constitutes the contracting party (Contractor) to this Contract, the Performance Guarantee shall be issued on behalf of the Joint Venture.</b></p>

Clause	Data															
6.2.2	Delete the entire contents of Clause 6.2.2 and replace with: “Failure to deliver an acceptable security as selected in the Contract Data within the stipulated period is a fundamental breach of Contract”.															
6.5.1.2.3	The percentage allowance to cover overhead charges is <b>10 (ten) percent</b> .															
6.8.2	<p>The value of certificates issued shall be adjusted in accordance with the Contract Price Adjustment Schedule with the following values:</p> <table style="margin-left: 40px;"> <tr> <td>x</td> <td>=</td> <td>0.10</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Labour</td> <td>a =</td> <td>0.20</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Plant</td> <td>b =</td> <td>0.40</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Material</td> <td>c =</td> <td>0.25</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Fuel</td> <td>d =</td> <td>0.15</td> </tr> </table> <p>The applicable area is <b>Limpopo Province</b>.</p> <p>The applicable industry for the Producer Price Index for materials is Civil Engineering Materials Index</p> <p>The applicable area for the Producer Price Index for fuel is <b>Witwatersrand</b></p> <p>The base month is the month prior to closing date of bid.</p>	x	=	0.10	Labour	a =	0.20	Plant	b =	0.40	Material	c =	0.25	Fuel	d =	0.15
x	=	0.10														
Labour	a =	0.20														
Plant	b =	0.40														
Material	c =	0.25														
Fuel	d =	0.15														
6.8.3	<p>The following are special materials:</p> <p>Bitumen binder extracted from petroleum-based products and used on site, including that used in asphalt, irrespective of whether it is produced and/or placed by the Contractor or an approved subcontractor.</p> <p>The rates and prices for the special materials shall be furnished by the contractor, which rates and prices ex refinery with the base date specified under 6.8.2 and shall exclude VAT but shall include all other obligatory taxes and levies on the basis specified in the contract price adjustment schedule (paragraph 4(i) and 4(ii)).</p>															
6.10.1.5	The percentage advance on materials not yet built into the Permanent Works is 80%. Proof of ownership is required and material on site must be utilised within three (3) months after delivery.															

Clause	Data
6.10.3	The percentage retention on amounts due to the Contractor is <b>10 (ten) percent</b> . The limit of retention money is 10 (ten) percent of the Contract Sum. Add the following sub-clause 6.10.3.1: A Retention Money Guarantee is not permitted.
8.6.1.1.2	The value of Plant and materials supplied by the Employer to be included in the insurance sum is <b>nil</b> .
8.6.1.1.3	The amount to cover professional fees for repairing damage and loss to be included in the insurance sum is a maximum of <b>nil</b> .
8.6.1.3	The Limit of the liability insurance required should not be less than the contract amount.
8.6.1.5	The following additional and varied insurances are required: CAR & SASRIA.
9.2.1.3.2	Clause 9.2.1.3.2 is replaced by the following "Has failed to submit documentation or to commence the Works in terms of Clause 5.3, or has suspended the progress of the Works for fourteen (14) consecutive days after receiving from the Employer's Agent written notice to proceed," duplicate to C1.5.2
10.5.2	Dispute resolution shall be referred to ad-hoc adjudication.
10.6.1	Should either of the contracting parties disagree with any decision of the adhoc adjudicator, such matter shall be referred to litigation for court judgement.
<b>Special Clause in terms of RDP</b>	Requirements in terms of government's reconstruction and development programme. Target values: In this project the minimum target values shall be as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Labour Maximisation (Wages) :<b>10%</b></li> <li>• SMME's :<b>15%</b></li> </ul>

Clause	Data
	<p>It is a requirement that the Contractor plan for achieving these targets and that a planned programme for achieving each of the targets is submitted at the start of the project together with the clause 12 programme of construction.</p> <p><b><u>Penalties:</u></b></p> <p>The penalties for not reaching the required labour and SMME target values will be calculated at <b>200%</b> of the difference between the set target values and the actual target values achieved by the contractor at completion of the works. Penalties will be applied monthly, when the actual figures are less than <b>75%</b> of the planned monthly figures. No bonuses for achieving the set target values are applicable.</p>
<p><b>Special Clause in terms of EPWP</b></p>	
<p><b>Payment for LI Component of Works</b></p>	<p>Payment for works identified in the Scope of Works as being labour-intensive shall only be made in accordance with the provisions of the Contract if the works are constructed strictly in accordance with the provisions of the Scope of Work. Any payment for such works shall not relieve the Contractor in any way from his obligations either in contract or in delict</p>
<p><b>Linkage of Payment to Submission of Project Data</b></p>	<p>The Contractor's payment invoices shall be accompanied by labour information for the corresponding period in a format specified by the employer. If the contractor chooses to delay submitting payment invoices, labour returns shall still be submitted as per frequency and timeframe stipulated by the Employer. The contractor's invoices shall not be paid until all pending labour information has been submitted.</p>
<p><b>Applicable Labour Laws</b></p>	<p>The current Ministerial Determination (also downloadable at <a href="http://www.epwp.gov.za">www.epwp.gov.za</a>), Expanded Public Works Programmes, issued in terms of the Basic Condition of Employment Act of 1997 by the Minister of Labour in Government Notice, shall apply to works described in the scope of work as being labour-intensive and which are undertaken by unskilled workers.</p>



**C1.3.4 Section 2: Data provided by the Contractor**

Clause	Data
1.1.1.9	The contractor is .....
1.2.1.2	The contractor's address for receipt of communication is: Telephone: ..... Facsimile: .....  E-mail:.....  Address:.....
5.5.1	The Works shall be completed within ..... Months as proposed by the contractor.
6.5.1.2.3	The percentage allowances to cover all charges for the contractor's and subcontractor's profits, timekeeping, clerical work, insurance, establishment, superintendence and the use of hand tools is .....% ( <b>Maximum 10%</b> ).
6.8.3	The rate for special materials, exclusive of Value Added Tax is to be completed in Schedule T2.3 C.

**PRIORITY OF DOCUMENTS**

The documents forming the Contract are to be taken as mutually explanatory of one another. For the purpose of interpretation, the priority of the documents shall be in accordance with the following sequence:

- a) The Form of Offer and Acceptance.
- b) Amplifications of the General Conditions of Contract within the Contract Data.
- c) Additional special conditions or amendments to the General Conditions of Contract within the Contract Data.
- d) The General Conditions of Contract.
- e) The Specifications, Drawings, Schedules and other documents forming part of the Contract (in that order) contained in the Scope of Work and the Site Information.

If any ambiguity or discrepancy is found in the documents, the Engineer shall issue any necessary clarification or instruction.

### **C1.3.3 Variations to the General Conditions of Contract**

The following amendments of the General Conditions of Contract 2015 apply to this contract. The headings in these Special Conditions of Contract shall not be deemed to be part thereof nor be taken into consideration in the interpretation or construction thereof or of the Contract.

## **4. CONTRACTOR'S GENERAL OBLIGATIONS**

### **4.1 EXTENT OF OBLIGATIONS AND LIABILITY** *Add the*

*following sub clause:*

- 4.1.1.1** The Contractor shall, save in so far as it is legally or physically impossible,
- (b) Provide all superintendence, labour, materials, Constructional Plant, Temporary Works, including the design thereof, all requisite transport and all other things, whether of a temporary or permanent nature, required in and for such design, execution and completion of the Works and for the remedying of any defects, so far as the necessity for providing the same is specified in or reasonably to be inferred from the Contract.
  - (c) After award of the Contract, the Contractor shall be obligated to ensure that at least the Constructional Plant stated on the prescribed form in the Tender Documents, or Constructional Plant equivalent thereto, are on the site when required.”

#### **“4.1.3 Contractor deemed to have inspected the Site**

The Contractor shall be deemed to have inspected and examined the Site and its surroundings and information available in connection therewith and to have satisfied himself before submitting his tender (as far as practicable) as to

- (a) the form and nature of the Site and its surroundings, including subsurface conditions,
- (b) the hydrological and climatic conditions.
- (c) the extent and nature of work and materials necessary for the execution and completion of the Works,
- (d) the means of access to the Site and the Accommodation he may require and, in general, shall be deemed to have obtained all information (as far as is practicable) as to risks, contingencies and all other circumstances which may influence or affect his tender.

No subsequent claims by the Contractor arising from his lack of knowledge of perceptible conditions on the site or its surroundings or of information available in connection therewith shall be entertained.”

## **4.3 LEGAL PROVISIONS**

Add the following sub-sub clauses:

- 4.3.1** The Contractor shall, in fulfilling the Contract, comply with all applicable laws, *with regard to Health, Safety, Wages and Condition of Work*, regulations, statutory provisions and agreements, and shall, at the request to the Employer's Agent, provide proof that he has complied therewith.

#### **4.3.1.1 Mine Health and Safety Act, number 29 of 1996**

The Employer shall obtain the Mining Authorisation for all sites where mining activities, as defined in the Mine Health and Safety Act, number 29 of 1996 as amended, are to be conducted.

#### **4.3.1.2 Mineral Resources Petroleum Development Act, number 28 of 2002**

The Contractor shall assume responsibility for the Environmental Management Programme (EMPR) in respect of the sites and shall ensure that the sites are rehabilitated at the conclusion of the contract.”

### **4.4. SUBCONTRACTING**

Add the following subclauses:

#### **“4.4.7 Continuing obligation extending beyond date of completion of the work**

In the event of a Selected Subcontractor having undertaken to the Contractor, in respect of work executed or goods or materials supplied by such Selected Subcontractor, any continuing obligation extending beyond the date of completion of the work or the end of the Defects Liability Period, and Latent Defect Liability Period as the case may be, the Contractor shall at any time after such date cede to the Employer, at the Employer’s request and cost, the benefit of such obligation for the unexpired duration thereof, whereupon the Employer shall have no further claim against the Contractor in respect of the said continuing obligation.

#### **4.4.8 Convert the subcontract**

If the contract shall have been cancelled in terms of clause 9.2, the Employer shall have the right, by written notice given to any Selected Subcontractor not later than 28 days after the said cancellation, to convert the subcontract concerned to a direct contract between the Employer and the Subcontractor.

Provided that:

- (a) the terms of the said direct contract shall mutatis mutandis be those of the subcontract concerned, and
- (b) the Employer shall have the said right, notwithstanding any breach of the subcontract by the Contractor, subject to his forthwith paying to the Subcontractor all amounts then owing to the Subcontractor by the Contractor and perform any obligation which the Contractor has failed to perform.”

### **4.9 CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT**

Add the following: sub clauses:

#### **“4.9.2 Preclude seizure of construction equipment**

In order to preclude seizure by the owner of any constructional plant being held by the Contractor on a hire or hire-purchase agreement for the purposes of the contract, the Employer shall be entitled to pay any such owner the amount of any outstanding instalment or other sum owing under any hire or hire-purchase agreement and in the event

---

of his doing so, any amount thus paid by him shall be a debt payable to the Employer by the Contractor and may be deducted by the Employer from any moneys owing or that may become owing to the Contractor in terms of the contract, or be recovered at law from the Contractor by the Employer.

#### **4.9.3 Constructional plant brought to the site by the subcontractor**

When entering into any subcontract agreement for the execution of any part of the works, the Contractor shall incorporate in such subcontract agreement, by reference or otherwise, the provisions of this clause in respect of construction equipment brought to the site by the subcontractor.”

### **5. TIME AND RELATED MATTERS**

#### **5.4 ACCESS TO THE SITE**

Add the following subclause:

**5.4.4** “If the site is insufficient for the needs and requirements of the work, the Contractor shall arrange with the owners or tenants for the additional land required and pay all rent and costs in connection therewith. The Contractor shall be responsible for all damage to such land and property, and he shall indemnify the Employer and hold him harmless in respect of all claims, demands proceedings, damages, costs, including attorneys and client costs, charges and expenses arising in respect thereof.”

#### **5.14 COMPLETION**

Delete the following:

“5.14.5.3 The retention shall be reduced to half in terms of Clause 6.10.5”

#### **5.16 APPROVAL**

##### **5.16.1 Final Approval Certificate**

Delete the last sentence of this clause and replace with:

The payment of the retention money or the release of the retention money guarantee shall only be permitted after the Engineer has issued the Final Approval Certificate.

### **6. PAYMENT AND RELATED MATTERS**

#### **6.6 PROVISIONAL SUMS AND PRIME COST SUMS**

6.6.1.2.1 In the first line after the word "sums" insert “excluding VAT”

6.6.1.2.2 In the fourth line after the word "amount" insert “excluding VAT”

##### **6.10.5 Payment of retention money**

Delete the first four lines where reference is made to the first half of retention. The paragraph should read:”

“Retention money shall become due when the Employer’s Agent shall have certified payment thereof within 14 days after the expiration of the Defects Liability Period, extended, if necessary, in terms of Clauses 5.14.4 or 7.8.1. No retention, or part thereof, will hence be payable upon the issue of a Certificate of Completion as indicated in Clause 5.14.5.3.

---

## **6.11 VARIATIONS EXCEEDING 15 PER CENT**

### **6.11.1** Second paragraph:

Change “15%” to “20%”.

Add the following subclause:

### **“6.11.2 Variations exceeding 20% per cent**

Where the decrease or increase in the quantity of work has not resulted from a written variation order (or an additional agreement) in terms of clause 5.11 but from the fact that the quantities are less or more than those given in the bill of quantities, the tendered rates or sums shall still apply, except in the case of a sub-item (or an item not subdivided into sub-items) in the bill of quantities, which covers work the value of which during the tender stage exceeds 7,5% of the value of the tender sum, and where the quantity of such subitem or item, upon completion of the contract, deviates by more than 20% from the quantity given in the bill of quantities so that the scale of activities or the method of construction consequently changes to such an extent that the tendered rate or sum no longer applies. In such case the Engineer, should he deem it to be in the interest of the Employer or should the Contractor enter a claim, shall, considering the extent by which the deviation in respect of the quantity of the sub-item or item concerned exceeds 20%, determine a sum which will be equitable in the circumstances, and shall certify that such sum shall be deducted from or added to the sums owing to the Contractor.”

## **8. RISKS AND RELATED MATTERS**

### **8.2 Care of works**

*Add the following:*

**8.2.2.4** The Contractor shall take care that property beacons, trigonometrical survey beacons or setting-out beacons are not displaced or destroyed without the consent of the Employer’s Agent. Property beacons and trigonometrical survey beacons that have been displaced or destroyed shall be replaced by a registered land surveyor, who shall certify such replacement.

The cost of replacing all beacons displaced or destroyed during the course of the Contract without the consent of the Employer’s Agent shall be borne by the Contractor.”

## **9. TERMINATION OF CONTRACT**

### **9.3 Termination by Contractor**

*Delete the wording of sub clause 9.3.1.1.2 and replace this clause with the following:*

**9.3.1.2** “Failing to pay the contractor the amount due in terms of any payment certificate issued by the Employer’s Agent, provided that such payment certificate is acceptable to the Employer and further more subject to the provision of sub-clause 3.2.3, within the time of payment provided in the contract, or.”

## **10. CLAIMS AND DISPUTES**

*Add the following*

### **10.12 Joint ventures**

"If the Contractor is in a joint venture of two or more parties or persons, the parties or persons shall be jointly and severally bound to the Employer for fulfilment of the Contractor's obligations and terms of this Contract. The formation and/or conditions of agreement of the joint venture shall not be altered without the consent of the Employers. Should such a change be acceptable to the Employer then two notarial certified copies of the revised Joint Venture Agreement shall be submitted to the Employer's Agent within fourteen (14) days of signature thereof by the parties to the Joint Venture."

---

**C1.4 PERFORMANCE GUARANTEE FOR MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT NOT YET BUILT INTO THE WORKS** (Not to be completed at bid stage)

To: .....  
.....  
.....

(Hereinafter referred to as the Employer)

re: Demand Guarantee in respect of the project: .....

Contract No. : .....

For construction of : .....

Contractor : .....

I/We, the undersigned,

.....

and.....

of.....

(hereinafter referred to as the "Bank")

---

address:

.....  
.....

and acting on behalf of the Bank have been informed that .....

(hereinafter called “the Contractor”) is your contractor under such Contract and wishes to receive payment in respect of manufacture or partial manufacture of equipment and/or materials brought in a ready state for despatch to the construction site, whether temporarily stored in the warehouse of the Contractor or on the Construction Site, for which the Contract requires him to obtain a guarantee.

We hereby irrevocably undertake to pay you, the Employer, any sum or sums not exceeding in total the amount of R..... (in words ..... only) the “Guaranteed Amount” upon receipt by us of your demand in writing and your written statement stating:

- that the Contractor has failed to deliver such equipment and/or materials when required or instructed to do so.

The Bank’s liability under this guarantee is principal in nature and is not subject to the Contract. The Bank’s liability shall not be reduced, or in any way be affected by any alteration of the terms of the Contract, or any other arrangements made between the Employer and Contractor.

The Bank will pay on demand and will not determine the validity of the demand or the correctness of the amount demanded, or become party to any claim or dispute of any nature which any party may allege.

The Bank will pay the amount demanded into the bank account to be notified by the Employer.

This guarantee is neither negotiable nor transferable, is restricted to the payment of a sum of money only and is limited to the Guaranteed Amount.

This guarantee will lapse sixty (60) days after all the said equipment and/or materials have been built into the Works unless the Bank is, before the expiration date, advised in writing by the Employer of his intention to demand payment for such equipment and/or materials.

This original guarantee must be returned to the Bank by the Employer or the Employer’s duly authorised agent either:

- on expiry of the guarantee; or
- against payment of the Guaranteed Amount.

This guarantee shall be governed by the law of the Republic of South Africa.

The Bank chooses as its domicilium citandi et executandi for the purpose of the service of all notices and legal processes the following address:



---

THUS DONE AND SIGNED AT ..... ON ..... 20.....

In the presence of the following:

AS WITNESSES:  
thereto

on behalf of the Bank and duly authorised

1. ....

1. ....

.....

.....

Print Name

Print Name

and

thereto

on behalf of the Bank and duly authorised

2. ....

2. ....

.....

.....

Print Name

Print Name

---

**C1.5 RETENTION MONEY GUARANTEE**

(not to be completed at bid stage)

TO: .....  
.....  
.....  
.....

(whom the Contract defines as “the Employer”)

Re: Retention Money Guarantee in respect of : .....  
Contract Number : .....  
For supply of : .....  
Contractor : .....

I/We, the undersigned,  
.....

and  
..... of

(hereinafter referred to as the “Bank”) address:  
.....  
.....

and acting on behalf of the Bank have been informed that ..... (hereinafter called the “Contractor”) is your contractor under such Contract and wishes to receive early payment of the retention money, for which the Contract requires him to obtain a guarantee.

We hereby irrevocably undertake to pay you, the Employer, any sum or sums not exceeding in total the amount of R..... (in words ..... ) (the “guaranteed amount”, upon receipt by us of your demand in writing and your written statement stating:

- that the Contractor failed to carry out his obligation(s) to rectify defect(s) for which he is responsible under the Contract.

The Bank’s liability under this guarantee is principal in nature and is not subject to the Contract. The Bank’s liability shall not be reduced, or in any way be affected by any alteration of the terms of the Contract, or any other arrangements made between the Employer and Contractor.

The Bank will pay on demand and will not determine the validity of the demand or the correctness of the amount demanded, or become party to any claim or dispute of any nature which any party may allege.

The Bank will pay the amount demanded into the Bank account to be notified by the Employer.

This guarantee is neither negotiable nor transferable, is restricted to the payment of a sum of money only and is limited to the Guaranteed Amount.

This guarantee shall expire on the date on which the last of the retention monies, which but for this guarantee would have been retained by the Employer, becomes payable to the Contractor.

This original guarantee must be returned to the Bank by the Employer or the Employer's duly authorised agent either:

- on expiry of the guarantee; or
- against payment of the Guaranteed Amount.

This guarantee shall be governed by the law of the Republic of South Africa.

The Bank chooses as its domicilium citandi et executandi for the purpose of the service of all notices and legal processes the following address:

THUS DONE AND SIGNED AT ..... ON ..... 20.....

In the presence of the following:

AS WITNESSES:

on behalf of the Bank and duly authorised thereto

1. ....

1. ....

.....

.....

Print Name

Print Name

and

on behalf of the Bank and duly authorised thereto

2. ....

2. ....

.....

.....

Print Name

Print Name

---

**C1.6 AGREEMENT IN TERMS OF THE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT 85 of 1993 AND APPOINTMENT AS MINE MANAGER IN TERMS OF SECTION 3(1)(a) OF MINE HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT 29 of 1996.**

This AGREEMENT made at ..... on this ..... day of ..... in the year ..... between Thulamela Local Municipality (hereinafter called “the Employer” on the one part, herein represented by ..... in his capacity as ..... And delegate of the Employer and ..... (hereinafter called “the Principal Contractor”) of the other part, herein represented by ..... in his capacity as .....

WHEREAS the Employer is desirous that certain works be constructed, as stated for in **Contract No BID NO:40/2023/2024** For (description of contract) **UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS** in the VHEMBE District of Limpopo Province and has accepted a tender by the Principal Contractor for the construction, completion and maintenance of such works and whereas the Employer and the Principal Contractor have agreed to certain arrangements and procedures to be followed in order to ensure compliance by the Principal Contractor with the provisions of the Occupational Health and Safety Act 1993(Act 85 of 1993 and the Construction Regulation, February 2014):

NOW THEREFORE THIS AGREEMENT WITNESSETH AS FOLLOWS:

1. The Principal Contractor shall execute the work in accordance with the contract documents pertaining to this contract.
2. This Agreement shall hold good from its commencement date, which shall be the date of a written notice from the employer or engineer requiring him to commence the execution of the Works, to either:
  - a) The date of the final certificate issued in terms of clause 5.14 of the General Conditions of Contract for Construction Works 2015 (Third Edition) as issued by the South African Institution of Civil Engineering (hereinafter referred to as “the GCC 2015”), as contained in the contract documents pertaining to this contract, or
  - b) The date of termination of the contract in terms of clause 9.1, 9.2 or 9.3 of the GCC 2015.
3. The Principal Contractor declares himself to be conversant with the following: -
  - a) All requirements, regulations and standards of the Occupational Health and Safety Act (Act 85 of 1993), hereinafter referred to as “The Act”, together with its amendments and with special reference to the following Sections of The Act.
    - i. Section 8: General duties of employers to their employees.
    - ii. Section 9: General duties of employers and self-employed persons to persons other than employees
    - iii. Section 37: Acts or omissions by employees or mandatories and
    - iv. Sub-section 37(2) relating to the purpose and meaning of this Agreement.
    - v. Construction Regulations 2014, and other safety regulations, as applicable.

- b) The procedures and safety rules of the employer as pertaining to the Principal Contractor and to his subcontractors.
- 4. The Principal Contractor is responsible for the compliance with the Act by his subcontractors, whether or not selected and/or approved by the employer.
- 5. The Principal Contractor warrants that all his and his sub-contractors' employees (permanent and temporary) are covered in terms of the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act 1993 which cover shall remain in force whilst any such employees are present on site. The Principal Contractor shall submit a written report to this effect at each Progress Site Meeting.
- 6. The Principal Contractor undertakes to ensure that he and/or his sub-contractors and/or their respective employees will at all times comply with the following conditions:
  - a) The Principal Contractor shall assume the responsibility in terms of Section 16.1 of the Occupational Health and Safety Act. The Principal contractor shall not delegate any duty in terms of Section 16.2 of this Act without the prior written approval of the Employer. If the Principal contractor obtains such approval and delegates any duty in terms of Section 16.2 a copy of such written delegation shall immediately be forwarded to the Employer.
  - b) All incidents referred to in the Occupational Health and Safety Act shall be reported by the Principal Contractor to the Department of Labour as well as to the Employer. The Employer will further be provided with copies of all written documentation relating to any incident.
  - c) The Employer hereby obtains an interest in the issues of any formal enquiry conducted in terms of Section 32 of the Occupational Health and Safety Act into any incident involving the Principal Contractor and/or his employees and/or his sub-contractors.

Further to the abovementioned, where contracts involve quarries or borrow pits, the following shall be applicable: -

In terms of Section 3(1)(a) of the Mine Health and Safety Act of 1996, Thulamela Local Municipality. shall appoint a manager for its mine/s.

You are hereby appointed as the mine manager for ....., with effect from ..... until further notice.

In terms of this appointment, you are charged with the functions, duties and responsibilities imposed by the aforementioned Act and its regulations. Without derogating from the duties, functions and responsibilities imposed by this legislation, you are to:

- i) Control, manage and direct employees at the Mine (borrow pit or quarry).
- ii) Take all reasonable measures to ensure the health and safety of employees and proper discipline at the Mine.
- iii) Take all reasonable measures to ensure that the provisions of the Mine Health and Safety Act and its regulations (as may be amended from time to time) are implemented and adhered to at the Mine.
- iv) Ensure and maintain a healthy and safe mine environment for all persons.

- 
- v) Ensure an adequate supply of health and safety equipment and facilities.
  - vi) Staff the Mine, with due regard to health and safety.
  - vii) Provide health and safety training as far as reasonably practicable to all employees.
  - viii) Initiate, prepare and implement codes of practice, relating to health and safety.
  - ix) Maintain an effective risk identification and management system.
  - x) Ensure the effective maintenance of hazard identification and medical monitoring records.
  - xi) Prepare and or review the Health and Safety Policy for the Mine.
  - xii) Ensure that an annual medical report is compiled at the Mine, and forwarded to the owner or the appointed owner representative of the Mine.
  - xiii) Ensure compliance with relevant environmental legislation.
  - xiv) Assist with implementation and maintenance of the Road Agency Limpopo SHE Management Standards, the Contractor's Compliance Pack and operational procedures.
  - xv) Enhance a culture of high performance in safety and health.

You are to appoint the prescribed persons to assist you in your duties and functions, and you are hereby authorised and obliged to take all reasonable measures to comply with legislative requirements. You are to ensure that an acting mine manager is appointed when you are to be absent, or on leave for a period longer than five (5) days.

Instructions and procedures are from time to time issued by the board of the Roads Agency Limpopo, and it will be your responsibility to ensure the implementation and adherence to these instructions and procedures at the Mine.

You are further responsible to ensure that relevant environmental legislative requirements are complied with, including the implementation of all internal procedures and systems to ensure compliance with such legislation.

It would be the responsibility of yourself to report any shortcomings, in relation to the implementation of applicable legislation which you are unable to rectify, immediately in writing to the appointed owner representative.

In witness thereof the parties have set their signatures hereon in the presence of the subscribing witnesses:

**SIGNED FOR ON BEHALF OF THE EMPLOYER/SECTION 4.1 APPOINTEE**

.....

**WITNESS:** 1..... 2.....

**NAME**

**(IN CAPITALS)** 1..... 2.....

**DATE:** .....

**SIGNED FOR AND ON BEHALF OF THE PRINCIPAL CONTRACTOR/MINE MANAGER**

.....

**WITNESS:** 1..... 2.....

**NAME**

**(IN CAPITALS)** 1..... 2.....

**DATE:** .....

**Copy to:** The Chief Inspector - Department of Minerals and Energy

**EXAMPLE FOR USE BY CONTRACTOR WHEN APPOINTING SUB-ORDINATES IN TERMS OF THE MINE HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT (1996) AS AMENDED.  
(To be printed on Contractors letter head)**

**APPOINTMENT IN TERMS OF SUB-ORDINATE MANAGER: REGULATION 2.6.1 IN FORCE IN TERMS OF SCHEDULE 4 OF THE MINE HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT (ACT NO. 29 OF 1996) AS AMENDED BY THE HEALTH SAFETY AMENDMENT ACT (ACT NO. 72 OF 1997)**

I, ..... in my capacity as ....., having been appointed in terms of **Section 3(1)** of the Act (as amended), by the Executive Manager: Roads Management who is our client, 'Thulamela Local Municipality' and owner of the Mine(s) to be worked under the requirements of the above mentioned Acts hereby, in terms of **Regulation 2.6.1** of the Act as amended, appoint ..... as Sub-Ordinate Manager of the Contractor, ..... of address, ..... and contact number, ..... on Bid No.: **40/2023/2024: FOR THE UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS**

In accordance with the provisions of the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act 29 of 1996), you are also appointed in terms of Section 7(2) of the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 to perform the following functions, assigned to the Mine Manager in terms of Section 7(1), 10(2) (b) and (c) and 11 (1) in so far as your area of responsibilities are concerned: -

1. You must identify the hazards, assess the risk and record the hazards to health and safety to which employees may be exposed while they are at work, and
2. To the extent that is reasonable, you must ensure that every employee is properly trained:
  - a. In the measures necessary to eliminate, control and minimise those risks to health and safety.
  - b. In the procedures to be followed to perform the employee's work.
3. To the extent that is reasonably practical, you must: -

Ensure that every employee becomes familiar with the work-related hazards and risk and the measures that must be taken to eliminate, control and minimise those hazards and risks.
4. To the extent that is reasonably practical, you must: -

Ensure that every employee under your control complies with the requirements of the Act.

Institutes the measures necessary to secure, maintain and enhance health and safety.

Considers and employees training and capabilities in respect of health and safety before assigning a task to that employee.

Ensure that work is performed under the general supervision of a person trained to understand the hazards associated with the work, and who has the authority to ensure that the precautionary measures laid down by the Manager are implemented.

You will be responsible for the control, management and direction of all the activities and employees connected with work and you are required to ensure that all such activities take place in accordance with the provisions of the Mine Health and Safety Act and the Regulations are complied with.



You are further required to inform the Manager, ..... as soon as practicable, of any breach of any provision of these Regulation, to enable him to inform the Principal Inspector of Mines, Department of Minerals and Energy, or take such steps as may be necessary.

Please acquaint yourself with the relevant Regulations, Standards and Procedures, which have a bearing on your appointment. You must ensure that you are fully conversant with the requirements of the Procedures for Reporting Accidents.

SIGNED: .....

DATE: .....

WITNESS: 1. .... 2. ....

NAME(Print): 1. .... 2. ....

I, ....., having been appointed in terms of Regulation 2.6.1 of the act (as amended) to perform all functions entrusted to.....In terms of the Act (as amended) hereby accept the above appointment.

SIGNED: .....

DATE: .....

WITNESS: 1. .... 2. ....

NAME(Print): 1. .... 2. ....

**EXAMPLE FOR USE BY CONTRACTOR WHEN APPOINTING SUB-ORDINATES IN TERMS OF THE MINE HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT (1996) AS AMENDED.**

**(To be printed on Contractors letter head)**

**APPOINTMENT AS COMPETENT PERSON IN CHARGE OF MACHINERY IN TERMS OF REGULATION 2.13.2 IN FORCE IN TERMS OF SCHEDULE 4 OF THE MINE HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT (ACT NO. 29 OF 1996) AS AMENDED BY THE HEALTH AND SAFETY AMENDMENT ACT (ACT NO. 72 OF 1997)**

I, ..... in my capacity as ....., having been appointed in terms of **Section 3(1)** of the Act (as amended), by the Executive Manger: Roads Management, who is our client, 'Thulamela Local Municipality' and owner of the Mine(s) to be worked under the requirements of the above mentioned Acts hereby, in terms of **Regulations 2.13.2** of the Act as amended, appoint ..... as Competent Person in charge of machinery for the Contractor, ..... of address ..... and contact number, ..... on all contracts in the Limpopo Province that are undertaken by the contractor.

You are to report any accident to the mine manager immediately and personally visit the scene of the accident without delay.

You must familiarise yourself with the Mine Health and Safety Act and the Minerals Act and the Regulations and ensure that you have a copy in your possession and you must take all reasonable measures to ensure that the provisions of this Act are complied with.

Your attention are further drawn to Regulation 2.13.4.1 as well as the requirements of Chapter 18,20 and 21.

Please confirm this appointment by signing at the bottom.

SIGNED: ..... DATE:.....

NAME: .....

SIGNED: ..... DATE:.....

NAME: .....

---

**C1.7 ABSTRACTS OF THE MINE HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT No. 29 OF 1996 AND AMENDMENT ACT No. 72 OF 1997 FDEFINITIONS:**

Section 102 of the Mine Health and Safety Act refers.

“mine” means, when –

- (a) “used as a noun-
  - (i) any borehole, or excavation, in any tailing or in the earth, including the portion of the earth that is under the sea or other water, made for the purpose of searching for or winning a mineral, whether is being worked or not, or
  - (ii) any other place where a mineral deposit is being exploited, including the mining area and all buildings, structures, machinery, mine dumps, access roads or objects situated on or in that area that are used or intended to be used in connection with searching, winning, exploiting or processing of a mineral, or for health and safety purposes. But, if two or more excavations, boreholes or places are being worked in conjunction with one another
  - (iii) a works; and
- (b) b) used as a verb, the making of any excavation or borehole referred to in paragraph (a) (i), or the exploitation of any mineral deposit in any other manner, for the purpose of winning a mineral including prospecting in connection with the winning of a mineral.
  - a) whether that substance is in solid, liquid or gaseous form;
  - b) that occurs naturally in or on the earth, in or under water or in tailings, and
  - c) that has been formed by or subjected to a geological process.

“processing” means the recovering, extracting, concentrating, refining, calcimining, classifying, crushing, milling, screening, washing, reduction, smelting or gasification or any mineral, and “process” has a similar meaning

“works” means any place, excluding a mine, where any person carries out-

- a) The transmitting and distributing to another consumer of any form of power from a mine, by the owner thereof, to the terminal point of bulk, to the power supply meter on any such other consumer’s premises, or
- b) Training at any central rescue station, or
- c) The making, repairing, re-opening or closing of any subterranean tunnel, or
- d) Any operations necessary in connection with any of the operational listed in this paragraph.

**C1.8 AGREEMENT WITH ADJUDICATOR**

This agreement is made on the.....day of ..... 20.....between: the Employer  
(name of company / organisation).....  
of (address).....  
.....and the  
Contractor  
(name of company / organisation) .....  
of (address).....  
.....  
(hereinafter called **the Parties**)

**and**

(name)..... of  
(address)  
.....  
.....  
(hereinafter called **the Adjudicator**)

Disputes or differences may arise/have arisen\* between the Parties under a Contract  
dated.....  
and known as Contract No.....  
(Contract  
title).....

and these disputes or differences shall be/have been\* referred to adjudication in accordance with  
the CIDB Adjudication Procedure, (hereinafter called "**the Procedure**") and the Adjudicator may  
be or has been requested to act.

(\* Delete as necessary)

**IT IS NOW AGREED** as follows:

1. The rights and obligations of the Adjudicator and the Parties shall be as set out in the Procedure.
2. The Adjudicator hereby accepts the appointment and agrees to conduct the adjudication in accordance with the Procedure.

3. The Parties bind themselves jointly and severally to pay the Adjudicator's fees and expenses in accordance with the Procedure as set out in the Contract Data.
4. The Parties and the Adjudicator shall at all times maintain the confidentiality of the adjudication and shall endeavour to ensure that anyone acting on their behalf or through them will do likewise, save with the consent of the other Parties which consent shall not be unreasonably refused.
5. The Adjudicator shall inform the Parties if he intends to destroy the documents which have been sent to him in relation to the adjudication and he shall retain documents for a further period at the request of either Party.

**SIGNED by:**

*Signature*): ..... (*Signature*): ..... (*Signature*): .....

**Name:** ..... **Name:** ..... **Name:** .....

who warrants that he/ she is who warrants that he/ she is the **Adjudicator** in the  
duly authorised to sign for and duly authorised to sign for presence of on behalf of  
the **First Party** in and on behalf of the **Second**  
the presence of **Party** in the presence of

**Witness:** **Witness:** **Witness:**  
*(Signature)*..... *(Signature)*..... *(Signature)*.....

**Name:** ..... **Name:** ..... **Name:** .....

**Address:** ..... **Address:** ..... **Address:** .....  
.....

**Date:** ..... **Date:** ..... **Date:** .....

## **PART C2: PRICING DATA**

C2.1	PRICING INSTRUCTIONS .....	C.42
C2.2	BILL OF QUANTITIES .....	C.46

---

## C2.1 PRICING INSTRUCTIONS

- 1 For the purposes of this bill of quantities, the following words shall have the meanings hereby assigned to them:

Unit: The unit of measurement for each item of work as defined in the standard specifications or the project specifications.

Quantity: The number of units of work for each item.

Rate: The payment per unit of work for which the tenderer tenders to do the work.

Amount: The product of the quantity and the rate tendered for an item.

Lump Sum: An amount tendered for an item, the extent of which is described in the bill of quantities, the specifications or elsewhere, but of which the quantity of work is not measured in units.

- 2 This bill of quantities forms part of the contract documents and must be read in conjunction with all the other documents comprising the contract documents.

- 3 The quantities set out in the bill of quantities are only approximate quantities. The quantities of work finally accepted and certified for payment, and not the quantities given in the bill of quantities, will be used to determine payments to the contractor.

The validity of the contract shall in no way be affected by differences between the quantities in the bill of quantities and the quantities finally certified for payment. Work is valued at the rates or lump sums tendered, subject only to the provisions of sub-clause 1209 (a) of the standard specifications.

- 4 Rates and lump sums shall include full compensation for overheads, profits, incidentals, tax (other than VAT), etc, and for the completed items of work as specified, all in accordance with sub-clause 1209 (b) of the standard specifications. Full compensation for completing and maintaining, during the defects liability period, all the work shown on the drawings and specified in the standard specifications and project specifications and for all the risks, obligations and responsibilities specified in the general conditions of contract, special conditions of contract, standard specifications and project specifications shall be considered as provided for collectively in the items of payment given in the bill of quantities, except in so far as the quantities given in the bill of quantities are only approximate.

- 5 The tenderer shall fill in a rate or a lump sum for each item where provision is made for it even where no quantities are given. Items against which no rate or lump sum has been entered in the tender will not be paid for when the work is executed, as payment for such work will be regarded as being covered by other rates or lump sums in the bill of quantities.

The tenderer shall fill in a rate against all items where the words “rate only” appear in the amount column. Although no work is foreseen under such item and no quantities are consequently given in the quantity column, the tendered rate shall apply should work under

this item actually be required. Tenders should note the provisions of paragraph 12 of this preamble.

If the tender should group a number of items together and tender one lump sum for each group of items, this single tendered lump sum shall apply to that group of items and not to each individual item, or should he indicate that full compensation for any item has been included in the rate for another item, the rate for the item included in another item shall be deemed to be nil.

The tendered lump sums and rates shall be valid irrespective of any change in the quantities during the execution of the contract.

- 6 The works executed are measured for payment in accordance with the methods described in the contract documents under the various payment items, notwithstanding any custom to the contrary. Attention is directed to the provisions of clause 1220 of the standard specifications regarding the measurements of quantities for payment. Except where specified otherwise than in clause 1220, the nett measurement or mass of the finished work in place shall be taken for payment, and any volume or mass of work in excess of that prescribed, shall be excluded.
- 7 The amount of work or the quantities of material stated in the bill of quantities shall not be considered as restricting or extending the amount of work to be done or quantity of material to be supplied by the contractor.
- 8 The statement of quantities of material or the amount of work in the bill of quantities shall not be regarded as authorisation for the contractor to order material or to execute work. The contractor shall obtain the engineer's detailed instructions for all work before ordering any materials or executing work or making arrangements in this regard.
- 9 The short descriptions of the payment items in the bill of quantities are only given to identify the items and to provide specific details. Reference shall, inter alia, be made to the drawings, standard specifications, project specifications, general conditions of contract and special conditions of contract for more detailed information regarding the extent of work entailed under each item.
- 10 The provisions of clause 6.6 of the general conditions of contract shall apply to provisional sums and prime cost sums.
- 11 If a bill of quantities (or schedule of quantities or schedule of rates) applies and there is an error in the line-item total resulting from product of unit rate and quantity, the line-item total shall govern and the rates shall be corrected. Where there is an obviously gross misplacement of the decimal point in the unit rate, the line-item total as quoted shall govern, and the unit rate shall corrected.
- 12 A tender may be rejected if the unit rates or lump sums for some of the items in the bill of quantities are, in the opinion of the employer, unreasonable or out of proportion, and if the tenderer fails, within a period of seven (7) days of having been notified in writing by the employer to adjust the unit rates or lump sums for such items, to make such adjustments.  
13 The units of measurement indicated in the bill of quantities are metric units



---

The following abbreviations are used in the bill of quantities:

mm	=	millimetre
m	=	metre
km	=	kilometre
km-pass	=	kilometre-pass
m <sup>2</sup>	=	square metre
m <sup>2</sup> -pass	=	square metre pass
ha	=	hectare
m <sup>3</sup>	=	cubic metre
m <sup>3</sup> km	=	cubic metre kilometre
l	=	litre
kl	=	kilolitre
kg	=	kilogram
t	=	ton (1000 kg)
No	=	number
mn	=	meganewton
mn-m	=	meganewton-metre
%	=	per cent
kW	=	kilowatt
Kn	=	kilonewton
PC sum	=	prime cost sum
Prov sum	=	provisional sum

14 All rates and sums of money quoted in the bill of quantities shall be in rands and whole cents. Fractions of a cent shall be discarded

15 The item numbers appearing in the bill of quantities refer to the corresponding item numbers in the standard specifications. Item numbers prefixed by the letter B refer to payment items described under part B of the project specifications, those with C to payment items described under part C, and so on for further parts of the project specifications.

Item numbers in schedule B of the bill of quantities are, in addition, preceded by the number of each separate part of schedule B of the bill of quantities, e.g. payment item 62.02 described in the standard specifications (clause 6210), when used in part 3 of schedule B of the bill of quantities, would be numbered 3/62.02, and if this payment item had been amended in part B of the project specifications, the payment item would be indicated as 3/B62.02.

16. Labour intensive items are highlighted in the bills of quantities for the payment items relating to labour intensive works.

16.1 Those parts of the contract to be constructed using labour intensive methods have been marked in the bills of quantities with the letters LI in a separate column filled in against every item so designated. The works or parts of the works so designated are to be constructed using labour intensive methods only. The use of plant to provide such works, other than plant specifically provided for in the scope of work, is a variation to the contract. The letters marked with LI are **not necessarily an exhaustive list** of all items which must be done by hand, and this clause does not

override any of the requirements in the generic labour-intensive specification in the Scope of Works.

16.2 Where minimum labour intensity is specified by the design the contractor is expected to use their initiative to identify additional activities that can be done labour intensively in order to comply with the set minimum labour intensity target

16.3 Payment for items which are designated to be constructed using labour intensively in the schedule of quantities will not be made unless they are constructed using labour intensive methods. Any unauthorised use of plant to carry out work which was to be done labour intensively will not be condoned and any work so constructed will not be certified for payment. If a contractor, through innovation on other activities, achieved the Local labour content target, but he did not perform all LI-marked activities through labour, he will not be penalized. However, if a contractor did not achieve the Local labour content target and constructed a LI-marked activity through other means, he will not be paid for that activity. Any non-payment for such works shall not relieve the Contractor in any way from his obligations either in contract or in delict.

17. All cost for formal training to the targeted workforce (amongst others: allowances, wages, administration, transport, etc) shall be deemed to be included in the rates for Labour Intensive items.

---

## C2.2 BILL OF QUANTITIES

### SCHEDULE A: ROADWORKS

1200	General Requirements and Provisions .....	C.136
1300	Contractor's Establishment and General Obligations .....	C.137
1400	Housing, Offices and Laboratories for the Engineer's personnel .....	C.138-140
1500	Accommodation of Traffic .....	C.141
1700	Clear and Grubbing.....	C.142
1800	Daywork Schedule .....	C.143
2100	Drains.....	C.144
2200	Prefabricated Culverts.....	C.145-146
2300	Concrete Kerbing, Concrete Channelling, Chutes .....	C.147
3100	Borrow Materials .....	C.148
3300	Mass Earthworks .....	C.149
3400	Pavement Layers of Gravel Material .....	C.150
3500	Stabilisation .....	C.151
3600	Crushed Stone Base .....	C.152
4100	Prime.....	C.153
4200	Asphalt Base and Surfacing.....	C.154
5600	Road Signs .....	C.155
5700	Road Markings .....	C.156
5900	Finishing the Road and Road Reserve and Treating old Roads .....	C.157
8100	Testing Materials and Workmanship .....	C.158
<b>SUMMARY OF SCHEDULE OF QUANTITIES .....</b>		<b>C.162</b>
<b>CALCULATION OF TENDER SUM .....</b>		<b>C.163</b>

**NB: TENDERERS MUST COMPLETE THE SCHEDULE OF QUANTITIES IN BLACK INK.**

**SCHEDULE OF QUANTITIES****SCHEDULE A: ROAD CONSTRUCTION****SECTION 1200****BID NO:40/2023/2024: UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS**

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
<b>1200</b>	<b>GENERAL REQUIREMENTS AND PROVISIONS</b>				
<b>B12.03</b>	<b>Relocation and protection of existing services:</b>				
	a) Relocation, including lowering or raising, protection and/or repair of existing services and fences situated within the road reserves which are not allowed for under any other items in the schedule of quantities.	Prov. Sum			R 500 000,00
	b) Handling cost and profit in respect of sub-item B12.03(a)	%	500 000,00		
<b>B12.04</b>	<b>Provision for a Community Liaison Officer</b>				
	(a) Provisional sum for the payment of the Community Liaison Officer	Prov. Sum			R 96 000,00
	(b) Handling costs and profit in respect of sub-item B12.01(a)	%	96 000,00		
<b>B12.05</b>	<b>Contractor's time related obligations in respect of the Occupational Health and Safety Act and Construction Regulations</b>				
	(a) Mine Health and Safety Obligations	month	15		
	(b) Special Information Signs	PC Sum			R 20 000,00
	(c.) Provision for security guards	PC Sum			R 393 750,00
	(d) Handling costs and profit in respect of sub-item B12.01(a)	%	413 750,00		
B12.06	Submission of the Health and Safety File	Lump Sum	1		
12,10	Contract Nameboard (As per drawing)	No	1		
<b>B12.02</b>	<b>Payment of PSC members</b>				
	a) Provisional sum for the payment of PSC members at R1500/month	Prov. Sum			R 22 500,00
	b) Handling costs and profit in respect of sub-item B12.02(a)	%	22 500,00		
<b>1200</b>	<b>TOTAL CARRIED TO SUMMARY</b>				

SCHEDULE A: ROAD CONSTRUCTION  
 BID NO:40/2023/2024: UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS

SECTION 1300

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
<p>1300</p> <p><b><u>CONTRACTORS ESTABLISHMENT ON SITE AND GENERAL OBLIGATIONS</u></b></p> <p>B13.01</p> <p>The contractors' general obligations:</p> <p>(a) Fixed obligations</p> <p>(b) Value-related obligations</p> <p>(c) Time-related obligations</p> <p>The combined total tendered for sub-items (a), (b) and (c) shall not exceed 15% of the tender sum.</p>		<p>Lump sum</p> <p>Lump sum</p> <p>Month</p>	<p>15</p>		
<p><b>1300</b></p>	<p>TOTAL CARRIED TO SUMMARY</p>				

SCHEDULE A : ROAD CONSTRUCTION  
 BID NO:40/2023/2024: UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS

SECTION 1400

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
	<b><u>HOUSING, OFFICES AND LABORATORIES FOR THE ENGINEER'S SITE PERSONNEL</u></b>				
<b>14,01</b>	<b>Office and laboratory accommodation:</b>  The provision of accommodation as specified, including roof, external and internal walls, windows complete with glazing, doors with locks and fittings burglar proofing, painting, floors, fencing, the provision of a 220/250 volt etc, water and sewerage installation, and stores, complete, in accordance with the drawings and specifications, except for items scheduled elsewhere:				
<b>LI</b>	(a) Offices (interior floor space only)	m <sup>2</sup>	60		
	(b) Laboratories (interior floor space only)	m <sup>2</sup>			Rate Only
	(c) Open concrete working floors, 150mm thick	m <sup>2</sup>			Rate Only
	(d) Roofs over open concrete working floors	m <sup>2</sup>			Rate Only
	(e) Ablution units	No.	2		
<b>14,02</b>	<b>Office and laboratory furniture:</b>				
	(a) Chairs	No.	15		
	(d) Desks, complete with drawers and locks	No.	2		
	(f) Conference tables	No.	2		
<b>B14.02</b>	<b>Office and laboratory fittings, installations and equipment:</b>				
	(a) Items measured by number:				
	(i) 220/250-volt power points	No.	1		
	(iii) Double 80-watt fluorescent-light fittings complete with ballast and tubes	No.	2		
	(vi) Wash-hand basins complete with taps and drains	No.	1		Rate Only
	(vii) Laboratory basins complete with swan-neck taps and drains	No.	1		Rate Only
	(x) Fire extinguishers, 9,0kg, all-purpose dry powder type, complete, mounted on wall with brackets	No.	1		
<b>1400</b>	<b>TOTAL CARRIED FORWARD</b>				

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
	<b>AMOUNT BROUGHT FORWARD</b>				
	(xi) Air-conditioning units with, 2,2kW minimum capacity, mounted and with own power connection	No.	1		
	(xii) Heater, space heating type, minimum capacity 1,5 Kw	No.			Rate Only
	(xiii) Curing chambers for UCS specimens, complete with water connection, including the provision of brick partitions, plaster, paint and shelving.	No.			Rate Only
	(xiv) General - purpose steel cupboards with shelves	No.	1		
	(xvi) Refrigerators	No.	1		
	(xviii) Voltage stabilizers	No.	1		
	(xix) Automatic level with tripot	No.	1		
	(xx) 100m "stylon" steel tape	No.	1		
	(xxi) 5m levelling staff (1cm graduations with bubble)	No.	1		
	(xxii) Windows 11, 15,6-inch full HD IPS display, 8 GB RAM and 512 GB SSD Storage, intel Core i5 1235U Processor, Xe Graphics and 720p HD camera computer and HP Deskjet 840C colour printer.	No.	1		
<b>14,04</b>	<b>Car ports</b>				
	Car ports, 3.0m wide and 2,5m high, at offices	No.	2		
<b>B14.06</b>	(b) Prime-cost items and items paid for in a lump sum:				
	(ix) Provision of cellular telephones:				
	(1) Provision of cellular telephones	Prov. Sum			R 30 000,00
	(2) Cost of calls and other charges	Prov. sum			R 22 500,00
	(3) Handling cost and profit in respect of subsubitem B14.03(b)(ix)(2) above	%	52500	10%	
	(c) Items measured by area:				
	(viii) Notice boards as per dwg. No.	m <sup>2</sup>	15		
	(ix) White board	m <sup>2</sup>	4		
<b>1400</b>	<b>TOTAL CARRIED FORWARD</b>				

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
	<b>AMOUNT BROUGHT FORWARD</b>				
<b>B14.07</b>	<b>Rented, hotel and other accommodation</b>				
	(a) Provisional sum for providing rented housing, hotel or other accommodation as described in subsubclause 14.03 (c)(ii) including services	Prov.Sum			R 75 000,00
	(b) Handling costs and profit in respect of subitem 14.07 (a)	%	75000		
<b>14,08</b>	<b>Services:</b>				
	(a) Services at offices:				
	(i) Fixed costs	Lump Sum			
	(ii) Running costs	Month	15		
<b>14.10</b>	<b>Provision of photostat facilities</b>	Month	15		
<b>1400</b>	<b>TOTAL CARRIED TO SUMMARY</b>				



SCHEDULE A : ROAD CONSTRUCTION

SECTION 1500

BID NO:40/2023/2024: UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
1500	<b><u>ACCOMMODATION OF TRAFFIC</u></b>				
B15.01	Accommodating traffic and maintaining temporary deviations including all flagmen required	km	2		
B15.03	<b>Temporary traffic-control facilities: (Note: These items are under the control of the Engineer and will only be used and paid as instructed by the Engineer which are paid under item B15.01)</b>				
LI	(a) Flagmen	man-days	1260		
LI	(b) Portable STOP and GO-RY signs	No.	4		
	(e) Road signs, R- and TR-series, 1200 mm dia	No.	12		
	(f) Road signs, TW-series, 1524 mm sides	No.	10		
	(g) Road signs, STW, DTG, TGS and TG-series	No.	6		
	(h) Delineators (TW401 & TW402)				
	(i) Single				
	(1) 800mm x 250mm	No.	15		
	(ii) Double, mounted back-to-back	No.	15		
	(m) Two-way communication devices	No.	2		
	(n) Provision of high visibility safety jackets and safety hats	No.	2		
B15.14	The provision and maintenance of rotating lights, etc. for the use of the Engineer and his staff				
	(a) Rotating lights	No.	2		
B15.17	<b>Penalty to be conducted for non-compliance with requirements for accommodation of traffic</b>				
	(a) Fixed penalty for occurrence	No.	1		Rate Only
	(b) Time related penalty	hr	1		Rate Only
1500	<b>TOTAL CARRIED TO SUMMARY</b>				

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
1700	<b><u>CLEARING AND GRUBBING</u></b>				
B17.01	<b>Clearing and grubbing</b>				
	(a) Normal areas				
	i) Within the road reserve	ha	2		
	ii) In borrow pits	ha	1		Rate only
17,04 LI	<b>Clearing and grubbing at inlets and outlets of hydraulic structures</b>	m <sup>2</sup>	20		
17,05	<b>Cleaning out of hydraulic structures</b>				
LI	(a) Pipes with an internal diameter up to and including 750 mm	m <sup>3</sup>	6		
LI	(b) Pipes with an internal diameter exceeding 750 mm.	m <sup>3</sup>	8		
1700	<b>TOTAL CARRIED TO SUMMARY</b>				

BID NO:40/2023/2024: UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
1800	<u>DAYWORKS SCHEDULE</u>		-	-	
<b>B18.01</b>	<b>Labourers:</b>				
	(i) Unskilled labour	h	1		
	(ii) Semi-skilled labour	h	1		
	(iii) Skilled labour	h	1		
<b>B18.02</b>	<b>Foreman</b>	h	1		
<b>B18.03</b>	<b>Tipper trucks:</b>				
	(i) 3 - 5 ton	h	1		
	(ii) 5,1 - 10 ton	h	1		
<b>B18.04</b>	<b>Loader (0,5m³)</b>	h	1		
<b>B18.05</b>	<b>Grader ( CAT 140G or similar)</b>	h	1		
<b>B18.06</b>	<b>LDV</b>	h	1		
<b>B18.07</b>	<b>Compaction Rollers:</b>				
	(i) Vibrator roller	h	1		
	(ii) Tamping roller	h	1		
	(iii) Grid roller	h	1		
<b>B18.08</b>	<b>Hand Controlled Compactors:</b>				
	(i) Pedestrian roller (Bomag BW90)	h	1		
	(ii) Vibratory plate	h	1		
	(iii) Rammers	h	1		
<b>B18.09</b>	<b>Water truck (min. 1000 l)</b>	h	1		
<b>B18.10</b>	<b>Dozer (D7 or similar)</b>	h	1		
<b>1800</b>	<b>TOTAL CARRIED TO SUMMARY</b>				

**SCHEDULE A : ROAD CONSTRUCTION**

**SECTION 2100**

**BID NO:40/2023/2024: UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS**

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
<b>2100</b>	<b><u>2100 DRAINS</u></b>				
<b>21,03</b>	<b>Excavation for subsoil drainage systems</b>  (a) Excavating soft material situated within the following depth ranges below surface level:  (i) 0 m up to 1,5m	m <sup>3</sup>	1125		
	(b) Extra over subitem 21.03(a) for excavation in hard material irrespective of depth	m <sup>3</sup>	169		
<b>21,04</b>	<b>Impermeable backfilling to sub-soil drainage systems</b>	m <sup>3</sup>	642		
<b>21,06</b>	<b>Natural permeable material in subsoil drainage systems (crushed stone)</b>  (b) Crushed stone obtained from commercial sources  (ii) Coarse grade stone	m <sup>3</sup>	240		
<b>21,07</b>	<b>Natural permeable material in subsoil drainage systems (Sand)</b>  (b) Sand from commercial sources	m <sup>3</sup>	240		
<b>21,08</b>	<b>(b) Unplasticised PVC pipes and fittings, normal duty complete with couplings</b> (1) Perforated  (i) 150mm dia.	m	1000		
<b>21,10</b>	<b>Synthetic fibre filter fabric</b> (i) "Kaymat U24 or approved equivalent	m <sup>2</sup>	2800		
<b>21,12</b>	<b>Concrete outlet structures, manhole boxes, junction boxes and cleaning eyes for subsoil drainage systems:</b> (a) Outlet structures	No	5		
<b>B22.13</b>	<b>Removing and stacking existing Block paving</b> For re-use as directed by the Engineer	m <sup>2</sup>	900		
<b>B22.14</b>	<b>Removing and spoil existing kerbs</b> For re-use as directed by the Engineer	m	300		
<b>2100</b>	<b>TOTAL CARRIED TO SUMMARY</b>				



TEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
	<b>AMOUNT BROUGHT FORWARD</b>				
<b>22,07</b>	<b>Cast in situ concrete and formwork:</b>				
	(b) In floor slabs for portal or rectangular culverts, including formwork and class U2 surface finish, class 25/19 concrete	m <sup>3</sup>	16		
	(c) In inlet and outlet structures, skewed ends, catchpits, manholes, thrust and anchor blocks, excluding formwork but including Class U2 surface finish:				
	(i) Class 25/19 concrete	m <sup>3</sup>	16		
	(d) Formwork of concrete under subitem 22.07(c)				
	(i) Vertical formwork for F1 surface finish	m <sup>2</sup>	60		
	(ii) Vertical formwork for F2 surface finish	m <sup>2</sup>	60		
<b>22,10</b>	<b>Steel reinforcement:</b>				
	(b) High tensile steel bars	t	2		
	(c) Welded steel fabric REF 395	kg	1 106		
<b>22,17</b>	<b>Manholes, catchpits, precast inlet and outlet structures complete</b>				
	(a) Manholes:				
	(i) Type A	No	4		
	(ii) Type B	No	1		
	(iii) Type C (Junction Box)	No	29		
	(b) Catchpits				
	(i) Kerb inlet Type 1 (Terminal Kerb Inlet) as per Drawing No. TS/TLM/2014/2015/58	No	5		
	(ii) Kerb inlet Type 2 (Combination Kerb Inlet/Manhole) as per Drawing No. TS/TLM/2014/2015/58	No	14		
<b>22,23</b>	<b>Service ducts:</b>				
	(a) Ordinary pipes				
	(i) 110mm Upvc Class 6	m	250		
	(b) Split pipes:				
	(i) 150mm Upvc Class 6	m	40		
<b>2200</b>	<b>TOTAL CARRIED TO SUMMARY</b>				

SCHEDULE A : ROAD CONSTRUCTION

SECTION 2300

BID NO:40/2023/2024: UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
<b>23,00</b>	<b><u>2300: CONCRETE KERBING, CONCRETE CHANNELLING, CHUTES AND DOWNPIPES, AND CONCRETE LININGS FOR OPEN DRAINS</u></b>				
<b>23,01</b>	<b>Concrete Kerbing Class 30/19</b>				
	(a) Figure 8c as shown on the drawings	m	5 800		
	(b) Figure 3 as shown on the drawings	m	300		
<b>23,04</b>	<b>Cast in situ concrete chutes (measured by components)</b>				
	(a) Concrete class 30/19	m <sup>3</sup>	6		
	(b) Formwork to provide class F1 surface finish	m <sup>2</sup>	20		
<b>23,05</b>	<b>Inlet and Outlet, transition and similar structures</b>				
<b>LI</b>	(a) Cast in-situ concrete drift (Class 25/19 concrete) (ii) Concrete drift as specified in the drawings	No	3		
	(b) Cast in-situ concrete causeway (Class 25/19 concrete) (ii) Concrete causeway as specified in the drawings	No	2		
<b>23,07</b>	<b>Trimming of excavations for concrete-lined open drains</b>				
	(a) In soft material	m <sup>2</sup>	1		
<b>B23.16</b>	<b>Cast in-situ concrete and formwork:</b>				
	(a) Concrete edge beam (25/19) MPa	m <sup>3</sup>	12		
<b>2300</b>	<b>TOTAL CARRIED TO SUMMARY</b>				

SCHEDULE A: ROAD CONSTRUCTION

SECTION 3100

BID NO:40/2023/2024: UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
3100	<u>3100: BORROW MATERIALS</u>				
B31.01	<p><b>Excess overburden:</b></p> <p>(a) Depth up to and including 0,5m</p> <p>(b) Depth exceeding 0,5m and up to 1,5m</p>	<p>m<sup>3</sup></p> <p>m<sup>3</sup></p>	<p>1 250</p> <p>1 250</p>		
31.03	<p><b>Finishing-off borrow areas in:</b></p> <p>(a) Hard material</p> <p>(c) Soft material</p>	<p>ha</p> <p>ha</p>	<p>1</p> <p>1</p>		
3100	<b>TOTAL CARRIED TO SUMMARY</b>				



**SCHEDULE A: ROAD CONSTRUCTION**  
**BID NO:40/2023/2024: UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS**

**SECTION 3300**

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
<b>3300</b>	<b><u>3300: MASS EARTHWORKS</u></b>				
<b>33,01</b>	<b>Cut and borrow to fill, including free-haul up to 0,5km from road reserve</b>  (a) Material in compacted layer thickness of 200mm and less  (i) Compacted to 90% modified AASHTO density	m <sup>3</sup>	2 127		
	(b) Rock Fill [as specified in subclause 3209(c)]	m <sup>3</sup>	450		
<b>33.04</b>	<b>Cut to spoil, including free-haul up to 1.0km, material obtained from:</b> (a) Soft excavation  (b) Intermediate excavation  (c) Hard excavation  (d) Boulder Excavation class B	m <sup>3</sup>	6 940		
		m <sup>3</sup>	2 680		
		m <sup>3</sup>	2 188		
		m <sup>3</sup>	375		
<b>33.07</b>	<b>Removal of unsuitable material, including 1.0km free-haul</b> (a) In layer thickness of 200mm and less:  (ii) Unstable material	m <sup>3</sup>	960		
	(b) In layer thickness of exceeding 200mm:  (ii) Unstable material	m <sup>3</sup>	2 240		
<b>33.10</b>	<b>Roadbed preparation and the compaction of material</b>  (a) Compaction to 90% of modified AASHTO density	m <sup>3</sup>	3 912		
<b>33.11</b>	<b>Three roller passes</b> (a) Vibratory roller  (b) Heavy grid roller	m <sup>2</sup>			
		m <sup>2</sup>			
<b>33/16.00</b>	<b><u>1600: OVERHAUL</u></b>				
<b>33/16.02</b>	<b>Overhaul on material hauled in excess of 1,0 km (ordinary overhaul)</b>	m <sup>3</sup> .km	208 355		
<b>3300</b>	<b>TOTAL CARRIED TO SUMMARY</b>				

SCHEDULE A: ROAD CONSTRUCTION

SECTION 3400

BID NO:40/2023/2024: UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
<p><b>3400</b></p> <p><b>B34.01</b></p> <p><b>34.03</b></p>	<p><b><u>3400: PAVEMENT LAYERS OF GRAVEL MATERIAL</u></b></p> <p><b>Pavement layers constructed from gravel taken commercial sources including all haul:</b></p> <p>(a) Gravel selected layer compacted to:</p> <p>(i) 150mm layer thickness to 93% modified AASHTO density</p> <p>(c) Gravel sub-base (chemically stabilised material):</p> <p>(i) 150mm layer thickness to 95% modified AASHTO density</p> <p>(g) Gravel shoulder compacted to:</p> <p>(ii) 95% of modified AASHTO density (150 mm compacted layer thickness)</p> <p><b>Pavement layers constructed from gravel obtained from existing pavement layers:</b></p> <p>(d) Gravel sub-base (un-stabilised gravel):</p> <p>(i) 150mm layer thickness to 95% modified AASHTO density</p>	<p>m<sup>3</sup></p> <p>m<sup>3</sup></p> <p>m<sup>3</sup></p> <p>m<sup>3</sup></p>	<p>3 621</p> <p>3 478</p> <p>1 884</p> <p>940</p>		
<p><b>3400</b></p>	<p><b>TOTAL CARRIED TO SUMMARY</b></p>				

SCHEDULE A: ROAD CONSTRUCTION

SECTION 3500

BID NO:40/2023/2024: UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
3500	<b><u>3500: STABILIZATION</u></b>				
35.01	<b>Chemical stabilisation extra-over un-stabilized compacted layers:</b>				
	(a) Sub-Base layer: 150mm thickness	m <sup>3</sup>	3 478		
B35.02	<b>Chemical stabilising agent:</b>				
	(a) CEM II A/L 32.5 cement	t	290		
35.04	<b>Provision and application of water for curing</b>	kl	7 842		
35.05	<b>Curing by covering with subsequent layer</b>	m <sup>2</sup>	1		
3500	<b>TOTAL CARRIED TO SUMMARY</b>				

**SCHEDULE A: ROAD CONSTRUCTION**

**SECTION 3600**

**BID NO:40/2023/2024: UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS**

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
3600	<b><u>3600: CRUSHED-STONE BASE</u></b>				
36.01	<p><b>Crushed-stone base:</b></p> <p>(c) Constructed from type G2 material obtained from commercial sources and compacted to 85% of bulk relative density:</p> <p>(i) 150 mm layer thickness and 37mm nominal maximum size stone</p>	m <sup>3</sup>	3 669		
36.03	<p>Crushed-stone base trial section constructed in accordance with the provisions of clause 3603</p> <p>(i) 150 mm layer thickness and 37mm nominal maximum size stone</p>	m <sup>2</sup>	220		
3600	<b>TOTAL CARRIED TO SUMMARY</b>				

**SCHEDULE A: ROAD CONSTRUCTION**

**SECTION 4100**

**BID NO:40/2023/2024: UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS**

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
4100	<b><u>PRIME COAT</u></b>				
41.01	<b>Prime coat:</b>				
	(c) MC-30 cut-back bitumen	litre	17 400		
	(d) MC-70 cut-back bitumen	litre	9 570		
4100	<b>TOTAL CARRIED TO SUMMARY</b>				

**SCHEDULE A: ROAD CONSTRUCTION**

**SECTION 4200**

**BID NO:40/2023/2024: UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS**

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
4200	<b><u>ASPHALT BASE AND SURFACING</u></b>				
42,02	<b>Asphalt surfacing (30mm thick using 60/70 penetration grade bitumen) on approaches</b>				
	(a) Continuously graded (medium)	m <sup>2</sup>	19 140		
42,04	<b>Tack coat of 30% stable-grade emulsion</b>	litre	9 570		
42,05	<b>Binder variations:</b>				
	(a) 60/70 Penetration grade bitumen	t	1		
42,08	<b>100mm cores in asphalt paving</b>	No	10		
B42,21	Construction of Speed Humps as per Engineer`s Drawing	No	6		
4200	<b>TOTAL CARRIED TO SUMMARY</b>				

**SCHEDULE A: ROAD CONSTRUCTION**

**SECTION 5600**

**BID NO:40/2023/2024: UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS**

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
<b>5600</b>	<b><u>ROAD SIGNS</u></b>				
<b>B56.01</b>	<b>Road sign boards with painted or coloured semi-matt background. Symbols, lettering and borders in diamond grade retro- reflective material, where the sign board is constructed from:</b>				
	(c) Preprinted galvanized steel plate (chromadek or approved equivalent):				
	(i) Area not exceeding 2m <sup>2</sup>	m <sup>2</sup>	80		
	(ii) Area exceeding 2m <sup>2</sup> but not exceeding 10m <sup>2</sup>	m <sup>2</sup>	22		
	(iii) Area exceeding 10m <sup>2</sup>	m <sup>2</sup>	1		
<b>56.02</b>	<b>Extra over item 56.01 for using:</b>				
	(a) Background of retro-reflective material:				
	(i) Class III	m <sup>2</sup>	8		
<b>56.03</b>	<b>Road sign supports (over-head road sign structures excluded):</b>				
	(b) Steel:				
	(i) 100mm dia.	m	80		
<b>56.06</b> <b>LI</b>	<b>Extra over item 56.05 for cement-treated soil backfill</b>	m <sup>3</sup>	10		
<b>56.07</b>	<b>Extra over item 56.05 for rock excavation</b>	m <sup>3</sup>	4		
<b>5600</b>	<b>TOTAL CARRIED FORWARD</b>				

**SCHEDULE A: ROAD CONSTRUCTION**

**SECTION 5700**

**BID NO:40/2023/2024: UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS**

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
<b>5700</b>	<b>ROAD MARKINGS</b>				
<b>57,02</b>	<b>Retro-reflective road-marking paint:</b>				
	(a) White lines (broken or unbroken):				
	(i) 100mm wide	km	2,75		
	(ii) 150mm wide	km	0,5		
	(b) Yellow lines (broken or unbroken):				Rate Only
	(i) 100mm wide	km			Rate Only
	(ii) 150mm wide	km			Rate Only
	(iii) 200mm wide	km			Rate Only
	(d) White lettering and symbols	m <sup>2</sup>	30		
	(e) Yellow lettering and symbols	m <sup>2</sup>			Rate only
	(f) Transverse lines, painted island and arrestor bed markings (any colour)	m <sup>2</sup>	80		
<b>57,04</b>	<b>Variations in rate of application:</b>				
	(a) White paint	l	15		
	(b) Yellow paint	l	15		
	(d) Retro-reflective beads	kg	20		
<b>B57.06</b>	<b>Setting out and pre-marking the lines (Excluding traffic island markings, lettering and symbols)</b>				
		km	2,75		
<b>5700</b>	<b>TOTAL CARRIED TO SUMMARY</b>				



**SCHEDULE A: ROAD CONSTRUCTION**

**SECTION 5900**

**BID NO:40/2023/2024: UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS**

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
5900	<p><b><u>FINISHING THE ROAD AND ROAD RESERVE AND TREATING OLD ROADS</u></b></p> <p>59,01 Finishing the road and road reserve:</p> <p>(b) Single carriageway road and road reserve</p>	km	2,75		
5900	<b>TOTAL CARRIED TO SUMMARY</b>				

**SCHEDULE A: ROAD CONSTRUCTION**  
**BID NO:40/2023/2024: UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS**

**SECTION 8100**

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
81,00	<b><u>8100: TESTING MATERIALS AND WORKMANSHIP</u></b>				
81,02	<b>Other special tests requested by the engineer</b>				
	(a) Cost of testing	Prov. Sum			R 250 000,00
	(b) Handling costs and profits in respect of subitems B81.02(a)	%	250 000		
<b>8100</b>	<b>TOTAL CARRIED TO SUMMARY</b>				

**SCHEDULE B: ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT**  
**BID NO:40/2023/2024: UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS**

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
<b>B</b>	<b>ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PLAN</b>				
<b>B100.01</b>	<b>Penalty for unnecessary removal of damage to trees for the following diameter sizes:</b>				
	(a) 2600mm girth or less	No		-R 5 000,00	Rate Only
	(b) Greater than 2600mm, but less than 6180mm girth	No		-R 10 000,00	Rate Only
	(c) Greater than 6180mm girth	No		-R 30 000,00	Rate Only
<b>B100.02</b>	<b>Penalty for serious violations</b>				
	(a) Hazardous chemical/oil spill and/or dumping in non-approved sites	No		-R 10 000,00	Rate Only
	(b) General damage to sensitive environments	No		-R 5 000,00	Rate Only
	(c) Damage to cultural and historical sites	No		-R 5 000,00	Rate Only
	(d) Pollution of water sources	No		-R 10 000,00	Rate Only
	(e) Unauthorised blasting activities	No		-R 5 000,00	Rate Only
	(f) Uncontrolled/unmanaged erosion per incident, depending on environment impacts, plus, rehabilitation at contractor's cost	No		-R 1 000,00	Rate Only
<b>B100.03</b>	<b>Penalty for less serious violations</b>				
	(a) Littering on site	No		-R 1 000,00	Rate Only
	(b) Lighting of illegal fires on site	No		-R 1 000,00	Rate Only
	(c) Persistent or un-repaired fuel and oil leaks	No		-R 1 000,00	Rate Only
	(d) Excess dust of excess noise emanating from site	No		-R 1 000,00	Rate Only
	(e) Dumping of milled material in side drains or on grassed areas	No		-R 1 000,00	Rate Only
	(f) Possession or use of intoxicating substances on site	No		-R 500,00	Rate Only
	(g) Any vehicles being driven in excess of designated speed limits	No		-R 500,00	Rate Only
<b>B</b>	<b>TOTAL CARRIED FORWARD</b>				<b>R 0,00</b>

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
<b>AMOUNT BROUGHT FORWARD</b>					R 0,00
	(h) Removal and/or damage to flora or cultural or heritage objects on site, and/or killing of wild life	No		-R 2 000,00	Rate Only
	(i) Illegal hunting	No		-R 2 000,00	Rate Only
	(j) Urination and defecation anywhere except in designated areas	No		-R 500,00	Rate Only
<b>B</b>	<b>TOTAL CARRIED TO SUMMARY</b>				<b>0.00</b>

**SCHEDULE C: STRUCTURED TRAINING**  
**BID NO:40/2023/2024: UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS**

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT
<p><b>C</b></p> <p><b>PROVISION OF STRUCTURED TRAINING</b></p> <p><b>C12.05</b></p> <p><b>Provision for accredited training:</b></p> <p>(a) Generic skills</p> <p>(b) Entrepreneurial skills</p> <p>(c) Remuneration of workers undergoing training</p> <p>(d) Handing cost and profit in respect of sub-items E12.05(a), (b) and (c) above</p> <p>(e) Training Venue</p>		<p>Prov. Sum</p> <p>Prov. Sum</p> <p>Prov. Sum</p> <p>%</p> <p>Lump sum</p>	<p></p> <p></p> <p></p> <p>265 000</p> <p></p>		<p>R 150 000,00</p> <p>R 150 000,00</p> <p>R 15 000,00</p> <p></p> <p></p>
<p><b>C</b></p>	<p><b>TOTAL CARRIED TO SUMMARY</b></p>				

## THULAMELA LOCAL MUNICIPALITY



**CONTRACT NO.: 40/2023/2024**

**SHAYANDIMA EXT 2,75 km**

### **SUMMARY OF SCHEDULE OF QUANTITIES**

#### **SCHEDULE A: ROADWORKS**

<b>SECTION</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>AMOUNT</b>
1200	General Requirements and Provisions	
1300	Establishment and General Obligations	
1400	Housing, Offices & Laboratories	
1500	Accommodation of Traffic	
1700	Clearing and Grubbing	
1800	Dayworks	
2100	Drains	
2200	Prefabricated Culvert Structure	
2300	Concrete Kerbing, Concrete Channelling, Open Chutes	
3100	Borrow materials	
3300	Mass Earthworks	
3400	Pavement layers of gravel	
3500	Stabilisation	
3600	Crushed stone base	
4100	Prime coat	
4200	Asphalt surfacing and base	
5600	Road Signs	
5700	Road Markings	
5900	Finishing the Road and Road Reserve and treating old roads	
8100	Testing Materials and Workmanship	
<b>TOTAL SCHEDULE A: (CARRIED TO CALCULATION OF TENDER SUM)</b>		

# THULAMELA LOCAL MUNICIPALITY



**CONTRACT NO.: 40/2023/2024**  
**SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS**

## **C2.3 SUMMARY OF SCHEDULE OF QUANTITIES (CONTINUE)**

### **SCHEDULE B: ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PLAN**

SECTION	DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT
<b>B</b>	Environmental Management Plan	
<b>TOTAL SCHEDULE B: (CARRIED TO CALCULATION OF TENDER SUM)</b>		

### **SCHEDULE C: STRUCTURED TRAINING**

SECTION	DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT
<b>C</b>	Structured Training	
<b>TOTAL SCHEDULE C: (CARRIED TO CALCULATION OF TENDER SUM)</b>		

### **CALCULATION OF TENDER SUM**

ITEM	AMOUNT
TOTAL SCHEDULE A: ROADWORKS	
TOTAL SCHEDULE B: ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PLAN	
TOTAL SCHEDULE C: STRUCTURED TRAINING	
<b>TENDER (CONTRACT) SUM</b>	
CONTINGENCIES (10%)	
CPA @ 2,5%	
<b>SUB-TOTAL</b>	
ADD 15% VAT	
<b>TENDER (CONTRACT) PRICE CARRIED TO FORM OF OFFER OF ACCEPTANCE (Page C.3)</b>	

**Note:** Tender Sum is the value of the offered total of the prices exclusive of VAT, Contingencies, CPA and specials materials but including contractual variations.

# THE CONTRACT

PART C3  
PART C4

SCOPE OF WORKS  
SITE INFORMATION



## PART C3: SCOPE OF WORK

C3.1	DESCRIPTION OF WORKS .....	C.84
C3.2	ENGINEERING .....	C.90
C3.3	PROCUREMENT POLICY .....	C.91
C3.3.1	REQUIREMENTS .....	C.91
C3.3.2	SUBCONTRACTING SPECIAL CONDITIONS OF CONTRACT .....	C.91
C3.3.3	RESOURCE STANDARD PERTAINING TO TARGETED PROCUREMENT.	C.96
C3.4	CONSTRUCTION .....	C.97
C3.5	MANAGEMENT .....	C.216

---

### **C3.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORKS**

#### **C3.1.1 Employer's Objectives**

The objectives of the project are to upgrading of Shayandima Ext 3 Streets from gravel road to asphalt surfacing in Shayandima Township thereby improving access to community.

The Employer's other objectives are to deliver public infrastructure using labour intensive methods in accordance with EPWP Guidelines.

#### **C3.1.2 Overview and Location of Works**

The project is situated approximately 12km south west of Thohoyandou town in the Thulamela Municipality of the Vhembe District Municipality. The project area gets access from the R524.

#### **C3.1.3 Extent of Works**

The works shall consist of the following main items to be upgraded under the contract. The proposed road works are;

- Clearing and grubbing of the streets and reserve.
- Mass earthworks (Cut to spoil, cut to fill, etc.) for ±2.75 km.
- Roadbed preparation by Rip and compaction for ±2.75 km.
- Construction of layer works (selected, sub-base and base layer) for ±2.75 km.
- Stabilize the sub-base layer with 3% cement (C4) for ±2.75 km.
- Construction of mountable kerbs for ±2.75 km.
- Construction of underground storm water network with associated kerb inlets junction boxes/manhole structures.
- 30mm thick Asphalt surfacing for ±2.75 km
- Construction of Speed humps.
- Installation of road signs.
- Road Markings.

#### **C3.1.4 Location of the Works**

The following details provide the key elements of the project area.

Thulamela Municipal Area: **Shayandima Township**

---

### **C3.1.5 Temporary Works**

The Contractor is to design, supply, construct, demolish and spoil at his own cost any temporary works required in order to carry out the construction works as required. The routes that are part of this contract are:

- Locating and establishing of the site camp site will be the Contractors responsibility.
- The Contractor is required to adequately secure the Site during the contract period.

Tenderers are to make an adequate provision for Site security, especially with regards to, but not limited to, survey poles, temporary signage, orange netting, hoarding, electrical reticulation (until contract completion), etc.

### **C3.1.6 Existing Services**

During the visual assessment of the road, an extensive number of services were identified, and these will require to be protected or relocated. Some of the services that have been identified include but are not limited to:

- Electrical overhead and underground cables along the streets;
- Telkom overhead cables;
- Water Reticulation and Bulk line
- Cables and pipelines at road crossings; and

The exact location of some services is not known, and the Contractor will always be required to be in contact with the relevant service owners/providers. The positions

and relocations of services shown on the drawings are based on the information available at the time and the Contractor is required to exercise extreme caution in his construction activities until the exact positions of all services have been established.

### **C3.1.7 Access**

Furthermore, this Contract requires that the Contractor ensures that all residents have access to their properties after hours and on weekends; all businesses are to have access during business hours. The Contractor is to implement temporary measures/deviations as required in order to achieve this outcome. Prior to the implementation of any deviation, written permission for such deviations shall be obtained from the Employer's Agent.

The Contractor shall advise all residents, community leaders and other stakeholders at least 2 weeks prior to the commencement of construction activities in an area. The Contractor is to employ a Community Liaison Officer in conjunction with the community structures in the area in order to achieve this outcome.

---

The construction camp and works area must be watered during dry and windy conditions to control dust fallout. Dust production must be controlled by regular watering of roads and the works area. Contractors are to ensure that dust production at the site camp as well as the works area is controlled during working hours as well as during weekends.

### **C3.1.8 Accommodation of Traffic**

The Contractor shall ensure the safe accommodation of traffic at all areas where the work may impact traffic and shall provide all delineators, watching, lighting, signs and barricades required by the road authorities, and in accordance with the South African Road Traffic Signs Manual.

### **C3.1.8 Planning / Programming Conditions**

The Contractor must consider with the programming of the works the following conditions:

- All traffic accommodation requirements.
- After exposing existing services for pipe trenches and/or kerb-inlets/manholes the position, size and levels of interfering services must be provided to the Engineer.

A maximum of 5 days need to be allowed in case design changes are required for the installation of new services.

### **C3.1.7 General Information**

#### **C3.1.7.1 Drawings**

The reduced drawings contained in book 2 of 2 that form part of the tender document shall be used for tender purposes only. Further drawings are to be provided on an ongoing basis by the engineer.

The contractor will be supplied with an unreduced 0,05 mm thick transparent polyester print of each of the drawings. These polyester prints are issued free of charge and the contractor shall make any additional prints he may require at his own cost.

Any information in the possession of the contractor, which the resident engineer requires to complete the as-built drawings, shall be supplied to the resident engineer before a certificate of completion will be issued.

Only figured dimensions shall be used and drawings shall not be scaled unless so instructed by the engineer. The engineer will supply all figured dimensions omitted from the drawings.

#### **C3.1.7.2 Power, Water Supply and Other Services**

---

The contractor shall make his own arrangements concerning the supply of electrical power and all other services. No direct payment will be made for the provision of electrical and other services. The cost of providing these services will be deemed to be included in the rates and amounts tendered for the various items of work for which these services are required.

C3.1.7.3 Contractor's Camp Site and Security

The contractor shall make his own arrangements regarding the establishment of a camp site and housing for his construction personnel and all regulations stipulated by the local authority shall be adhered to.

It is anticipated that the Contractor's choice of a camp site will be influenced by the availability of telephone and electrical connections as well as the supply of potable water. Provision is made in these specifications for the erection of a security fence around the site offices. The contractor shall be responsible for the security of his personnel and constructional plant on and around the site of the works and for the security of his camp, and the employer will consider no claims in this regard.

C3.1.7.4 Additional Requirements for Construction Activities

C3.1.7.4.1 The contractor may not commence constructional activities before adequate provision has been made to accommodate traffic in accordance with the requirements of this document and the South African Road Traffic Signs Manual.

C3.1.7.4.2 The contractor shall submit proposals in connection with directional signs to the engineer for approval.

C3.1.7.5 Programme Requirements for Construction Activities

The contractor shall programme his activities to be suitable in terms of his resources to complete the contract inside the stipulated time period.

C3.1.7.6 Construction in Confined Areas

It may be necessary for the contractor to work in confined areas. In certain areas the width of the fill material and pavement layers may reduce to zero and the working space may be confined. The method of construction in these confined areas depends on the Contractor's construction plant. However, the Contractor must note that measurement and payment will be in accordance with the specified cross-sections and dimensions, irrespective of the method used to achieve these cross-sections and dimensions, and that the rates and amounts tendered will be deemed to include full compensation for any special equipment or construction methods or for any difficulty encountered in working in confined areas and narrow widths, and at or around obstructions, and that no extra payment will be made nor will any claim for payment be considered on account of these difficulties.

---

### **C3.1.8 Labour Regulations**

#### **C3.1.8.0 EPWP Requirements**

Labour-intensive works shall be constructed/maintained using local workers who are temporarily employed in terms of this Scope of Work

Competencies of LI Management and Supervisory staff

Contractors shall engage supervisory and management staff in labour-intensive works that have completed the skills programme including Foremen/Supervisors at

NQF “National Certificate: Supervision of Civil Engineering Construction Processes” and Site Agent/Manager at NQF level 4 “Manage labour-intensive Construction Processes” or equivalent QCTO qualification.

#### **Wage Dispute (Contractor default to pay beneficiaries)**

Any dispute between the Contractor and labourers, regarding delayed payment or default in payment of fair wages, if not resolved immediately may compel the Employer to intervene.

The Employer may, upon the Contractor defaulting payment, pay the moneys due to the workers not honoured in time, out of any moneys due or which may become due to the Contractor under the Contract.

#### **Provision of Hand tools**

The Contractor shall provide his labour force with hand tools of adequate quality, sufficient in numbers and make the necessary provisions to maintain the tools in good and safe working conditions

#### **Reporting Requirements**

The Contractor should submit the following at the beginning of the Contract:

- (a) Contracts of all the workers employed on the contracts including their certified identity documents;
- (b) Proof of Registration for COIDA.
- (c) OHS Files

The Contractor shall submit monthly returns/reports as specified below:

- (a) Signed Muster rolls/pay sheets of temporary workers and permanent staff detailing the number, category, gender, rate of pay and daily attendance.
- (b) Copies of certified identity documents of workers
- (c) Number of persons who have attended training including nature and duration of training provided
- (d) Assets created, rehabilitated or maintained in accordance with indicators in the EPWP M&E framework
- (e) Plant utilization returns
- (f) Progress report detailing production output compared to the programme of works

**C3.1.8.1 Payment for the labour-intensive component of the works**

Payment for works identified in clause 2.3 “the Extent of the Project” in the Project Specifications as being labour-intensive shall only be made in accordance with the provisions of the Contract if the works are constructed strictly in accordance with the provisions of the scope of work. Any non-payment for such works shall not relieve the Contractor in any way from his obligations either in contract or in delict.

**C3.1.8.2 Applicable labour laws**

Ministerial determination 4:

1. Special Public Works Programs Government Gazette no. 34310-3 of 4 May 2012.
2. Code of Good Practice for Employment and Conditions of works of Expanded Public Works Programs Government Gazette no. 34032 of 18 February 2011.
3. Sectorial determination 2: Civil engineering sector

---

**C3.2 ENGINEERING**

**C3.2.1 Design**

- (a) The Employer is responsible for the design of the permanent Works as reflected in these Contract Documents unless otherwise stated.
- (b) The Contractor is responsible for the design of the temporary Works and their compatibility with the permanent Works.
- (c) The Contractor shall supply all details necessary to assist the engineer in the compilation of the as-built drawings.

**C3.2.2 Employer's Design**

- (a) Detail description of Works
- (b) General Works
- (c) Sign Gantries. E.g.

**C3.2.3 Contractor's Design**

Where contractor is to supply the design of designated parts of the permanent Works or temporary Works he shall supply full working drawings supported by a professional engineer's design certificate.

**C3.2.4 Design procedures**

All designs and modifications thereto shall be communicated in writing and the contractor and engineer shall maintain master lists to record and track all transactions.



---

### C3.3 PROCUREMENT POLICY

#### C3.3.1 REQUIREMENTS

The Contractor shall be required to adopt labour-based techniques through the full spectrum of the works with the provision that the Client's specific objective regarding time and quality are not compromised. Maximisation of employment shall be of the essence on this contract.

Together with their tenders, all Tenderers are required to submit a comprehensive implementation plan clearly stating the labour content and number of jobs that shall be created. The employment of labour shall be reflected in a programme in sufficient details to enable the Project Manager to monitor and compare it with the implementation plan. The Contractor shall be required to submit employment data on a monthly basis to the Project Manager.

The Contractor and all sub-contractors will be required to pay labour rates which are in accordance with SAFCEC rates for the civil construction industry for unskilled workers.

Should the contractor, at Works Completion, be in default by non-attainment of the abovementioned labour-intensive targets, the Employer shall have the right to, without prejudice of any other rights, apply a penalty of not exceeding 5% of the contract sum.

Tenderers are to also note that it is an explicit condition of this tender that all unskilled labourers on the project are to be employed from the local community. The Contractor shall in general, maximise the involvement of the local community.

#### C3.3.2 SUBCONTRACTING SPECIAL CONDITIONS OF CONTRACT

Participation and Advancement of Start-Up, Small and Micro Enterprises

The Municipality has identified job creation and access to procurement opportunities by Start-ups, Small and Micro Enterprises (QSE / EMEs) as an essential requirement towards building an economically viable Municipality. In this regard the following definitions are applicable:

**“Start-up Enterprises”** means an enterprise that has been in existence and operating for less than two years.

**“Micro Enterprises”** means an enterprise that has a CIDB grading designation of or 2.

**“Small Enterprises”** means an enterprise that has a CIDB grading designation of 3.

**“Locally based QSE /EMEs”** means enterprises that have their operational base in the ward in which the project is to be executed or, alternatively, the members of the enterprise are resident in the particular ward. Should suitable locally based QSE / EME Contractors as defined above not be available in the particular ward, then they shall be sourced from adjacent wards.

It is a condition of this tender that the successful contractor is required to subcontract a minimum value of work. If it is established that the QSE / EMEs are sufficiently resourced to execute the proposed works as a complete package the Contractor may conclude full sub-contract agreements with locally based QSE / EMEs, Excluding P & G's and Provisional sums.

The following activities are intended to be carried out by QSE / EME's

- Section 1600: Overhaul
- Section 2300: Concrete Kerbing and Channelling
- Section 5100: Pitching, Stonework and Protection Against Erosion
- Section 5200: Gabion
- Section 5400: Guardrails
- Section 5500: Fencing
- Section 5600: Road Signs
- Section 5700: Road
- Section 7300: Concrete Block Paving

It is a condition of this tender that the successful Contractor is required to take full responsibility for managing all appointed sub-contractors and the quality of their works. The Contractor will be expected to pay QSE / EMEs full rates as submitted by the Contractor to the Municipality.

Above this, it is a condition of this contract that should the contractor fail to pay the QSE / EME's with no valid reason/s, the Municipality reserves the right to pay the QSE / EME's directly and deduct same from any amount paid to the contractor.

The form of contract to be used with QSE / EMEs is the GCC sub-contract agreement. The Contract Data must record the specific requirements in respect of penalties, retention and payment. With regard to the latter, the Contractor is to allow for fortnightly certificates from the QSE / EMEs and for payment to the QSE / EMEs to be effected within 7 days of certification.

In order to achieve the goals of this policy and to ensure that the QSE / EMEs are treated fairly and given every opportunity to advance their business whilst delivering a successful project, the Contractor is to note the following and provide for any cost that may be associated therewith:

1. If appropriate, the QSE / EME bill of quantities is to provide for market related P&G items in order that the QSE / EME may be compensated for any unforeseen delays or events that impact on his ability to complete his works. It is to be specifically noted that the rates for items of work to be executed by QME / EME's must be market related. Tenderers are to ensure that rates tendered for this portion of the works is to take into account all items that the main contractor would have allowed for in his

UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS

---

normal course of pricing, i.e., materials, labour, wastage, profit, attendance, etc. all at applicable productivity rates.

2. The Contractor will be expected to have clearly specified the programme dates to the QSE / EME Contractors and these dates are to be included in the contract of agreement between the two parties. The Managing Contractor is to monitor the QSE / EME Contractor's progress against the programme and hold progress meetings with the QSE / EME Contractors where minutes are to be kept and signed off by both parties.
3. The Contractor is to assess the skills of the QSE / EME Contractor and provide the relevant support and training where it is necessary in order for the QSE / EME Contractor to complete the works to programme, budget and specification. The Managing Contractor will be expected to provide on-site training to the QSE / EME Contractors that will ensure that the QSE / EME Contractor's staff is suitably trained to execute the works and that they receive sufficient relevant experience on the project.
4. The Contractor is responsible for safety compliance on the project and will assist the QSE / EME Contractors in all aspects to achieve safety compliance, that will include:
  - a) Assisting the QSE / EME Contractors with developing their safety files, legal appointments, etc
  - b) Assisting the QSE / EME Contractors with achieving safety on site.
  - c) Having a tool box talks with the QSE / EME Contractor's employees on a daily basis.
  - d) Providing all safety equipment and signage.
  - e) Providing safety training where necessary.
5. The Contractor is to provide all the necessary equipment for the timeous monitoring and the checking of the quality of works as carried out by the QSE / EME Contractors. The Managing Contractor will be expected to monitor the QME /EME Contractor's works for quality compliance and provide necessary support to the QSE / EME Contractors in order to achieve quality requirements. The Managing Contractor is to ensure that if the QSE / EME Contractor's quality of works does not achieve specification the Managing Contractor will assist the QSE / EME Contractors to achieve specification and not allow the works to continue until the quality requirements are achieved.

6. The Main Contractor is to generate monthly reports for the Municipality that includes the following:
  - a) QSE / EME Contractor resources on the site, i.e. supervisors, labour, plant tools and equipment
  - b) QSE / EME Contractor progress of works on site.
  - c) QSE / EME Contractor quality control on site.
  - d) QSE / EME Contractor expenditure on the project versus target expenditure.
  - e) Copies of minutes of the QSE / EME Contractor and Managing Contractor progress meetings. Concerns and improvements to be made.

The tenderers are to price the works to achieve full compliance with the above requirements. Failure of the Contractor to achieve these requirements may result in the Municipality enforcing compliance by appointing 3rd parties if necessary to assist and deducting all reasonable costs for achieving compliance from money due to the Contractor.

Following from the above, the QSE / EME's to be contracted on the project must be selected from the provided database which will be given to the successful bidder. The database will include QSE / EME that are youth, women owned, disabled and excombatants. The Contractor will be expected to give preference to QSE / EME's that comply with all/most of these groups. The following information must be provided by said Contractor within 14 days of the commencement date of the contract.

1. Detailed approach and methodology on the employment of local QSE / EME's, including:
  - o QSE / EME/s company name/s to be employed on the project;
  - o QSE / EME contact persons;
  - o Works to be executed by QSE / EME/s;
  - o Programme (anticipated start, duration and end dates) applicable to the works defined in item above;
  - o Estimated value of the works identified in item C3.3.2 above.
2. A detailed breakdown of tendered rates for QSE / EME activities, including:
  - o Labour portion of the activity;
  - o Equipment portion of the activity;
  - o Materials portion of the activity;
  - o Planned percentage of profit.

The Tenderers are to price the works to achieve full compliance with the above requirements. Tenderers are to ensure that they allocate a dedicated individual to manage the QSE / EME's and fulfil the requirements stated above.

The QSE / EME supervisor will be required to conclude a scorecard with the Municipality. The scorecard will encompass four key performance areas and several key performance indicators as outlined overleaf. The QSE / EME supervisor will be required to score a minimum of 80%. The scorecard review will take place monthly.

UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS

Key Performance Areas	Key Performance Indicators
1) Safety	a) Be familiar with and ensures QSE / EME Contractor enforces the safety specs and relevant OHSA b) Reporting of incidents and accidents <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensures QSE / EME Contractor Reports incidents and accidents to the Contractor on the day they occur</li> </ul>
2) Quality Control	a) Setting out of the Works <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensures that the Works have been set-out correctly prior to construction commencing</li> </ul> b) Monitoring of Construction <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Examine the Works daily and pre-empt unnecessary work by the QSE / EME Contractor by warning him of incorrect workmanship as soon as it is identified.</li> </ul> c) Approval of the Works <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assist QSE / EME Contractor in the works approval process.</li> </ul> d) Read Drawings <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assist QSE / EME Contractor in reading and interpreting construction drawings</li> </ul>
3) Financial	a) Daily Costing b) Ensures that QSE / EME Contractors do daily costing c) Variances to Scope <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assist QSE / EME Contractors identify and claim for additional works</li> </ul> d) Standing Time Costs
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assist QSE / EME Contractors compute and Claim standing time costs</li> </ul>
4) Site Administration and Progress Monitoring	a) Communication <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensures that QSE / EME Contractors communicate with the Contractor in writing on site related issues</li> </ul> b) Reporting <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensures that the Main Contractor's progress report is communicated with the QSE / EME Contractors and that contingency plans are followed through</li> </ul> c) Site diary <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensures QSE / EME Contractors maintain a site diary</li> </ul> d) Claims <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assist QSE / EME Contractors draft claims for Extension of Time where applicable</li> </ul> e) Quantities <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assist QSE / EME Contractors in the measurement of the works</li> </ul>

The Municipality reserves the right to withdraw its acceptance of the offer, should the appointed contractor fail to satisfactorily address the above requirements within 14 days of the commencement date of the contract. Approved documentation will form part of the contract. Failure of the Contractor to achieve the requirements set-out in this tender document during construction may result in the Municipality enforcing compliance by appointing 3rd parties if necessary to assist and deducting all reasonable costs for achieving compliance from money due to the Contractor.

Should the contractor, at Practical Completion, be in default by non-attainment of the above-mentioned labour-intensive targets and QSE / EME requirements, the Employer shall have the right to, without prejudice of any other rights, apply a penalty not exceeding 5% of the contract sum.

### **C3.3.3 RESOURCE STANDARD PERTAINING TO TARGETED PROCUREMENT**

The Resource Specification is for SANS 1914-4: Participation of targeted enterprises and targeted labour (local resources). Targeted enterprises and targeted labour groups will be identified by the Community Liaison Officer, in consultation with the local Ward Councillor.

## **C3.4 CONSTRUCTION**

### **C3.4.1 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS**

(a) The following specifications shall apply for the construction of the Works.

(i) The COLTO Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Works for State Road Authorities (1998).

The contractor may purchase copies of Volume (i) from the South African Institution of Civil Engineers.

SAICE

Tel : (011) 805-5947

Waterfall Park / Postnet Suite 81

Fax : (011) 805-5971

Howick Gardens / Private Bag X65

Vorna Valley / Halfwayhouse

Contact Person : Angeline Aylward

Becker Street / 1685

Midrand

(b) SABS or BS Specifications and Codes of Practice

Wherever any reference is made to the South African Bureau of Standards (SABS) and the British Standards Specification (BSS) in either these Bill of Quantities or the Specification of Materials and Methods to be Used (OOG-001E), this reference shall be deemed to read "SABS or equivalent standard" and BS or equivalent standard respectively.

(c) Various other specifications specified in the COLTO Standard Specifications or the Project Specifications.

(d) Latest Sabita Manual Quality Management in the Manual 25 titled "Handling and Transport of Bituminous Binders"

**C3.4.2 PROJECT SPECIFICATIONS RELATING TO STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS**

**C3.4.2.1 General Conditions of Contract Referred to in the Standard Specifications**

The references to the General Conditions of Contract appearing in the COLTO Standard Specifications refer to the COLTO General Conditions of Contract which is superseded in this contract by the General Conditions of Contract for Construction Works 2015. The corresponding clause in the latter document pertaining to the reference in the COLTO Standard Specifications is listed in the table below.

Clause No. in the Standard Specifications	Clause No. in COLTO General Conditions	Equivalent Clause No. in General Conditions of Contract 2010
1202	15	5.6.1
1206	14	Deleted
1209	52	6.10.2
1210	54	51.1
1212(1)	49	6.10.1
1215	45	5.12.1
1217	35	8.2.1
1303	49	6.8
1303	53	6.11
1303	12	5.6
1303	45	5.12.1
1403	40(1)	6.4.1
1505	40	6.4
31.03	40	6.4
3204(b)	40	6.4
3303(b)	2	3
5803(c)	40	6.4
5805(d)	40	6.4
6103(c)	40	6.4
Item 83.03	22	5.15
ALL SECTIONS	48	6.6

---

### **C3.4.2.2 Amendments to the Standard Specifications**

There are no amendments to the Standard Specifications as issued by the Committee of Land Transport Officials (COLTO).

### **C3.4.2.3 Project Specifications Relating to Standard Specifications**

This part of the project specifications deals with matters relating to the standard specifications. Where reference is made in the standard specifications to the project specifications this part shall also contain the relevant information e.g. the requirements where a choice of materials or construction methods are provided for the standard specifications.

In certain clauses the standard specifications allow a choice to be specified in the project specifications between alternative materials or methods of construction and for additional requirements to be specified to suit a particular contract. Details of such alternatives or additional requirements applicable to this contract are contained in this part of the project specifications. It also contains some additional specifications and amendments of the standard specifications required for this particular contract.

The number of each clause and each payment item in this part of the project specifications consists of the prefix B followed by a number corresponding to the number of the relevant clause or payment item in the standard specifications. The number of a new clause or a new payment item, which does not form part of a clause or a payment item in the standard specifications and is included here, is also prefixed by B followed by a new number. The new numbers follow on the last clause or item number used in the relevant section of the standard specifications.

Clauses and pay items referring to labour intensive methods are prefixed by L in the project specifications.

Clauses and pay items referring to emerging contractors are prefixed by E in the project specifications.

### **C3.4.2.4 Project Specifications Relating to EPWP**

#### **EPWP Special Project Specification**

As much as is economically feasible all work shall be implemented by employing Labour Intensive Construction methods. Over and above the normal Building and Allied works to be implemented by employing skilled and unskilled labour for the works specified in the "Guidelines for the Implementation of Labour projects under the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) shall be -Intensive using Labour Intensive Construction methods

#### **Requirement for Sourcing and engagement of Labour**

Unskilled and semi-skilled labour required for the execution of all labour-intensive works shall be engaged strictly in accordance with prevailing legislation and SANS 1914-5, Participation of Targeted Labour.



The minimum rate of pay set for the EPWP is as per the DPW rates.

Tasks established by the contractor must be such that:

- a) the average worker completes 5 tasks per week in 40 hours or less; and
- b) the weakest worker completes 5 tasks per week in 55 hours or less.
- (d) The contractor must revise the time taken to complete a task whenever it is established that the time taken to complete a weekly task is not within the requirements of 1.1.3.
- (e) The Contractor shall, through all available community structures, inform the local community of the labour-intensive works and the employment opportunities presented thereby. Preference must be given to people with previous practical experience in construction and / or who come from households:
  - a) where the head of the household has less than a primary school education;
  - b) that have less than one full time person earning an income;
  - c) where subsistence agriculture is the source of income.
  - d) those who are not in receipt of any social security pension income

#### **Employment demographics**

The Contractor shall endeavour to ensure that the expenditure on the employment of temporary workers is in the following proportions:

- a) 60 % women;
- b) 55% youth who are between the ages of 18 and 35; and
- c) 2% on persons with disabilities.

---

**MATTERS RELATING TO THE STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS**

SECTION 1200: GENERAL REQUIREMENTS AND PROVISIONS

SECTION 1300: CONTRACTOR'S ESTABLISHMENT ON SITE AND GENERAL  
OBLIGATIONS

SECTION 1400: HOUSING, OFFICES AND LABORATORIES FOR THE ENGINEER'S SITE  
PERSONNEL

SECTION 1500: ACCOMMODATION OF TRAFFIC

SECTION 1800: DAYWORK SCHEDULE

SECTION 2100: DRAINS

SECTION 2200: PREFABRICATED CULVERTS

SECTION 2300: CONCRETE KERBING, CONCRETE CHANNELLING, CHUTES AND  
DOWNPIPES AND CONCRETE LININGS FOR OPEN DRAINS

SECTION 3100: BORROW MATERIALS

SECTION 3300: MASS EARTHWORKS

SECTION 3400: PAVEMENT LAYERS OF GRAVEL MATERIAL

SECTION 3600: CRUSHED-STONE BASE

SECTION 4100: PRIME COAT

SECTION 4200: ASPHALT BASE AND SURFACING

SECTION 5100: PITCHING, STONEMWORK AND PROTECTION AGAINST EROSION

SECTION 5200: GABIONS

SECTION 5600: ROAD SIGNS

SECTION 5700: ROAD MARKINGS

SECTION 5900: FINISHING THE ROAD AND ROAD RESERVE AND TREATING OLD  
ROADS

SECTION 6100: FOUNDATIONS FOR STRUCTURES

SECTION 6200: FALSEWORK, FORMWORK AND CONCRETE FINISH

SECTION 6300: STEEL REINFORCEMENT FOR STRUCTURES

SECTION 6400: CONCRETE FOR STRUCTURES

SECTION 6600: NO-FINES CONCRETE, JOINTS, BEARINGS, BOLT GROUPS FOR  
ELECTRIFICATION, PARAPETS AND DRAINAGE FOR STRUCTURE

---

## **SECTION 1200: GENERAL REQUIREMENTS AND PROVISIONS**

### **B1202 SERVICES**

Add the following to the fifth paragraph:

“Provision is made in the bill of quantities for payment for searching and exposing of unknown or by the relevant service authorities or by a selected subcontractor if so, ordered by the engineer.”. Services as well as the relocation and/or protection of existing services. Any moving of existing services which may be required within the proclaimed road reserve will be undertaken

### **B1204 PROGRAMME OF WORK**

#### **a) General requirements**

Amend the word “network” in the fourth line of the first paragraph to read as “bar (Gantt) chart”.

Add the following after the third paragraph:

“The bar-chart programme to be provided by the contractor shall show the various activities in such detail as may be required by the engineer. Progress in terms of the programme shall be updated monthly by the contractor in accordance with the progress made by the contractor.

In compiling the programme of work, the contractor shall indicate and make due allowance for the following, as specified elsewhere in the contract documents:

- The requirements regarding the accommodation of traffic and areas that may be occupied at any time for construction purposes (as indicated on the drawings and specified in Section 1500 of the specifications)
- Requirements regarding the training of labourers and Emerging Contractors (EC’s).
- The requirements for work to be undertaken by labourers and work to be undertaken by EC’s

#### **b) Programme of Work for rehabilitation work**

Amend the word “network” in the fourth line of the second paragraph to read as “bar (Gantt) chart”

### **B1205 WORKMANSHIP AND QUALITY CONTROL**

Add the following to the third paragraph:

“The engineer shall, however, undertake acceptance control tests for the judgement of workmanship and quality, without accepting any obligations vested with the contractor in terms of the contract with specific reference to quality of materials and workmanship. Such acceptance control test done by the engineer shall not relieve the contractor of his obligations to maintaining his own quality control system”.

Add the following at the end of this clause:

"The engineer shall, for the purpose of acceptance control on products and workmanship, assess test results and measurements in accordance with the provisions of section 8300 of the standard specifications. Where small quantities of work are involved, a lot shall mean a full day's production for a specific item of work subject to acceptance control testing."

### **B1206 THE SETTING-OUT OF THE WORK AND PROTECTION OF BEACONS**

Add the following:

” The contractor shall be responsible for the true and proper setting out of the works and for the correctness of the position, levels, dimensions and alignment of all parts of the Works and for the provision “The contractor of all necessary instruments, appliances and labour in connection therewith.”  
The Contractor shall take care that property beacons, trigonometrical survey beacons or setting out beacons are not displaced or destroyed without the consent of the Engineer. Property beacons and trigonometrical survey beacons that have been displaced or destroyed shall be replaced by a registered land surveyor, who shall certify such replacement.  
The cost of replacing all beacons displaced or destroyed during the course of the Contract without the consent of the Engineer shall be borne by the Contractor.”

**B1209 PAYMENT**

**(b) Rates to be inclusive**

Add the following:

“VAT shall be excluded from the rates and provided for as a lump sum in the summary of Bill of Quantities”

**(e) Materials on the site**

Add the following:

“In addition, the engineer may at his sole discretion also allow payments under "Materials on Site" in respect of any construction materials if stored off-site providing that:

- (a) The site selected for this purpose is approved by the engineer
- (b) Such land is physically separated from any production plant or operation
- (c) Only materials for use under this contract is stockpiled on such land
- (d) The contractor has provided proof of an agreement with the owner of such land that the owner has no claim whatsoever on any materials stockpiled on such land
- (e) Materials obtained by the contractor for or on behalf of emerging subcontractors (SMME's) shall remain the responsibility of the contractor after payment has been made in respect of material on site.

**B1214 CONTRACTOR'S ACTIVITIES IN RESPECT OF PROPERTY OUTSIDE THE ROAD RESERVE AND OF SERVICES MOVED, DAMAGED OR ALTERED**

Add the following to the first paragraph of subclause (d)(ii)

“This is also required with respect to fences, gates, camp sites, bypasses and material spoiled on private property.”

Add the following after subclause (e)

“These written statements, as required in Clause 1214(b)-(e) shall be handed to the Engineer before the final certificate will be issued.”

**B1215 EXTENSION OF TIME RESULTING FROM ABNORMAL RAINFALL**

Add the following after the first paragraph of this clause:

“For the purposes of this contract, extension of time resulting from abnormal rainfall or other forms of inclement weather shall be determined according to the requirements of Method ii (critical-path method).”

**Method (ii) (Critical path method)**

Delete “(based on a five-day working week)” in the fifth and sixth lines of the second paragraph of the description of this method.

Delete the last sentence of the second paragraph of the description of this method and replace with the following:

“The value of “n” shall be taken as five (05) working days per calendar month. If normal rainy or inclement weather, resulting in delays, occurs for less than five (05) working days in any calendar month, the difference between the five (05) working days and the actual number of working days on which normal rainy or inclement weather occurred, shall be ignored and not accumulated for the duration of the contract period for the purposes of determining an extension of time due to normal rainy weather, nor due to any other reason.

Items of work on the critical path of the programme of work which are subject to climatic limitations shall also be considered for extension of time if such items of work are delayed by e.g., cold weather, high winds or other inclement weather conditions.

In this regard, reference shall be made to weather limitations specified for the application of various bituminous products. However, for months during which seal-work cannot be undertaken in terms of the specifications, no extension of time shall be claimed for.

Rainfall records for **SIBASA RAINFALL STATION (0766837W)**

<b>MONTH</b>	<b>AVERAGE RAINFALL (mm)</b>	<b>RAIN DAYS (per month)</b>
JANUARY	215.5	9
FEBRUARY	197.24	9
MARCH	158.10	10
APRIL	57.65	1
MAY	23.79	0
JUNE	11.07	1
JULY	14.59	5
AUGUST	13.25	4
SEPTEMBER	28.70	1
OCTOBER	60.99	7
NOVEMBER	121.16	3
DECEMBER	170.98	5

**B1217 PROTECTION OF THE WORKS AND REQUIREMENTS TO BE MET BEFORE CONSTRUCTION OF NEW WORK ON TOP OF COMPLETED WORK IS COMMENCED**

Add the following subclause:

"(h) No concrete kerbing or concrete drains directly adjoining the bituminous surfacing shall be constructed prior to the completion of the bituminous surfacing."

**B1222 USE OF EXPLOSIVES**

Add the following subclause:

"(h) Where blasting operations are undertaken in close proximity of temporary deviations, the contractor shall implement all such safeguarding measures as may be required and instructed by the engineer.

**B1224 THE HANDING-OVER OF THE ROAD RESERVE**

Add the following:

"The total length of the road reserve between the specified limits of construction will be handed over to the contractor on the commencement date. Reference shall, however, be made to the requirements of section 1500 of these specifications where limitations in respect of work-areas are specified. In the event of the non-adherence by the contractor in terms of the mentioned specifications, the engineer shall withdraw such sections of the road reserve as may be justified to ensure suitable progress of the works or safe passage of traffic."

**B1229 SABS CEMENT SPECIFICATIONS**

Replace the last paragraph of this clause with the following:

"Where reference is made in this specification or the standard specifications to the cement specifications, e.g., SABS 471: Portland cement and rapid hardening Portland cement, it shall be replaced with the new specification:

**SABS ENV 197-1: Cement-composition, specifications and conformity criteria.**

Part 1: Common cements.

Furthermore, where reference is made in this specification or the standard specifications to the different cement types, the following new names/types shall apply:

Old product nomenclature	Typical new product nomenclature	
	Cement type	Cement strength class
OPC	CEM I	32,5
	CEM I	32,5R
RHC	CEM I	42,5
	CEM I	42,5R
LASRC	No provision made	No provision made
PC15SL	CEM II/A-S	32,5

Old product nomenclature	Typical new product nomenclature	
	Cement type	Cement strength class
	CEM II/A-S CEM III/A-S	32,5R 42,5
PC15FA	CEM II/A-V CEM II/A-V CEM II/A-W CEM II/A-W	32,5 32,5R 32,5 32,5R
RH15FA	CEM III/A-V CEM II/A-V CEM III/A-W CEM II/A-W	42,5 42,5R 42,5 42,5R
PBFC	CEM III/A CEM III/A	32,5 32,5R
PFAC	CEM II/B-V CEM II/B-W	32,5 32,5
RH30SL	CEM II/B-S CEM II/B-S	32,5R 42,5
RH40SL	CEM III/A CEM III/A	32,5R 42,5

CEM I 32,5, CEM II A-S 32,5, CEM II/A-V 32,5, or CEM III A may be used for the manufacture of reinforced concrete members

Add the following new clauses:

**“B1230: IN-SERVICE AND STRUCTURED TRAINING**

The contractor shall in addition to the structured (accredited) training as provided for in Part C of this document implement an in-service training programme, from the commencement of the contract, in which the various skills required for the execution and completion of the works are imparted to the labourers engaged thereon, in a programmed and progressive manner. Labourers shall be trained progressively throughout the duration of the contract, in the various stages of a particular type of work.

**(a) Details of in-service and structured training**

- (i) The contractor shall attach to form RDP 1(E) basic details of his proposed in-service training programme, which details shall inter alia include the following:
- the details of training to be provided
  - the manner in which the training is to be delivered
  - the number and details of trainers to be utilised.

- (ii) The in-service training programme shall be submitted with the initial works programme. The progress in relation to this programme will be recorded monthly and attached to the site meeting minutes and payment certificate.
- (iii) The contractor shall provide on-site, sufficient skilled and competent trainers to train all labourers engaged on the contract, in the various skills required for the execution and completion of the works.
- (iv) All labourers shall be remunerated in respect of all time spent undergoing training.
- (v) Every worker engaged on the contract shall on the termination of his participation on the contract, be entitled to receive from the contractor, a certificate of service in which the following information shall be recorded:
  - The name of the contractor
  - The name of the employee
  - The name of the project/contract
  - The nature of the work satisfactorily executed by the worker and the time spent thereon
  - The nature and extent of training provided to the worker
  - The dates of service.

The cost of the above obligations shall be deemed to be covered by the sums and rates tendered for items B13.01(a), (b) and (c) in the bill of quantities. The performance of the contractor in providing in-service training, shall be taken into consideration should the contractor fail to reach his CPG at the completion of the project.

**(b) Lead time for training**

The training of labour as specified shall, as far as possible, take place before commencement of each activity and the contractor shall take into account in his programme the lead-time he requires for such training. All training herein specified shall be deemed to be a construction activity and a Non-negotiable condition of the contract”.

**B1231 COMMUNITY LIAISON OFFICER (CLO)**

The contractor or his appointed agent will appoint a Community Liaison Officer (CLO) after consultation with the local communities, the engineer and the employer. The contractor shall direct all his liaison efforts with the local communities through the appointed officer. The contractor shall, however, accept the appointed as part of his management personnel.

**(a) Duties of the Community Liaison Officer**

The Community Liaison Officer’s duties will be:

- (i) To be available on site daily between the hours of 07:00 and 17:00 and at other times as the need arises. His normal working day will extend from 07:00 in the morning until 16:00 in the afternoon.
- (ii) To determine, in consultation with the contractor, the needs of the temporary labour for relevant skills training. He will be responsible for the identification of suitable trainees and will attend one of each of the training sessions.
- (iii) To communicate daily with the contractor and the engineer to determine the labour requirements with regard to numbers and skill, to facilitate in labour disputes and to assist in their resolution.
- (iv) To assist in and facilitate in the recruitment of suitable temporary labour and the establishment of a “labour desk”.



- (v) To attend all meetings in which the community and/or labour are present or are required to be represented.
- (vi) To assist in the identification, and screening of labourers from the community in accordance with the contractor's requirements.
- (vii) To inform temporary labour of their conditions of temporary employment and to inform temporary labourers as early as possible when their period of employment will be terminated.
- (viii) To attend disciplinary proceedings to ensure that hearings are fair and reasonable.
- (ix) To keep a daily written record of his interviews and community liaison.
- (x) To attend monthly site meetings to report on labour and RDP matters.
- (xi) All such other duties as agreed upon between all parties concerned.
- (xii) To submit monthly returns regarding community liaison as illustrated in Part C5.1 of this document (form RDP 12(E)).

**(b) Payment for the community liaison officer**

A special pay item is incorporated in section 1200 of the bill of quantities relating to payment of the liaison officer on a prime cost sum basis. This payment shall only be made for the period for which the duties of the liaison officer are required. The remuneration of the CLO shall be determined by the Employer in terms of the Sectorial determination 2: Civil Engineering Sector (Task grade 3).

**(c) Period of employment of the community liaison officer**

The period of employment of the community liaison officer shall be as decided upon jointly by the contractor, engineer and employer.

**B1232 SUBCONTRACTORS**

Over and above the stipulations of clause 4.4 of the General Conditions of Contract 2010, regarding subletting of part of the works, it is a condition of the contract that an approved subcontractor shall not sublet part of his work, covered in his appointment by the main contractor, to another subcontractor without the consent and approval of the engineer. Subletting shall in all cases be critically considered by the engineer.

In addition to the provisions of clause 4.4 of the general conditions of contract regarding subcontracting of the works, it is a requirement of this contract that an approved subcontractor shall not further subcontract work subcontracted to him by the main contractor, to another subcontractor without the consent and approval of the engineer. Subcontracting shall in all cases be critically considered by the engineer. The engineer reserves the right to limit the extent or the volume of work subcontracted by the contractor, should he deem it necessary in terms of progress or quality of workmanship.

**B1233 WORKMEN'S COMPENSATION ACT**

All labour employed on the site shall be covered by the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Deceases Act (COIDA). The contractor shall pay in full, including the payment of the necessary levies, such amounts, as are due in terms of the Act. The contractor at the commencement of the contract shall resolve the manner in which Workmen's Compensation will be handled. Amounts paid by the contractor shall not be included in the wage rates but shall be covered by the Contractor to be deemed as included in his General Obligations rates in Section 1300 of the Bill of Quantities.

Add the following clause:

**B1234 MINE HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT 1996, ACT 29 OF 1996**

**(a) Introduction**

The main objective of this Act is to protect the health and safety of persons at mines. This specification is therefore aimed at promoting health and safety specifically at borrow pits. Borrow pits are classified as mines.

**(b) General Provisions**

The contractor shall be responsible for controlling his operations at every borrow pit where material is being excavated to ensure compliance with all the requirements of the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996. The contractor shall also ensure that the works, shaping and finishing off of the borrow pit are done in accordance with the provisions as specified in section 3100 of the COLTO Standard Specifications and this Act. The contractor shall also comply to the requirements as set out in C3.4.3.2 Environmental Management Plan.

The minimum requirements for operations at borrow pits are:

- Borrow pits are worked in such a way that the health and safety of employees and the public will not be endangered.
- A monthly report shall be submitted to the engineer on health and safety aspects at the borrow pits.
- The contractor shall appoint a manager to manage the borrow pits in accordance with the Mine Health and Safety Act.
- The contractor shall take the necessary steps to ensure that the work area of the borrow pits are safe at all times. This shall include items such as the provision of fencing and security guards.

**(c) Duties of the Manager**

The minimum duties of the manager supervising the activities at borrow pits shall be:

- Maintain a healthy and safe borrow pit environment.
- Identify hazards and related risks to which persons and employees are exposed.
- Establish a health and safety policy that
  - Describes the organisation of work.
  - Contains hazards and related risks to which persons and employees are exposed Establish a health and safety.
  - Contains a risk analysis.
- Supply and erect the necessary safety and warning signs.

Add the following pay items and change the clause number.

**B12.35 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

Add the following items:

<b>ITEM</b>	<b>UNIT</b>
<b>B12.01 Relocation and reinstatement of ESKOM overhead power lines and/or underground cables</b>	
(a) Direct payment to ESKOM or its agent	Prime Cost (PC)
(b) Handling costs and profit in respect of B 12.01 (a)	Percentage (%)

Expenditure under this item will be made in accordance with the general conditions of contract. The tendered percentage is a percentage of the amount actually spent under Item B 12.01 (a), which shall include full compensation for the handling costs of the Contractor, plus the profit and all other incidentals, in connection with paying Eskom or its appointed agent for carrying out the work.

<b>B12.02 Relocation and reinstatement of TELKOM overhead phone lines and / or underground cables</b>	
(a) Direct payment to TELKOM or its agent	Prime Cost (PC)
(b) Handling costs and profit in respect of B 12.02 (a)	Percentage (%)

Expenditure under this item will be made in accordance with the general conditions of contract. The tendered percentage is a percentage of the amount actually spent under Item B 12.02 (a), which shall include full compensation for the handling costs of the Contractor, plus the profit and all other incidentals, in connection with paying Telkom or its appointed agent for carrying out the work.

<b>B12.03 Relocation and reinstatement of water lines belonging to the local authority, institution or community</b>	
(a) Direct payment to the authority or its agent	Prime Cost (PC)
(b) Handling costs and profit in respect of B 12.03 (a)	Percentage (%)

Expenditure under this item will be made in accordance with the general conditions of contract. The tendered percentage is a percentage of the amount actually spent under Item B 12.03 (a), which shall include full compensation for the handling costs of the Contractor, plus the profit and all other incidentals, in connection with paying the local authority or its appointed agent for carrying out the work. The Contractor may be required to carry out work on water mains or water points. In this case payment will be made at unit rates or on Dayworks as agreed by the Engineer

<b>B12.04 Land acquisition and crop loss reimbursements, including miscellaneous items such as gates, fences etc.</b>	
(a) Direct payment to individuals or communities	Prime Cost (PC)
(b) Handling costs and profit in respect of B 12.04 (a)	Percentage (%)

Expenditure under this item will be made in accordance with the general conditions of contract. The tendered percentage is a percentage of the amount actually spent under Item B 12.04 (a), which shall include full compensation for the handling costs of the Contractor, plus the profit and all other

incidentals, in connection with paying individual landowners, community co-operatives, communal land trusts etc, for the loss of land, crops, grazing or any other facility.

**B12.05 Protection, removal, relocation and replacement of Utility**

- |   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| (a) Direct payment to individuals or communities        | Prime Cost (PC) |
| (b) Handling costs and profit in respect of B 12.05 (a) | Percentage (%)  |

Expenditure under this item will be made in accordance with the general conditions of contract. The tendered percentage is a percentage of the amount actually spent under Item B 12.05 (a), which shall include full compensation for the handling costs of the Contractor, plus the profit and all other incidentals, in connection with paying individual landowners, community co-operatives, communal land trusts etc, for the loss of land, crops, grazing or any other facility.

**B12.06 Relocation of Graves**

- |   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| (a) Direct payment to individuals or communities        | Prime Cost (PC) |
| (b) Handling costs and profit in respect of B 12.06 (a) | Percentage (%)  |

Expenditure under this item will be made in accordance with the general conditions of contract. The tendered percentage is a percentage of the amount actually spent under Item B 12.06 (a), which shall include full compensation for the handling costs of the Contractor, plus the profit and all other incidentals, in connection with paying individual landowners, community co-operatives, communal land trusts etc, for the loss of land, crops, grazing or any other facility.

**B12.07 Provisional Sum**

- |   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| (a) Project Launch  | Provisional Sum |
| (b) Employment of CLO   | Provisional Sum |
| (c) Provisional Sum for PSC   | Provisional Sum |
| (d) Payment of student Training   | Provisional Sum |
| (e) Accredited and Approved training                                      | Provisional Sum |
| (f) Handling cost and profit in respect of sub-<br>item B12.07(a) and (e) | Percentage (%)  |

The provisional sums shall be paid in accordance with the provisions of the General Conditions of Contract. The tendered percentage is a percentage of the amount actually spent under the prime cost items, which shall include full compensation for the profit in connection with providing the specified service.

**B12.09 Works Reserved for SMME'S Development**

---

B12/1600 Overhaul	Provisional Sum
Contractor's charge to allow for handling costs and profit in respect of subitem B12/1600 (a)(ii) Percentage (%)	
B12/2300 Concrete Kerbing, Concrete Channelling, Chutes and Downpipes, and Concrete Lining for Open Drains	Provisional Sum
Contractor's charge to allow for handling costs and profit in respect of subitem B12/2300 (a)(ii) Percentage (%)	
B12/5100 Pitching, Stonework and Protection against Erosion	Provisional Sum
Contractor's charge to allow for handling costs and profit in respect of subitem B12/5100 (a)(ii) Percentage (%)	
B12/5200 Gabions	Provisional Sum
Contractor's charge to allow for handling costs and profit in respect of subitem B12/5100 (a)(ii) Percentage (%)	
B12/5400 Guardrails	Provisional Sum
Contractor's charge to allow for handling costs and profit in respect of subitem B12/5400 (a)(ii) Percentage (%)	
B12/5500 Fencing	Provisional Sum
Contractor's charge to allow for handling costs and profit in respect of subitem B12/5500 (a)(ii) Percentage (%)	
B12/5600 Roads Signs	Provisional Sum
Contractor's charge to allow for handling costs and profit in respect of subitem B12/5600 (a)(ii) Percentage (%)	
B12/5700 Roads Marking	Provisional Sum
Contractor's charge to allow for handling costs and profit in respect of subitem B12/5700 (a)(ii) Percentage (%)	
B12/7300 Roads Marking	Provisional Sum
Contractor's charge to allow for handling costs and profit in respect of subitem B12/7300 (a)(ii) Percentage (%)	

Expenditure under B12/1600,2300,5100,5200,5400,5500,5600,5700 and shall be made in accordance with COLTO Series 1600,2300,5100,5200,5400,5500,5600,5700 and 7300.

The tendered percentage is the percentage of the actual amount spent under sub items which shall include full compensation for the handling costs of the Contractor, and the profit.

---

**SECTION 1300: CONTRACTOR'S ESTABLISHMENT ON SITE AND GENERAL OBLIGATIONS**

**B1302 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

**(a) Camps, constructional plant and testing facilities Add the**

following:

"The contractor shall, at each area where work is being undertaken, provide on a daily basis at least one (1) portable chemical latrine unit per thirty (30) workers for use by construction workers employed on the project. The latrine units shall be serviced daily and kept in a hygienic and orderly state to the satisfaction of the engineer. No separate payment shall be made for this requirement and shall be deemed to be included in the rates tendered for the contractor's time related obligations."

**B1303 PAYMENT**

ITEM	UNIT
B13.01 The contractor's general obligations	(As specified)

Add the following after the fifth paragraph:

"The combined total tendered for sub-items (a), (b) and (c) shall not exceed 15% of the tender sum, excluding VAT.

Should the contractor be of the opinion that 15% is inadequate to cover his costs in terms of section 1300, he shall indicate separately with his tender where such costs have been allowed for in his tender. If no such indication is given, the contractor shall not at any stage during the contract for any reason whatsoever claim additional compensation under this item."

**SECTION 1400 : HOUSING, OFFICES AND LABORATORIES FOR THE ENGINEER'S SITE**

**PERSONNEL**

**B1402 OFFICES AND LABORATORIES**

**(a) General**

Add the following:

"The facilities to be provided for the engineer in terms of these specifications shall be fenced off by a two-metre-high veranda type security fence with diamond mesh on the vertical portion and barbed wire on the overhang. A security gate shall be provided in the fence which shall be guarded at all times by an acceptable watchman provided by the contractor.

The engineer's establishment may be incorporated within the contractor's establishment provided that the preceding requirements are met to the satisfaction of the engineer.

Separate payment shall be made for the provision and erecting of the security fence and gate as indicated on the drawings, but the cost in respect of the provision of a watchman at all times by the contractor shall be deemed to be included in the contractor's tendered rate for item

B13.01(c)."

**(b) Offices**

Add the following new sub-sub-clause:

"(xviii) The engineer's site supervisory staff shall be provided with cellular telephones by the contractor for site communication purposes. Provision is made in the bill of quantities for separate payment of the supply and operating costs of such cellular phones."

**B1406 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

Add the following sub-item:

<b>ITEM</b>	<b>UNIT</b>
<b>B14.11 Provision of cellular telephone to the Engineer:</b>	

(a) Cost of cellular phone, calls and other charges Provisional Sum (P Sum)

(b) Handling cost and profits in respect of item B14.11(a) Percentage (%)

The unit of measurement for item B14.11 shall include full compensation for the monthly cellular phone cost for the Engineer's site personnel

Measurement and payment in respect of the provisional sum item shall be made in accordance with the provisions of the general conditions of contract.

<b>ITEM</b>	<b>UNIT</b>
<b>B14.12 Provision and erection of security fencing (Including gate)</b>	<b>metre (m)</b>

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of security fence supplied and erected as indicated on the drawings and/or ordered by the engineer. The tendered rate shall include full compensation for procuring and furnishing of all material, including one vehicle gate, labour and equipment required to erect the specified security fence and maintain it for the duration of the contract."

**General: Method of payment**

Add the following:

"The tendered rates under this section of the bill of quantities shall also include full compensation for the dismantling and removal from site of all offices, laboratories and other facilities provided for the engineer's supervisory staff at the completion of the contract."



---

## SECTION 1500: ACCOMMODATION OF TRAFFIC

### B1502 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

#### (e) Access to properties

Add the following:

“Where the alignment of the new road coincides with the alignment of the existing road, a number of accesses to private properties will have to be operational and maintained during the constructional period. No separate payment will be made for providing acceptable and safe access across the new road at all times during construction of the road.”

#### (i) Traffic safety officer

Add the following after subclause (viii):

“(ix) be responsible for contacting all the relevant authorities in the event of an accident on the site of the Works

(vi) arrange for the removal of broken-down vehicles that obstruct the normal traffic flow

The Contractor shall provide the traffic safety officer with all the necessary resources to carry out his duties as specified, inter alia, light delivery van (LDV), personnel, warning signs and revolving amber flashing lights. A warning sign with the words “CONTRACTOR TRAFFIC CONTROL and/or AANNEMER VERKEERSBEHEER” in clearly legible letters shall be mounted on the vehicle at least 1,5m above ground level to be clearly visible. The vehicle shall be equipped with two revolving amber-coloured flashing lights with a minimum intensity of 55W. The flashing lights shall be switched on and the warning sign be displayed at all times when the vehicle is used on the site.

No separate payment will be made for the traffic safety officer, his vehicle, personnel and equipment and the cost thereof shall be included in the Contractor’s cost for his establishment and general obligations (Section 1300)

Add the following new subclauses:

#### (j) Handing over the site

The total extent of the site between the limits of construction as described in this document and indicated on the drawings will be handed over to the contractor at the commencement of the contract period. The engineer however reserves the right to adjust this arrangement should progress or safe passage of traffic warrant such a change.

#### (k) Use of explosives in close proximity of temporary deviations

The contractor shall arrange all necessary traffic control and other requirements to safeguard the traffic on temporary deviations during blasting operations.

#### (l) Land taken up for deviations

Negotiations with landowners to obtain the land taken up by temporary deviations will be undertaken by the employer. A prime cost sum is allowed in the bill of quantities for payment of compensation to affected landowners. All other negotiations regarding temporary access to properties, land-use, fencing requirements etc. shall be dealt with by the contractor in conjunction with the engineer and be confirmed in writing and be kept on record by the contractor.

#### (m) Maximum lengths of construction areas

A temporary deviation, where the proposed road follows the existing route shall be constructed along the length of existing road. Traffic shall generally be accommodated as follows:

On a two-way two-lane gravel deviation (Class 1) constructed partially outside or adjacent to the existing road reserve boundaries of road.

- (i) On one-way single lane gravel deviation (Class 2) constructed inside the existing road reserve boundaries and on either side of road. In this instance special cognisance shall be taken to accommodate traffic to private properties.

A maximum length of one section of approximately 5,0km or two sections of 3,0km each of deviation (Class 1 or 2) shall be operational at a time and no relieve of this limitation shall be considered by the engineer except where the programme necessitates such at the construction of bridges.”

### **B1503 TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL FACILITIES**

Add the following after the first paragraph:

“All temporary road signs, devices, sequences, layouts and spacing shall comply with the requirements of the Road Traffic Act, 1996 (Act 93 of 1996), the National Road Traffic Regulations, 2000, the South African Road Traffic Signs Manual, the requirements of the relevant road authority and the drawings. All temporary traffic control facilities shall comply with the guidelines set in SA Road Traffic Signs Manual, Volume 2, Chapter 13: Roadworks Signing, (SARTSM, June 1999, obtainable from the Government Printer, Pretoria).”

#### **(b) Road signs and barricades**

Add the following:

“All the temporary road signs are to be mounted on posts as specified in section 5600 of the specifications. Provision shall be made for the supply and erection of the signs and the maintenance of the signs during the construction period. Provisions shall also be made for the removal of the temporary road signs on completion of the construction work when such signs are no longer required.

Temporary road signs and channelization devices shall be manufactured in accordance with the latest edition of the South African Road Traffic Signs Manual (June 1999) and placed as shown on the drawings and in Road Signs Note 13. Delineators shall be manufactured from a non-metal material and shall be mounted on a base section also manufactured of non-metal material. Single as well as back-to-back mounted delineators are required.

The obligation to arrange safe passage of traffic shall always be vested with the contractor regardless what is indicated on the drawings of the engineer.”

#### **(c) Channelization devices and barricades**

Add the following:

“Drums shall not be used as channelization devices.

TW 401 and TW 402 delineators shall comply with the following requirements:

- a) It shall be manufactured from a flexible material and shall comply with SABS 1555. The blade portion of the delineator shall be positively affixed to a base unit which in turn shall be stable on its own or be stabilized by means of sandbags when used on the road.
- ii) The blade shall be retro-reflectorised, with class 1 yellow sheeting on the side facing oncoming traffic.
- iii) It shall nominally be 1000mm high x 250mm wide and the bottom edge of the delineator shall not be more than 200mm above the road surface.
- iv) It shall be subject to the approval of the Engineer.

The maximum spacing between centres of delineators shall be as shown on the drawings or as directed by the Engineer.

### Warning devices

Add the following:

“It is a requirement of this contract that all construction vehicles and plant used on the works will be equipped with rotating amber flashing lights and warning boards as specified in the standard specifications. Construction vehicles travelling outside the limits of construction areas shall however, not operate the warning lights.

The warning lights shall have a base diameter of at least 170mm and the amber bulb cover a height of a least 150mm high. It shall be a requirement that the contractor also provides the engineer’s site personnel with warning lights for their vehicles (a maximum of two lights are required) without any payment applicable.

### **B1514 TEMPORARY FENCING AND GATES**

Replace the contents of this clause with the following:

“Where temporary fencing is ordered by the engineer, it shall be paid for under item 55.06 of the standard specifications. The temporary fencing shall be new fencing material, which shall subsequently be dismantled and removed and erected at an alternative position as directed by the engineer. When ordered by the engineer, temporary fences and gates shall be moved to new locations or either left in place or when no longer required be dismantled and removed from site if so directed. Allowance is made in the bill of quantities for moving existing fences and gates.

Add the following clause:

### **B1517 RETRO-REFLECTIVE MATERIAL**

“Retro-reflective material for temporary signs shall comply with the requirements of SABS 15191 for weathered material. Tests shall be carried out with a field retro-reflectometer and the testing procedure and classification are described in Clause B 8118. The value of the coefficient of Retro-Reflective shall be at least 60% of the values indicated in Table B8118/1.

### **B1518 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

Renumber item 15.01 as B15.01 and add the following:

“The tendered rate shall also include for all measures necessary to safeguard traffic on temporary deviations during blasting operations as well as all temporary traffic-control facilities for temporary deviations.

Delete all references to half width construction under payment item 15.01. Half width construction will be measured under payment item 15.10.

Renumber item 15.03 as B15.03 and add the following

“This sections provides only for additional traffic-control facilities as and when required on instruction by the Engineer and does not provide for facilities already included under payment item B15.01”

Add the following sub-item:

<b>“ITEM</b>	<b>UNIT</b>
<b>B15.03 Temporary traffic control facilities</b>	
(n) Provision of high visibility safety jackets and safety hats	number (No)

The unit of measurement shall be the number of safety jackets supplied to the supervisory staff. The tendered rate shall include full compensation for providing and maintaining hats and the jackets equipped with high visibility retro-reflective and/or fluorescent panels in red, yellow and white for the duration of the contract”.

---

**SECTION 1700: CLEARING AND GRUBBING B1702**

**DESCRIPTION OF WORK**

**a) Clearing**

Add the following:

“Clearing shall include the removal of material to a thickness of up to 150mm in -situ material as ordered by the engineer. No payment shall be made for temporary stockpiling of topsoil material in the case where this material is applied as topsoil after completion of road side slopes. Should the required depth exceed 150mm, the total volume of material removed shall either be classified as “temporary stockpiling of topsoil “or unsuitable roadbed material” or “cut to spoil whichever is applicable as allowed for in the standard specifications. In these cases, no payment shall be made for clearing and grubbing.

Clearing as described shall in all cases be undertaken in such a manner that the topsoil is preserved and not contaminated with other debris or rubbish. Cross-sections for the determination of earthworks quantities shall be taken after clearing (topsoil or unsuitable roadbed material) and roadbed preparation if applicable.

Payment for gabion boxes and mattresses which have to be removed and the material sorted and stacked shall be made under section 5200”

**B1703 EXECUTION OF WORK**

**(a) Areas to be cleared and grubbed**

Add the following:

“Apart from normal clearing and grubbing, the fill embankments of the existing roads are also to be cleared and grubbed over the areas where the new horizontal alignment coincides with the alignment of the existing road, or where repairs are required to the fill embankments of the approaches of bridges. Provision is made for separate payment for clearing and grubbing of the existing fill embankments where conventional machinery might be suitable to undertake the work due to the steep side slopes of the embankments. An additional pay-item is allowed for in the bill of quantities for this type of clearing and grubbing which may have to be undertaken by hand or similar manner.”

**B1704 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

Change item 17.01 to read as follows:

<b>ITEM</b>	<b>UNIT</b>
<b>B17.01 Clearing and grubbing of:</b>	
Clearing and grubbing	hectare (ha)

Measurement and payment for item B17.01 shall be as specified for item 17.01 of the standard specifications.

**SECTION 1800: DAYWORK SCHEDULE**

Note: This is a new section added to the Standard Specifications.

Add the following:

**B1801 SCOPE**

This section covers the listing of daywork items for use in determining payment for work which cannot be quantified in specific pay item “units” in the bill of quantities or work ordered by the engineer during the construction period which was not foreseen at tender stage for which no applicable rate exists in the schedule or for work of a special or different character warranting special payment as decided by the engineer.

**B1802 ORDERING OF DAYWORK**

No daywork shall be undertaken unless specific written authorisation is obtained from the engineer.

**B1803 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

The engineer may order the following daywork items:

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT
B18.01	(a) Normal hours of duty of:	
	(i) Unskilled	Hour (h)
	(ii) Semi-skilled	Hour (h)
B18.02	(iii) Skilled	Hour (h)
	(iv) Foreman	Hour (h)
	Hire of construction equipment	
	(a) Excavator 22 30 ton	Hour (h)
	(b) TL Backactor	Hour (h)
	(c) Front end loader	Hour (h)
	(d) Platform truck	Hour (h)
	(e) Tip truck	Hour (h)
	(f) Grader (CAT 140G or similar)	Hour (h)
	(g) Walk behind roller (Bomag BW90 or similar)	Hour (h)
	(h) Mechanical Broom	Hour (h)
	(i) D6 Dozer	Hour (h)
	(j) Compressor	Hour (h)
	(k) Submersible dewatering pump	Hour (h)

The unit of measurement shall be the actual number of hours worked by labourers or foremen or an item of plant.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all cost items including overheads, head office expenses and profits as described in sub-clause 6.5 of the general conditions of contract and shall be subject to contract price adjustment as provided for in the contract.

The mark-ups on daywork items in accordance with the Appendix to the Tender shall not be applicable on daywork items listed in the bill of quantities in terms of the above specifications. In

**UPGRADING OF SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS**

---

the event of new daywork rates being requested for items not appearing in the bill of quantities, then the provisions of the general conditions of contract and the Appendix to the Tender shall apply.

Prior to the commencement of any work by the labourers described under item B18.01, the contractor must obtain written consent from the engineer regarding the classification and composition of all labourers in terms of “unskilled” and “skilled” labourers required for the work as ordered by the engineer.”

---

**SECTION 2100: DRAINS B2103**

**BANKS AND DYKES**

Add the following:

“Mitre banks at culvert inlets should be considered at such a skew angle that it guides the water into the inlet with a minimum loss of velocity (energy).”

**B2104 SUBSOIL DRAINAGE**

**(a) Materials**

**(i) Pipes**

Delete the last sentence of the fifth paragraph and substitute it with the following:

“Perforation for 100mm pipes shall be spaced in two rows, one on each side of the vertical centre line of the pipe, and at one third of the circumference. The perforation for the 150mm pipes shall be spaced in four rows, two as described for 100mm pipes, and the other two rows at two thirds of the circumference.”

**(ii) Synthetic-fibre filter fabric** Add the following:

“All filter fabric shall be a non-woven needle punched type material and must be approved by the engineer. Filter fabrics shall have a minimum co-efficient of permeability of  $3 \times 10^{-3}$  m per second.”

**B2107 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

Add the following new items:

<b>“ITEM</b>	<b>UNIT</b>
--------------	-------------

<b>B21.20 Galvanised wire mesh 250 x 250mm, at the outlets of subsoil drainage systems. Mesh 10mm x 2,5mm wire diameter</b>	<b>Number (No)</b>
---	--------------------

The unit of measurement shall be the number of 250mm x 200mm pieces of wire mesh, with a 10mm x 10mm mesh and 2,5mm wire diameter built into the subsurface drain outlet structure as shown on the drawings.

The tendered rate shall include for procuring, furnishing and installing the material, cutting, waste and keeping the mesh in the pipe opening clean during installation.

<b>ITEM</b>	<b>UNIT</b>
-------------	-------------

<b>B21.21 Subsoil drainage markers</b>	<b>Number (No)</b>
--	--------------------

Measurement and payment shall be as specified for item 22.24 in the standard specifications.”

---

## **SECTION 2200: PREFABRICATED CULVERTS**

### **B2201 SCOPE**

Add the following:

“All rectangular culverts with spans from 0,9m up to and including 2,4m shall be constructed with precast units.

The attention of the contractor is drawn to the fact that information given on the plans, longitudinal sections or drainage schedules may have to be altered to suit actual site conditions and, therefore, the contractor shall only construct these culverts after the engineer has verified the information on the drawings from detail surveys taken on site by the contractor as directed by the engineer.

Precast units shall be ordered by the contractor from actual measurements of length acquired on the site and not from lengths stated in the drainage schedule or from the bill of quantities.

No precast units shall be ordered until the engineer has satisfied himself that the proposed units have been manufactured to the required tolerances and loading standards. The engineer must be given the opportunity to load test units if he considers this necessary”.

### **B2203 MATERIALS**

#### **(f) Skewed Ends**

Delete the second and third paragraphs and substitute with the following:

“Precast portal and rectangular culverts placed on a skew shall be supplied with cast in situ skewed ends as shown on the drawings. In situ skew ends are to be constructed simultaneously with the wingwalls and headwalls”.

### **B2204 CONSTRUCTION METHODS**

Add the following:

“In all cases where soft founding materials is classified as suitable for culvert bedding construction, the in-situ material shall be ripped, moistened and compacted to 90% or 93% modified AASHTO density. The depth of preparation and compaction of founding material shall be as indicated on the drawings or as specified by the engineer. Allowance for measurement and payment for this work is made in the bill of quantities under this section.”

#### **(c) Excavation by hand**

Where circumstances prevent the use of mechanical excavators and material can be removed only by hand tools, the engineer shall authorise the supplementary payment to the contractor for such work at the tendered rates for excavation by hand should he be satisfied that the contractor had been unable to prevent the necessity for excavation by hand by proper planning and precautionary measures. The supplementary rate for excavation by hand shall not apply to minor finishing or clearing jobs in excavations which are otherwise being done by mass excavation plant.

Payment for hand excavation shall be an "extra over" payment to normal excavation as allowed for in item 22.01.”

### **B2205 EXCAVATION FOR CONSTRUCTION BY TRENCH METHOD**

Add the following subclauses:

#### **“(c) Excavation by hand**

Where circumstances prevent the use of mechanical excavators and material can be removed only by hand tools, the engineer shall authorise the supplementary payment to the contractor for such work at the tendered rates for excavation by hand should he be satisfied that the contractor had been unable to prevent the necessity for excavation by hand by proper planning and precautionary



measures. The supplementary rate for excavation by hand shall not apply to minor finishing or clearing jobs in excavations which are otherwise being done by mass excavation plant.

Payment for hand excavation shall be an "extra over" payment to normal excavation as allowed for in item 22.01.

**(d) Drainage of excavations**

The contractor shall apply suitable, effective drainage and dewatering methods for preventing the ingress of water into the excavation and to keep them dry.

Drainage measures, with the exception of pumping, shall be maintained until the backfilling has been completed. Between various construction stages, pumping may be interrupted in consultation with the engineer.

Any draining or pumping of water shall be done in a manner as will preclude the concrete or materials or any part thereof from being carried away.

Allowance for measurement and payment for dewatering and keeping dry of culvert excavations is made in the schedule in this section".

**B2210 LAYING AND BEDDING OF PREFABRICATED CULVERTS**

**B2210(b)(i) Cast in situ invert slabs**

Replace with the following:

"In accordance with the drawings, transverse construction joints are required in cast in situ concrete invert slabs for portal culverts. In addition, longitudinal construction joints as shown on the drawings between the invert slabs of each of the barrels of multiple culverts are required. Allowance for measurement and payment for a Class F1 surface finish and soft board in these joints is made in the bill of quantities. No payment shall be made for formwork on the outside edges of invert slabs (closest to excavated face).

All culverts (precast as well as in situ) shall be constructed with an in situ reinforced concrete floor laid on a 75mm concrete screed".

Delete subclause B.2210(b)(ii) : "Prefabricated floor slabs."

**B2211 BACKFILLING OF PREFABRICATED CULVERTS**

Change the last sentence in the fourth paragraph to read "90% or 93% as shown on the drawings or as directed by the engineer."

**B2212 INLET AND OUTLET STRUCTURES, CATCHPITS AND MANHOLES**

**(b) Concrete work**

Add the following:

"The type of surface finish for in situ concrete in the culverts shall be as indicated on the drawings. Generally, all exposed faces shall be of Class F2 formwork and faces covered by backfill shall be Class F1. The top of parapet walls shall be finished to a Class U@ surface finishes."

**(h) Prefabricated inlet and outlet structures**

Add the following:

---

"The use of precast concrete inlets and outlets as described in clause 2212(h), shall not be allowed under any circumstances. Cast in situ concrete wingwall type inlets and outlets shall be constructed as indicated on the drawings and shall be in accordance with section 6000 of the Standard Specifications. Allowance for measurement and payment for wingwall type inlets and outlets is made in the schedule in this section."

## **B2218 MEASUREMENTS AND PAYMENT**

Add the following to pay item 22.05:

"In addition to the requirements for measuring concrete backfill to rectangular culverts as specified for item 22.08, the following shall apply:

Concrete backfill shall be measured to the actual dimensions of the precast units, i.e., actual volumes between ribs and haunches shall be taken into account. For the purpose of calculating concrete backfill quantities, the horizontal dimensions of the concrete backfill on the outside of the culvert(s) (closest to excavated face), shall be taken as 100mm maximum irrespective of what type or make of precast portal is used or the actual width of the excavation.

The width of the concrete backfill between portals in the case of multiple culverts, shall be taken as 80mm for precast units with a leg height of 1500mm and 100mm for precast units with a leg height exceeding 1500mm. The vertical dimensions, in both cases, shall be equal to the height of the portal".

---

**SECTION 2300: CONCRETE KERBING, CONCRETE CHANNELLING, CHUTES AND DOWNPIPES AND CONCRETE LININGS FOR OPEN DRAINS**

**B2301 SCOPE**

Add the following:

“The position and length of the following types of concrete kerbs and channels are indicated on the geometric layout plans, typical drawings and on the drainage plans.

- Type A : In situ concrete channel, 0,8m wide on fills
- Type B : Precast concrete kerbing, semi-mountable (SABS 927-1969)
- Type C : In situ concrete kerbing at intersections
- Edge beam : In situ concrete kerbing at farm access and bus stops
- Type E, F1 & F2 : In situ concrete “V”\_shaped channels in side drains and open drains.”

**B2302 MATERIAL**

Add the following new sub-clauses:

- (e) Metal pipes

“Metal pipes down side slopes shall comply with the requirements of clause 2203 of the standard”

**B2304 CONSTRUCTION (d)**

Slip form kerbing

Add the following:

“Slip\_form kerbing shall under no circumstances be allowed.”

- (e) Cast in situ kerbs and channels

Add the following:

“Forming and templates used to form joints between alternate sections shall be of steel plate of which the thickness shall not be less than 5mm.”

Add the following new sub-clauses:

- (i) Construction sequence

Replace paragraphs (i), (ii) and (iii) with the following:

“In all cases where kerbing and/or channelling adjoin the bituminous surface of the road, the kerbing and/or channelling may only be constructed after the bituminous surface has been completed.

Before commencing with the kerbing and/or channelling, the surfacing and the base, shall be accurately cut to line with a mechanical saw to a minimum depth of 75mm. After excavation the concrete shall then be cast against the cut surface without formwork. All material outside the cut line must be carefully removed to the required thickness of concrete without damaging the edge before commencing with the casting of the concrete. No payment shall be made for repair work as instructed by the engineer to damage caused by the cutting/excavating process of surfacing and base layers. Any concrete spilt onto the surfacing shall immediately be removed and cleaned. Where so required by the engineer, the contractor shall, without any additional compensation, paint emulsion over the stained surface.

Add the following sub-clause:

(k) Formwork and finish

“Formwork and finish of concrete kerbs shall comply with the requirements of section 6200. All visible edges on the sides or at joints of cast in situ concrete kerbs or channels shall be rounded with a rounding tool.”

---

**SECTION 3100: BORROW MATERIALS**

**B3102 NEGOTIATIONS WITH OWNERS AND AUTHORITIES**

Add the following to sub-clause 3102(a):

“Arrangements regarding to access to borrow pits and the alignment of haul roads shall be made between the contractor and the owners of the land on which borrow pits are situation. The engineer’s representative on site shall be present at all such negotiations, which shall be confirmed in writing by the contractor. All costs involved with such negotiations as well as the requirements contained in clause 3102 and clause 1225 of the specifications shall be borne entirely by the contractor.”

**B3103 OBTAINING BORROW MATERIALS**

**(a) General**

Add the following:

“The expropriation and compensation for land from which borrow materials is obtained shall be negotiated and paid for by the employer”

**(b) Use of borrow materials**

Add the following to the second paragraph of this sub-clause:

“Compensation to owners and arrangements with owners for taking material from alternative borrow pits proposed by the contractor shall be the contractor’s responsibility and entirely at his own expenses.”

**B3104 OPENING AND WORKING BORROW PITS AND HAUL ROADS**

**(c) Excess overburden**

Add the following:

“All excess overburden removed at borrow pits shall be replaced over the entire area of the borrow pit after initial shaping has been undertaken in an even layer. Payment for this requirement shall be deemed to be included in pay item 31.01

**(f) Protecting borrow pits**

Add the following:

"It is a requirement of the contract that each borrow pit or pits shall be provided with fencing around the perimeters, including a access gate, of the borrow areas, including the supply of danger warning signage fixed to the fencing, visible at all sides approaching the borrow pit area. The fencing shall be erected prior to entering the land for borrowing purposes and shall on final finishing of the borrow areas as specified by the employer, be dismantled and removed or left in-place as instructed by the employer. Payment for fencing around borrow pits shall be made in accordance with the stipulations of section 5500 in these specifications."

In addition to fencing, Security Guards shall be supply on a 24 hour, 7 days a week basis, with full time communication to the Site Manager or site camp for the duration of the contract and activities at the borrow pits.”

Add the following new sub-clause:

**“(h) Haul roads**

Haul roads to designated borrow pits along the road shall be constructed along alignments as instructed by the engineer and shall be maintained at the contractor’s own cost to the satisfaction of the engineer."

**B3105 FINISHING-OFF BORROW AREAS AND HAUL ROADS**

Add the following to this clause:

"Should the employer, engineer or any other authority approved by the engineer, require a higher standard of shaping and finishing off of borrow pits than specified in the standard specifications, measurement and payment for such extra work shall be made using daywork items as scheduled under this section."

**B3108 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

Change item 31.01 to read as follows:

ITEM		UNIT
B31.01	Excess over-burden:	
	(a) Depth up to and including 0,5m	cubic meter (m <sup>3</sup> )
	(b) Depth exceeding 0,5m and up to 1,0m	cubic meter (m <sup>3</sup> )

Measurement and payment shall be as specified for item 31.01 of the standard specifications with the abovementioned depth ranges applicable."

Add the following new item:

---

**SECTION 3300: MASS EARTHWORKS**

**B3305 TREATING THE ROADBED**

**(a) Removing unsuitable material**

Add the following to the third paragraph:

"For the purpose of this contract, excavation and removal of in-situ clayey material over areas where the road is in a fill condition, shall be classified as removal of unsuitable material, irrespective of the stability or moisture condition of the in-situ material".

**(c) Preparing and compacting the roadbed**

Delete the last sentence of the first paragraph "if necessary, roadbed.....depth of compaction" and replace as follows: "Where demarcated by the engineer, prior to the roadbed being scarified, the excess in-situ material forming part of the present roadway, and within the limits of the roadbed, and in close proximity of the layer works, but falling within the limits of the layer-works, shall be bladed to controlled level in order to achieve the required level and necessary depth of compaction.

**B3307 FILLS**

**(c) Constructing a pioneer layer**

Add the following to the first paragraph:

"For the purpose of this contract, pioneer layers shall be completed by means of eight-pass roller compaction using vibratory rollers as specified in sub-clause 3304(b) of the standard specification"

**(d) Benching**

Add the following:

"Benching of fill and pavement layer material is required to be undertaken into the existing fill embankments and pavement layers. No additional payment shall be made over and above the normal pay items applicable to earthworks and pavement layers where benching is required for widening of the existing road formation. Benching shall be undertaken as shown on the drawings.

It is a requirement that benching shall always be started at the bottom of the existing fill progressing to the top of the formation. The dimensions and details of benching are shown on the drawings."

**B3308 FINISHING THE SLOPES**

**(d) General**

Add the following:

"Where existing cut and fill slopes are excessively eroded or where slippages occurred in slopes, the slopes are to be reinstated by means of backfilling with suitable gravel material. All loose material and vegetation shall first be removed from the eroded cut and fill slopes before backfilling may commence from the bottom of the cut or fill. The backfill material shall be benched into the existing slopes and compacted to 90% of modified AASHTO density, using suitable small compaction equipment e.g. Bomag walk-behind rollers or hand-held compaction tools. Benching shall be executed to the dimensions shown on the drawings. Upon completion of the backfilling operation the cut and fill slopes shall be neatly finished as specified."

---

**SECTION 3400: PAVEMENT LAYERS OF GRAVEL MATERIAL**

**B3402 MATERIALS**

**(a) General**

Add the following:

"Material requirements for gravel pavement layers are in accordance with TRH4 and shall be indicated on the drawings."

**B3405 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES**

**(e) Cross-section**

Delete the second paragraph and replace with the following:

"The normal crossfall of the road wearing course where the road is in a straight horizontal alignment, is specified as 3% as shown on the drawings.

At any cross-section the measured crossfall between any two points shall at least be 2,8% and not more than 3,5%. At any cross-section the actual level at any point shall not be higher than 10mm above the computed level from the cross-section as specified and the actual level, if lower than the computed level, shall not be lower by more than that derived from the specifications for longitudinal grade and crossfall deviations."

**(f) Surface regularity**

Add the following:

"Where transverse construction joints in base layers are made between newly and previously constructed sections, the contractor shall exercise level control at such joints by installing level poles at 5m intervals on either side of the joint of the layer covering at least a 30m length into the newly constructed section.

**B3406 QUALITY OF MATERIALS AND WORKMANSHIP**

Add the following:

"Test results and measurements shall be assessed by the engineer according to the provisions of Section 8300 of the standard specifications".



---

**SECTION 3500: STABILISATION**

**B3503 CHEMICAL STABILISATION**

**(a) Preparing the layer**

Add the following:

Breaking-down and removal of oversize material and addition of material to make to required thickness shall be completed before stabilising agent shall be added.”

**(h) Curing the stabilised work**

Add the following:

“It is the intention of this contract that curing of chemically stabilised layers shall be undertaken in accordance to protection method (ii) as specified. Any other method of curing shall only be allowed in special circumstances as decided upon by the engineer, but no additional payment whatsoever over and above that allowed for in item 35.05 will be made.”

**(i) Construction limitations**

In table 3503/1, replace "8 hours" with "6 hours.”

**B3506 TOLERANCES**

**(b) Uniformity of mix (chemical stabilisation)**

Add the following:

“All pavement layers, especially layers which are to be chemically stabilised, shall, apart from the application of other mixing equipment, include at least two motor grader blade mixing operations to the full depth of the layer.

The in-place mixing of chemical stabilising agents with gravel materials shall be executed in such a manner that the coefficient of variation in the uniformity of the mix shall not exceed 30% when the stabilised layer is subjected to the chemical titration test, TMH1 method A15d. For plant-mixed stabilised materials the coefficient of variation shall not exceed 20%.

The coefficient of variation,  $C_v$ , is calculated by the formula:

$$C_v = \frac{S_n}{X_n} \times 100 \text{ where,}$$

$S_n$  = standard deviation of n determinations of stabilising agent content

$X_n$  = mean percentage of n determinations of stabilising agent content with n = 4 minimum.”

**B3509 QUALITY OF MATERIALS AND WORKMANSHIP**

Add the following:

“The preparation of chemically stabilised material for the determination of the modified AASHTO density of the material shall be executed in accordance with TMH1 test method A16T and compaction thereof in accordance with TMH1 test method A7.”

---

**SECTION 3600: CRUSHED-STONE BASE**

**B3601 SCOPE**

Add the following paragraph at the end of this clause:

"The base shall be obtained from commercial quarry.

**B3602 MATERIALS**

Add the following paragraph at the end of this sub-clause:

"A G2 base compacted to a specified density of 88% of Bulk Relative Density shall be used, as ordered by the Engineer."

Add the following new sub-clauses of this clause:

"(e) Material from commercial sources

The following additional requirements shall apply:

- (i) The use of aggregate derived from arenaceous or argillaceous rock groups will not be permitted.
- (ii) The aggregate shall be subjected to the tests and their frequencies specified in Table 3602/5. The material may only be placed on the road when all of the specified tests have been completed and have passed.

Test Description	Frequency (test / m <sup>3</sup> of compacted base)
Aggregate Crushing Values (10% Fact)	5 000
+ Ethylene glycol durability testing *	5 000
x Atterberg Limits	
PI 0,425	1 000
PI 0,075	2 000
+ Soluble salts	10 000
Grading	10 000
+ Ball mill	5 000

\* Test method B8117 durability index shall not exceed 1 (one).

x Pi -0,424 = Plasticity Index determination on - 0,425 mm material.

Pi -0,075 = Plasticity Index determination on - 0,075 mm material.

+ The cost of these tests is for the Contractor's account.

Add the following sub-clause:

“(e) Durability

The durability property of aggregates derived from the basic crystalline group shall be assessed by means of the Ethylene Glycol Durability Index. When tested in accordance with the method prescribed in B 8105 (g) the Durability Index shall not exceed four. In addition, the 10% FACT value obtained after soaking in ethylene glycol for four days shall not be less than 70% of that obtained on the unsoaked sample. Where any values are obtained that fall outside the above requirements, a detailed assessment of the quarry shall be undertaken together with a specialist mineralogical evaluation of both the coarse as well as fine fractions in order to assess the long-term durability properties of the material.

For Basic crystalline rocks, Arenaceous rocks, Argillaceous rocks and Diamictites the Durability Mill Index (DMI) shall be less than 125. For all other rock types, the Durability Mill Index (DMI) shall not be more than 420, subject to the % passing the 0,425mm sieve not increasing by more than 8 percent points during the Durability Mill test”

Table 3602/1

In table 3602/1 delete 85% of bulk relative density and replace with:

"88% of Apparent Density"

Add

**B3602 MATERIALS**

“Crushed stone drained blanket to Table B3602/4. The crushed stone drainage blanket shall be coarse graded (37,5mm nominal size) and shall conform to the following requirements as detailed in Table B3602/4 below.

**Table B3602/4**

Gradation envelope for drainage material	
SIEVE SIZE mm	GRADATION ENVELOPE Percentage passing by mass
53	100
37.5	75 - 100
19.0	48 84
13.2	40 62
9.5	34 54
4.75	24 35
2.0	18 21
0.425	6 - 10
0.075	0 - 5

---

## **B3604 CONSTRUCTION**

(a) **Spreading and mixing**

Add the following to this Sub-clause:

"Level control for the construction of the base layer shall be installed at 10 m intervals. Level control during construction may be done at every second control position (20 m intervals) as long as the starting position is alternated to ensure all control positions are utilized during the construction of the layer.

No additional payment shall be made for the installation or use of level control at 10 m intervals."

(b) **Compaction**

Add the following at the end of the first paragraph of this Sub-clause:

"The specified density shall also be obtained in the upper 50mm of the layer.

(c) **Surface preparation of the base**

Sub-clause (i) shall be applicable to surface preparation of the base.

(h) **Joints between existing layers and new or reconstructed layers**

Add the following at the end of the first paragraph of this Sub-clause:

"During the working of the first half-width, the surface of the base layer shall be constructed a minimum of 200 mm past the centre longitudinal joint position in order to obtain proper compaction on the joint position.

During the working of the second half-width, the centre longitudinal joint between any reworked or new layer shall be cut back at least 100 mm into the first half-width to remove any loose or disturbed material and to ensure a sound longitudinal joint between the two half-width sections.

The Contractor shall ensure that any gravel, crushed stone or fines carried onto the surfaced half width accommodating traffic during the working of the pavement layer is removed immediately by hand brooming. In addition, all soil fines arising from the slushing of the base and carried on to the surfacing of the first half width shall be removed before the second half width is primed."

## **B3605 PROTECTION AND MAINTENANCE**

Add the following to the end of the second sentence of this Clause:

"as determined according to TMH 1 method A7."

---

**B3607 QUALITY OF MATERIALS AND WORKMANSHIP**

Replace the last paragraph of this Clause with the following:

"Test results and measurements shall be assessed in accordance with the provisions of Section 8200. (Ls = 88,0 or 89 % as ordered).".

**B3608 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

"Item

Unit

B36.01 Crushed Stone Base

Add the following item

(a) Crushed stone drainage blanket ..... cubic metre (m<sup>3</sup>)"

---

**SECTION 4100: PRIME COAT**

**B4102 MATERIAL**

(a) **Priming material**

*Add the following:*

"The priming material may not be a tar-based product."

(b) **Aggregate for blinding**

*Add the following sentence to this Subclause:*

"Blinding of the primed surface with aggregate shall only be permitted to facilitate vehicular access to adjoining properties."

**B4104 WEATHER AND OTHER LIMITATIONS**

*Delete paragraph (g) and replace with the following:*

"When the moisture content of the upper 50mm of the layer is higher than 50% of the optimum moisture content determined according to TMH 1, Method A7."

**B4106 APPLICATION OF THE PRIME COAT**

*Add the following to Sub-clause (c) of this Clause:*

"The nominal rate of application of the prime coat shall be 0,7 /m<sup>2</sup>. Unless directed otherwise by the Engineer or indicated on the drawings, the width of the primed surface shall be 600 mm wider than the edges of the surfacing on each side."

*Add the following sub-clause:*

"(j) Application in areas treated by reworking and construction of a new base shall be primed using a mechanical distributor complying with Subclause 4103(a). The edges of the previously constructed or existing surfacing shall be adequately protected by approved means to ensure that an overlap of prime not exceeding 50 mm is sprayed onto the previously constructed or existing surfacing."

**B4108 TOLERANCES**

*Delete the first paragraph and replace with the following:*

"The actual spray rates measured at spraying temperature shall not deviate by more than 8,0% from that ordered by the Engineer. The Engineer may, at his discretion, conditionally accept application rates falling outside this tolerance at reduced payment in accordance with Table B4108/1.

Any deviation outside these limits shall not be paid for; however, the Engineer shall have the right to instruct the Contractor to make up any deficiency, or blind excessive prime without additional payment. Where so instructed, the material for blinding shall consist of approved, screened 4,75 mm nominal single size aggregate.

---

The use of crusher dust for blinding shall not be permitted. If under-spraying occurs, and it is accepted by the Engineer, only the actual quantities applied shall be paid for.”.

**B4109 TESTING**

Add the following to this Clause:

“No payment shall be made if this condition is not adhered to. The Contractor shall, at his cost, provide to the Engineer representative samples of every batch of prime delivered onto site.”.

**B4110 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

"Item

Unit

B41.01

Add the following item

(f) Bitumen emulsion primer (Eco-primes).....litre (l)"

---

**SECTION 4200: ASPHALT BASE AND SURFACING**

**B4202 MATERIALS**

(a) Bituminous binders

(i) Conventional binders

*Add the following:*

“The binders to be used shall be as follows:

- (a) Continuously graded surfacing course: A-E2 modified binder
- (b) Continuously graded base: A-P1 modified binder”.

(ii) Non-homogeneous (heterogeneous) modified binders”

Replace the last sentence with the following:

“The bitumen-rubber binder shall be manufactured according to the guidelines contained in “Technical Guidelines: The use of Modified Bituminous Binders in Road Construction (TG 1-2007) Asphalt Academy”.

(3) Extender oil

Delete “Table 4202/2” in the first sentence and replace with “Table B4202/2”

TABLE B4202/2: REQUIREMENTS FOR EXTENDER OIL

Property	Limits
Flash Point	180°C (min)
Percentage by mass of saturated hydrocarbons	25% (max)
Percentage by mass of aromatic unsaturated hydrocarbons	55% (min)

(iii) Homogeneous modified binders

*Replace the last sentence with:*

“The modified binder to be used on this project shall be A-E1/A-P1

The homogeneous modified binder shall be manufactured according to the guidelines contained in latest review (2<sup>nd</sup> edition) of “Technical Guidelines: The use of Modified Bituminous Binders in Road Construction (TG 1- November 2007): Asphalt Academy”. The base bitumen shall conform to SABS 307, or a blend of SABS 307 grade. The type as well as percentage of modifier is not prescribed, however the contractor shall indicate in the Pricing Schedule what polymer he shall be using. The properties of the homogeneous modified binder shall comply with the relevant requirements for binder class A-E1/ A-P1 as listed in table B4202/12.



**TABLE B4202/12: PROPERTIES OF POLYMER-MODIFIED BINDER FOR HOT-MIX ASPHALT**

Property	Unit	Min/Max	Test Method	Binder Class		
				A-E1	A-E2	A-P1
Softening Point	°C	Min	MB-17	55-65	65-85	63-73
Dynamic Viscosity@165°C	Pa.s	Max	MB-18	0.6	0.6	0.75
Dynamic Viscosity @ 165°C	Pa.s	-	MB-18	≤ 0.6	≤ 0.6	≤ 0.55
Ductility @ 15°C	cm	Min	MB-19	75	50	30
Force Ductility @ 5°C	N		EN 13703	Report <sup>3</sup>	Report <sup>3</sup>	Report <sup>3</sup>
Elastic Recovery @ 15°C	%	Min	MB-4	>50	>60	>30
Torsional Recovery @ 25°C	%	-	MB-5	Report	Report	Report
Storage Stab @ 160°C)	°C	Max	MB-6	≤5	≤5	≤5
Flash Point	°C	Min	ASTM: D93	>230	>230	>230
Complex shear modulus: $G^* \sin \delta$ @10 rad/s	°C	-	AASHTO:TP5	Report	Report	Report
Creep Stiffness	MPa	-	AASHTO:TP1	Report	Report	Report
Properties after ageing (RTFOT)			MB-3			
Diff in Softening Point	°C	-	MB-17	-2 to +8	-2 to +8	-2 to +8
Elastic Recovery @ 15°C	%	Min	MB-4	>40	>50	Report <sup>2</sup>
Mass change	%	Max	MB-3	1.0	1.0	1.0
Torsional Recovery @ 25°C	%	-	MB-5	Report	Report	Report
Dynamic Viscosity @ 165°C	Pa.s		MB-18	Report <sup>2</sup>	Report <sup>2</sup>	Report <sup>2</sup>

Notes:

1. The prescribed test method is based on not using stirrers although it has been reported that the use of stirrers has shown no difference in test results. For referencing purposes no stirrers should be used.
2. No limits are given and the values should be recorded for reporting purposes only as they may be used in future specifications.
3. No values given but the test can be used to rank various binders according to their low temperature cohesion properties

**(b) Aggregates**

Add the following paragraph to the introductory description:

“Asphalt mixes shall be manufactures using different individual single size coarse aggregates fractions and crushed fine aggregates blended to conform to the specified grading requirements. The use of natural sands shall only be permitted if approved by the engineer and shall be limited to a maximum of 5% for continuously graded mixes. All aggregate in excess of 4,75mm shall consist of individual nominal single sized aggregate. For stone mastic asphalt mixes all aggregate fractions in excess of 2,36 shall consist of individual single size fractions. Contractors shall note that commercial suppliers may not be able to supply all the required single size aggregates, in which instance arrangements will have to be made for additional on-site screening. No additional payment shall be made for screening aggregate. The use of run of crusher type materials shall not be permitted.”

(v) Absorption

Add the following sentence:

“In addition, the total binder absorption of the combined coarse and fine aggregate blend shall not exceed 0.5%”

(viii) Grading

Delete the second paragraph commencing with “The target grading.....” And add the following paragraphs:

“The grading limits for the combined aggregate grading for the asphalt base shall be as specified in table 4202/6: Continuously graded 26,5m maximum.

The grading limits for the combined aggregate grading for the asphalt surfacing shall be as specified in table 4202/7: Continuously graded medium grade.

(c) Fillers

Delete the second last sentence of the first paragraph and replace with:

“With the exception of stone mastic asphalt, in no instance shall more than 2% by mass of active filler be used in the mixes.”

*Add the following after the last paragraph:*

“For tender purposes the active filler shall be hydrated lime”.

**(h) General**

*Add the following after the second paragraph:*

“Sufficient aggregate for a minimum of 3 days production shall be separately stockpiled and tested for conformance and uniformity prior to use. The test results shall be presented to the engineer

**B4203 COMPOSITION OF ASPHALT BASE AND SURFACING MIXTURES**

*In the first paragraph, third last line, after “or active filler content” add:*

“or aggregate content”

*Replace the fifth paragraph with the following:*

“The design of the asphalt mixes shall be in accordance with “Interim Guidelines For The Design Of Hot-Mix Asphalt In South Africa (June 2001)”, and appropriate research results. The mix properties and requirements shall be as specified in the project specifications”

The relevant asphalt mixes for the base and surfacing layers shall comply with the requirements in table B4203/2.

**TABLE B4203/2: ASPHALT MIX REQUIREMENTS: BASE AND SURFACING**

Property	Continuously graded base mixes	Continuously graded surfacing mixes
Marshall Stability (kn)	8 18	8 18
Marshall Flow (mm)	2 _ 6	2 _ 6
Stability /Flow (kN/mm)	>2,5	> 2,5
VMA (%)	> 14	> 15
VFB (%)	65 _ 75	65 _ 75
Air voids (%)	4 _ 6	4 _ 6
Indirect tensile strength @ 25°C (kPa)	> 1000	> 1000
Dynamic Creep Modules @ 40°C (MPa)	> 20	> 20
Modified Lottmann* (TSR)	> 0,7	> 0, 8
Air permeability @ 7% voids (cm <sup>2</sup> )	< 1 x 10 _8	< 1 x 10 _8
Binder film thickness (microns)	5,5 8,0	5,5 8,0
Filler bitumen ratio	1 1,5	1 1,5
Immersion index (%)	-	-

\* At 7% voids

---

**B4205 GENERAL LIMITATIONS AND REQUIREMENTS AND THE STOCKPILING OF MIXED MATERIAL**

**(b) Moisture**

Add the following at the end of the second last paragraph after “engineer”:

“even if the underlying layer has been previously primed.”

**(c) Surface Requirements**

**(iii) Tack Coat**

*Add the following paragraph:*

“Hand spraying shall only be permitted on areas approved by the engineer. The binder distributor shall be capable to apply the binder evenly over the full area. The equipment shall comply with clause 4103. Tack coat shall be applied to all transverse and longitudinal joints by hand utilizing a paint brush.”

**B4206 PRODUCING AND TRANSPORTING THE MIXTURE**

**(b) Production of the mixture**

**(ii) Using drum-type mixer plants**

*Add the following:*

“Pre blending of aggregate fractions shall not be permitted and the contractor shall ensure that sufficient cold-feed bins are installed to accommodate each individual aggregate fraction including the filler.”

**(c) Transporting the mixture**

Add the following paragraph:

“Special precautions shall be taken by the contractor to ensure that the temperature of the total mass of asphalt does not decrease by more than 10°C from point of dispatch to the point where it is to be paved. The use of the thermal blankets is obligatory.

The contractor shall ensure that trucks used to haul asphalt are not overloaded and the legal axle loads are not exceeded. Before any asphalt can be transported, the contractor must provide the engineer with the certified carrying capacity of each truck intended for the purpose of transporting the mix. The contractor shall provide the engineer with a weighbridge ticket before discharging into the paver hopper.

ANY truck that is overloaded shall not be allowed to discharge its load and shall return to the depot/batching plant for adjustment of the load. In addition, a penalty shall be applied for the overload.”

Add the following sub-clause:

**(f) Approval of asphalt mixture**

Before any asphalt is placed on the road, the engineer shall approve the mix design. The approval process shall be as follows:

The contractor shall prepare and submit a laboratory design mix with test results at four different bitumen contents. The design mix shall be submitted on the prescribed form D# of TMH 10: "Instruction for the Completion of As-Built Materials Data Sheets" with all the necessary test results completed.

In addition, the proposed asphalt mixture shall be subjected to gyratory testing. All the expenses in preparing and submitting the laboratory design mix shall be to the contractor's cost.

Samples of all aggregate and bitumen shall be submitted with the laboratory design mix to enable the engineer to carry out check design testing as necessary. The above design and aggregate shall be submitted to the engineer at least six weeks before it is intended to commence with any asphalt production.

After approval is obtained for the laboratory design mix, a plant mix at varying binder contents of approximately 5 to 10 tons each shall be produced. The purpose of the plant mix is for the contractor to prove that the laboratory design mix can be produced successfully. The engineer shall conduct the necessary testing on the plant mix. The plant mix shall not be placed on the road. During the production of the plant mix, the engineer shall be afforded the opportunity to inspect the asphalt plant.

After the plant mix is approved, permission shall be given for laying a trial section at varying binder contents in accordance with the requirements of section 4211 of the specifications. The engineer may require that the mix be further assessed by means of CSIR Wheel Tracking or MMLS testing, the cost of which will be borne by the Employer. Mass production of asphalt shall only commence after approval of the trial section, which should be given within a maximum of ten days.

The engineer may instruct the contractor at any time to halt his paving process and to review the whole or part of the above process should a change of aggregate properties occur, the specified asphalt requirements not being met and/or a consistent asphalt mixture not be produced."

**B4208 JOINTS**

*Add the following to this clause:*

"Where the difference in level between the new work and the existing road surface exceeds 25mm, joint shall be treated as follows:

Transverse steps at the end of a day's work shall be tapered off at a slope of 1 vertical to 20 horizontals (1:20) to tie in with the existing surface. The tapered section shall be removed before surfacing is recommenced and a joint formed in accordance with clause 4208 of the specification.

Longitudinal joints exposed to traffic shall be provided with a taper of compacted asphalt material over the full length of the exposed joint. The width of the taper shall be at least 5 times the difference in level between the old and new work.

costs involved in the provision and removal of these temporary ramps shall be deemed to have been included in the rates tendered for the relevant asphalt pay item.”

#### **B4209 PRE-COATED CHIPPINGS FOR ASPHALT SURFACING**

In the first sentence of the fifth paragraph, delete “6-8 kg/m<sup>2</sup>” and “7-9kg/m<sup>2</sup> respectively and replace with:

“3-4 kg/m<sup>2</sup> and 5-6 kg/m<sup>2</sup>,”

In the last sentence of the fifth paragraph, delete “between 0,6 and 1,0mm” and replace with:

“between 0,8 and 1,2mm”

#### **B4213 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES AND FINISH REQUIREMENTS**

(a) Construction tolerances

(v) Surface regularity

Delete this sub-clause and replace with:

“Roughness of the surfacing will be determined by using a profilometer capable of producing a Class 1 vertical measurement resolution, and a Class 3 longitudinal sampling distance as defined in ASTM standard (E950-94). Prior to using the profilometer it shall have successfully completed a validation trail against the instrument of Reference (Face Dipstick ®) used by the South African National Roads Agency Limited.

The profilometer shall be used to record the longitudinal profile in both wheel tracks of the traffic lanes. The two-wheel tracks shall be 1.75m apart, and the Engineer shall indicate the exact position of the wheel tracks. Should the two-wheel tracks not be measured simultaneously during the same pass, then procedures shall be implemented to ensure that the longitudinal profile data recorded for the two-wheel tracks are at the same longitudinal location on the road. The measured longitudinal profiles will then be processed using the Quarter-Car simulation model with parameter values as defined in ASTM standard (E1170-92) for Ride Meter-Vehicle Mounted. The simulated suspension mentioned with then be linearly accumulated and divided by the length to yield 100m IRI (International Roughness Index) values in units of mm/m or m/km for each wheel track. The last 50 metres, and the joining first 50 metres of adjacent sections will be evaluated as a 100m section in the direction of vehicle travel.

The left and the right 100m IRI values will then be averaged to produce the Average IRI as follows:

$$\text{Average 100m IRI} = \frac{100\text{m IRI (Left Wheel Track)} + 100\text{m IRI (Right Wheel Track)}}{2}$$

The average 100m IRI for surfacing placed on layers which have been milled, or constructed, by the contractor shall be judged differently from surfacing placed as an overlay on existing surfacing.

- (1) The average 100mm IRI for surfacing placed on layers that have been milled or constructed by the contractor shall be evaluated and judged according to Table B4213/2 to determine whether the 100m section needs corrective work or payment adjustment.
- (2) For surfacing placed as an overlay on existing surfacing the average 100m IRI values for the new surfacing and the average 100m IRI values of the existing surfacing shall both be used in Table B4213/2 to determine whether the 100m section needs corrective work or payment adjustment. For this surfacing the payment adjustment factor applicable shall be the difference between the payment adjustment factors applicable to the new surfacing and the existing surfacing plus 1.0.

**TABLE B4213/2: PAYMENT ADJUSTMENT**

<b>100m IRI Values (mm/m or ,/km)*</b>	<b>Payment Adjustment Factor</b>
<0.90	1.050
0.91 to 0.95	1.040
0.96 to 1.00	1.030
1.01 to 1.05	1.020
1.06 to 1.10	1.010
1.11 to 1.20	1.000
1.21 to 1.30	0.990
1.31 to 1.40	0.975
1.41 to 1.50	0.955
1.51 to 1.60	0.930
1.61 to 1.70	0.900
>1.70	Not acceptable

\* This is the Average 100m IRI per lane

For overlay work on existing surfacing, the limits for payment adjustment factors shall be 1.050 and 0.900.

On sections where the average 100m IRI on the existing surfacing is <1.20 and the average 100m IRI on the new surfacing does not worsen to >1.20 no payment adjustment factor will be applicable. Should the average 100m IRI value on the new surfacing worsen to >1.20 payment adjustments will be applicable. Should the average 100m IRI value on the new surfacing worsen to >1.70 corrective work will be necessary.

Any corrective work required shall be made by the removal, through milling of the total asphalt layer width placed during a single pass of the paver over the 100m section in question, followed by reinstatement. The contractor shall submit his method statement for any corrective work to the engineer for approval, prior to commencing with any corrective work. Corrective work shall be done at the contractor's expense and shall be completed prior

---

to determining pavement thickness. After completion of the corrective work, the 100m sections shall be re-evaluated according to the abovementioned procedure.

Any adjustment in the payment of asphalt surfacing will be made by multiplying the full payment for item B42.11 at contract rates (including pore-coated chippings where relevant) by the payment adjustment factor in or derived from Table B4213/2. The payment adjustment shall apply to the total asphalt layer width placed during a single pass by the paver of the 100m sections in question.

The longitudinal profile and the 100m IRI values shall be determined using a profilometer furnished and operated by the contractor or on his behalf in the presence of the engineer.

Profile tests done on all lanes during February 2004 will be made available to the contractor. As an absolute minimum, measurement shall be provided to the engineer after 10%, 50% and 100% of the surfacing area of the project has been completed. The contractor will be paid for these measurements under payment item 81.02. No additional payment will be made to the contractor for additional measurement and analysis of profiles.”

#### **B4214 QUALITY OF MATERIAL AND WORKMANSHIP**

##### **(b) Coring of asphalt layers**

Add the following:

“A suitable coring machine shall be available on a daily basis when asphalt paving is taking place. Cores shall only be drilled, when the road temperature is 20°C or less. Core holes shall be filled with hot mix asphalt and compacted, all within 24 hours of the core being drilled. Coring shall be carried out within 48 hours after the paving has been completed and supplied to the engineer. The test results of cores shall be submitted to the engineer within 24 hours after coring.”

##### **(c) Routine inspection and tests**

Add the following paragraphs:

“The contractor shall keep accurate records of:

- (i) The position where every truckload of asphalt is paved (chainage, lane, time and date).
- (ii) The temperatures of the asphalt in the trucks both at the mixing plant and at the paving equipment immediately prior to discharging the load.
- (iii) The truck and load number from which control samples are taken. All samples taken shall be appropriately numbered.

Test results and measurements will be assessed in accordance with the provision of section 8200

Add the following sub-clause:



(d) **Special tests**

n-Heptane-Xylene Equivalent (Spot test) (AASHTO-T102)

If the engineer suspects that bitumen or asphalt has been overheated, he may order that the bitumen, or the bitumen recovered from the asphalt, be subjected to the Spot Test. Recovery of binder for use in the Spot Test shall be carried out according to an approved method.

Any bitumen having an n-Heptane-Xylene equivalent in excess of 36, or in excess of the manufacturers test result on the dispatched stock, shall be considered to have been overheated and shall be deemed to be rejected unless proven otherwise."

**B4215 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

Amend the following payment item:

Item	Unit
<b>B42.08 100mm cores in asphalt paving .....</b>	<b>number (no)</b>

Amend the 1st sentence by adding the following after the word "drilled....." irrespective of depth of core

Add the following payment items:

Item	Unit
<b>B42.21 Aggregate variations .....</b>	<b>ton (t)</b>

The unit of measurement in respect of increases or decreases in the aggregate content from that specified in the nominal mix shall be the ton.

Payment for variations shall be made as specified for clause 1213.

Item	Unit
<b>B42.22 Penalty for overloading .....</b>	<b>ton (t)</b>

The unit of measurement for the calculation of the penalty shall be the ton of mix transported in excess of the legal load. The rate applied shall be twice the contractor's tendered rate for placing the mix under B42.01, B42.02 or B42.11.

For the purposes of the calculation, the so called 5% grace shall not be used. The following example is provided:

Tare Weight of vehicle certified by RTI weighbridge	=	6 tons
Maximum carrying capacity certified by RTI weighbridge	=	8 tons
Gross vehicle mass	=	14 tons
Actual Load (Weighbridge ticket)	=	14.6 tons
Overload	=	0.6 tons

Contractors rate tendered under item B42.01 = R350/ton

$$\text{Penalty} = 2 \times \text{R350/ton} \times 0.6 \text{ tons} = \text{R 420.00}$$

---

**SECTION 5100: PITCHING, STONEMASONRY AND PROTECTION AGAINST EROSION**

**B5108 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT:**

Add the following new item:

Item	Unit
B51.08 Demolition of stone pitching and masonry walls	
(a) Stone pitching .....	cubic metre (m <sup>3</sup> )
(b) Stone masonry walls .....	cubic metre (m <sup>3</sup> )

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of stone pitching or masonry wall demolished.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, plant and equipment required to demolish the existing structure and disposal of the demolition to an approved spoil site within a free-haul distance of 1km. For partial demolition, it shall also include for squaring out the exposed surface and preparing the existing surface for repair or to tie into new construction work.”

---

## SECTION 5200: GABIONS

### B5201 SCOPE

Add the following paragraph

“This section also covers the removal, dismantling and stacking of existing gabion work, and the reuse of these materials where authorised by the engineer.”

### B5203 CONSTRUCTION OF GABION CAGES

#### (a) General

Add the following new sub-clause:

“(iii) Reno mattresses or similar may be used as alternative to gabion boxes. These Reno mattresses are to be manufactured of 80mm x 100mm mesh (2,5mm diameter wires, diaphragm spacing 0,6m).

### B5204 CONSTRUCTING GABIONS

#### (c) Assembly

Delete and substitute with:

#### (c) Assembly, erection and stretching

##### (i) Assembly

“Prior to assembly, the gabion material shall be opened out flat on the ground and stretched to remove any kinks and bends. The gabion boxes shall then be assembled individually by raising the sides, ends and diaphragms ensuring that all creases are in the correct position and that the tops of all four sides are even. The four corners of the gabion boxes shall be laced first followed by the edges of internal diaphragms to the sides. In all cases lacing shall commence at the top of the box by twisting the end of the lacing wire around the selvages. It shall then be passed round two edges being joined, through each mesh in turn and securely tied off at the bottom. The ends of all lacing wire shall be turned to the inside of the box on completion of each lacing operation.

##### (ii) Erection

Only assembled boxes, or groups of boxes, shall be positioned in the structure. The side, or end, from which work is to proceed, shall be secured to either completed work or by rods or stakes driven into the ground at the corners. These must be secured and reach at least to the top of the gabion box. Further gabions shall then be positioned in the structure as required, each being securely laced to the preceding one at all corners and diaphragm points.

##### (iii) Stretching

On completion of erection of a suitable length of gabion, the gabion boxes shall be stretched using a wire strainer or winch of at least one ton capacity firmly secured to the free end of the assembled gabion boxes.

Whilst under tension the gabion boxes shall be securely laced along edges (top, bottom and sides) and at diaphragm points, to all adjacent boxes and shall thereafter be filled.”

#### (d) Rock filling

Add the following new sub-sub-clause:

##### (iii) General

“Filling shall be carried out only whilst gabion boxes are under tension. Filling material shall consist of rock of size not less than 120mm and not greater than 250mm so placed to produce a neat face and line with a minimum of voids.

Internal horizontal bracing wire shall be provided at 500mm vertical centres or such spacing to ensure a ratio of four to every 1m<sup>3</sup> of filling. These bracing wires shall be wrapped around two mesh

---

wires and extended from front to back so positioned to ensure a neat face and line free of excessive bulges and depressions. Gabion boxes shall be filled in stages and horizontal bracing wires inserted as filling is brought up.

Similar bracing wires used vertically shall be provided in 0,5mm deep gabions at 330mm horizontal centres where water falls directly onto gabions or where a neat face is required.

Tension on the gabion boxes shall be released only when sufficiently full to prevent the mesh from slackening.

Gabion boxes shall be overfilled by 20 to 50mm above their tops to allow subsequent settlement of the filling."

Add the following new sub-clauses:

(e) **Final wiring**

"Closing and wiring down of lids shall proceed as soon as possible after filling operations and certainly, in the likelihood of storms or floods during construction. The wiring down shall consist of wrapping around wire at such intervals as required or specified.

Lids shall be stretched tight over the filling with bars and wired down securely through each mesh along all edges, ends and diaphragms. The ends of all tying and bracing wires shall be turned into the gabion box on completion of all lacing operations.

(f) **Removal, dismantling and stacking of gabions**

Existing gabions, either damaged or not, that require to be removed or moved to a new location shall be dismantled. Material not required for re-assembly or unsuitable for re-use shall be neatly instructions. Payment will be made only for gabions removed in accordance with the written instruction of the engineer.

Where gabions require moving, or as declared suitable by the engineer are re-usable, the contractor shall re-use all the material, plus supply such new materials as may be required to re-assemble the gabion again to the standard specification for new gabions."

---

## SECTION 5600: ROAD SIGNS

### B5601 SCOPE

“This section also covers the supply and erection of permanent danger plates at culverts and bridges at the locations indicated on the drawings or as directed by the engineer.”

### B5603 MANUFACTURING OF ROAD SIGN BOARDS AND SUPPORTS

(a) Road signboards

Add the following:

“The contractor shall make every effort to ensure that signboards are correct in all respect and before dispatching the boards from the manufacturer’s factory shall provide the Engineer with a 100mm x 150mm colour photograph of each sign face for approval of the correctness of the legend. Such approval will not imply final acceptance of the board. If the Contractor is in any doubt as to the correctness of the sign detail, the sign designer shall be contacted for verification.”

(a) (ii) Steel profile road signboards Add the following:

“Where the letter or legends cross the horizontal joints of the sign panels, the letter shall be cut on the joint and both ends folded around the radius.

Retro-reflective material to adjoining Chromadek panels on a sign shall be practical visual match of the specified colour.”

### B5604 ROAD SIGN FACES AND PAINTING

Add the following new subclause:

“(e) Application of retro-reflective material

All sign faces shall be faced with diamond grade retro-reflective material. Painted front sign faces shall not be used.

Where applied to Chromadek sections, retro-reflective material shall be applied as specified for aluminium section in Clause 5603(d) of the Standard Specification, and of Clause B5603(a)(ii) of this project Specification.”

### B5605 STORAGE AND HANDLING

Add the following:

“The following shall not be allowed on the sign face:

Drilling of holes, except for the fastening of overlays

Application of any form of adhesive

Cleaning with any chemicals that are not specifically approved by the manufacturer of the retroreflective material

Covering the sign face with an impermeable material that does not allow free circulation of air.”

### B5606 ERECTING ROAD SIGNS

(c) Erection

Add the following:

“After erection the signboard shall be thoroughly cleaned with a cleaning agent approved by the retro-reflective material’s manufacturer.

All vegetation obstructing the new or replaced sign board shall be removed and disposed of as instructed by the Engineer.”

---

**B5608      DISMANTLING, STORING AND RE-ERECTING EXISTING ROAD SIGNS**

Add the following:

“Existing overhead and ground mounted road signs that are being replaced by new signs shall be dismantled and disposed of by the Contractor. Where possible the dismantling of the signs shall not be before the replacement sign is erected and displayed. Where dismantling of the sign is required before erection of the replacement sign, the dismantling shall not take place until immediately before work is to commence on the replacement, and the replacement shall be completed and the new sign displayed as soon as possible thereafter (within 72 hours).

Dismantling shall include sign panels and ground mounted sign supports.

Ground mounted sign supports shall be cut off just below ground level. Material excavated for removal of buried poles shall be replaced, and any depression made good using excess material from excavation for new signs.

Pay items are provided in the Bill of Quantities. Payment will differentiate between different types of sign panels.”

**B5609      MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

**ITEM** **UNIT**

B56.01      Road sign boards with painted or coloured semi-matt background.  
Symbols, lettering, and borders in diamond grade retro-reflective material,  
where the sign board is constructed from:

Amend the last two lines of the second paragraph to read: “completion, delivery, installation of the road sign board complete as specified, and the removal and disposal of all vegetation board. Add the obstructing the motorists’ view of the new or replaced sign.

Add the following pay items:

**“ITEM** **UNIT**

**B56.10      Danger plates at culverts/structures**

- (a)      Type A at stormwater culverts (size indicated)      number (No.)
- (b)      Type B at bridges (size indicated)      number (No.)

The unit of measurement shall be the number of danger plates provided and erected in accordance with the drawings.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour and material, painting, posts, excavation, backfilling with soil etc., as may be necessary for completing the work in accordance with the details shown on the drawings.”

---

**SECTION 5700: ROAD MARKINGS**

**B5706 SETTING OUT THE ROAD MARKINGS**

Add the following:

“Where road markings are to be replaced after milling/overlay seal, it is essential that all existing barrier lines and other road marking lines be accurately referenced before commencement of milling or other operations which will obliterate the existing road markings. The position of barrier lines shall be re-assessed on site by the Engineer before the Contractor commences with the road marking.”

**B5707 APPLYING THE PAINT**

Add the following:

“The Contractor’s establishment on site and general obligation shall be deemed to fully include the establishment of the road-marking team, irrespective of the number of times the road-marking team is required to be onsite or is required to move within the site.”

**B5711 GENERAL**

Insert the following into the last sentence of the last paragraph between “black paint” and “or chemical paint remover”:

“, bituminous emulsion, slurry”

Add the following to the last paragraph:

“Where black paint is used, it shall be matt.”

Add the following new clause:

**“B5715 REMOVAL OF EXISTING ROAD STUDS**

The existing road studs shall be removed from the road surface prior to milling.”

**B5714 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

ITEM	UNIT
------	------

B57.06	Setting out and pre-marking the lines (excluding traffic island markings, lettering and symbols) Add the following:
--------	---

“Referencing of existing barrier lines and other road marking lines prior to milling and other operations, shall be included in the tendered rate for setting out and pre-marking.”

Add the following item:

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
B57.07 Establishment of painting unit during the construction period	Lump sum

The unit of measurement shall be the lump sum to compensate the contractor for the establishment and removal of the painting unit after the retention period.

The tendered lump sum shall include full compensation for the establishment on site and for the removal of all equipment, personnel, etc. as may be required for the application of the road marking.

---

**SECTION 5900: FINISHING THE ROAD AND ROAD RESERVE AND TREATING OLD ROADS**

**B5902 FINISHING THE ROAD AND ROAD RESERVE**

Add the following to the first paragraph:

“The contractor shall pay special attention to the collection and removal of all waste materials originating from the construction activities. All materials trimmed or excavated from the road shall be collected and removed from the road reserve to the satisfaction of the engineer.

This requirement shall be deemed to be incorporated in the tendered rates for item 59.01 of the bill of quantities or such other items as the contractor may decide upon.

The engineer may order additional finishing of the road reserve which will entail the collection and disposal of loose rocks etc. Payment for this work will be made under daywork items included in section 5900 of the bill of quantities as described in section 1800 of these project specifications.”



---

## **SECTION 6100: FOUNDATIONS FOR STRUCTURES**

### **B6105: EXCAVATIONS**

#### **(c) Excavation**

Replace first paragraph with the following:

"No concrete to be cast against any excavated earth faces and formwork to be provided for all pile caps/supports bases. The tendered rate for excavation to include the required working space for forming the net base dimensions and other related activities for constructing the pile caps/support bases.

### **B6106: FOUNDING**

Add the following after the last paragraph:

'If the material at founding level differs from that shown on the drawings, or is not approved, the Engineer shall instruct the Contractor to do one of the following:

- Over-excavate to the depth required by the Project Manager and first compact the in-situ material at the specified depth to 95% MOD AASHTO; thereafter fill the excavated area with good quality imported material in layers not exceeding 150mm and compact to 95% MOD AASHTO for cohesive materials and 100% MOD AASHTO for non-cohesive material.
- Excavate the unapproved material to the depth ordered, and found at this level.
- Excavate the unapproved material to the depth ordered and fill to the level ordered, either with mass concrete or approved backfill, as directed.

Exposed rock founding surfaces shall be roughened to provide sound bond with the foundation, brushed to remove all loose material, and flushed with water if so ordered. Surplus water shall be removed before concreting.

The Engineer shall be notified as soon as possible if suitable material is encountered before reaching the designed level.

Where the Contractor makes the excavations larger or deeper than directed, the Contractor shall replace the over break in the floor of the excavation with concrete of strength as directed or, if authorized, with approved backfill.

### **B6108: BACKFILL AND FILL NEAR STRUCTURES**

#### **(b) Backfill**

Replace "90%" with "95%" in the 6<sup>th</sup> line of the first paragraph and add the following after the paragraph:

After completion of concrete work, or when so directed, the Contractor shall restore the original ground level by backfilling with approved material.

---

**SECTION 6200: FALSEWORK, FORMWORK AND CONCRETE FINISH**

**B6202: MATERIALS**

- (b) **Formwork**
- (iii) Void formers
- (2) Braced void formers

Replace the following on the 10<sup>th</sup> line : “2,0m with 0,8m, and 1,0m with 0,8m”

Add the following after the 3<sup>rd</sup> paragraph:

Forms must be provided with adequate devices for secure setting so that, when in place, they withstand, without visible spring or settlement, the impact of the vibration of the compacting and finishing equipment.

Forms that are out of tolerance, bent, twisted or broken, or which have battered top surfaces, shall not be used. Forms must at all times kept clean and free from rust and adhesions so as to ensure clean stripping. The use of rough and dirty forms shall not permitted..”

Add the following sub-clause

- (vi) Service ducts

Void formers to service ducts shall be formed from uPVC pipes. The uPVC pipes shall not leak or be damaged during the course of construction and shall be of such tight construction as to prevent ingress of concrete fines into the duct during construction.

**B6205: CONSTRUCTION**

**(b) Formwork**

- (i) General

Add the following paragraphs after the first paragraph:

“The spacing of supports for formwork must be such that the deflection of the formwork under load of wet concrete does not exceed 3 mm. The supports must be adjustable by means of screw jacks or wedges, both of which must be secured.

Unless approved, temporary trusses or beams shall not be used to support formwork for concrete which is to be post-tension

Add the following clause

- (viii) Inspection by the engineer

The alignment and levels of all formwork must be checked and accepted by the Supervisor prior placing concrete.

---

**B6210: MEASUREMENTS AND PAYMENTS**

1/B62.10 Unformed surfaces m<sup>2</sup>

The unit of measurement shall be square metre, and only actual area of unformed surfaces requiring the specified finish (U1, U2 or U3) shall be measured. Areas to be coated with concrete setting retarders to receive new concrete shall be measured under U1 class finish.

Item	Unit
1/B2.11 Service ducts: Form permanent voids paid for service ducts in walkway	m

Void formers shall be paid at a through rate per metre for the diameter specified. The tendered rate shall include rates for supply, placing and recurring against displacement during concreting.

---

**SECTION 6300: STEEL REINFORCEMENT FOR STRUCTURES**

**B6306 : PLACING AND FIXING**

Replace second paragraph with the following paragraphs:

“The minimum required concrete cover to all steel reinforcement is as shown on the drawings. Maintenance of this minimum cover during casting of concrete must be strictly adhered to. Concrete, which is cast with insufficient cover to the reinforcement, must be demolished and recast at the contractor’s cost.

Cover blocks used to ensure the cover to reinforcement must be made of cement mortar. They must be dense and have a minimum 28 days crushing strength of 50 MPa, and cured in water for at least 14 days before being used. Spacer blocks made of plastic will not be permitted.”

---

## **SECTION 6400: CONCRETE FOR STRUCTURES**

### **B6402: MATERIALS**

#### (a) Cements

Add the following paragraphs after the last paragraph:

“All cements used for concrete work shall comply with SANS ENV 197-1. All cement extenders used for concrete work shall comply with SANS 1491. On no account shall masonry cements be used for concrete work, even if the strength designations are the same as for common cements.”

#### (a) Curing agents

*Replace paragraph with the following:*

“In all cases where concrete curing compound is specified, the curing compound shall be grey or white-pigmented membrane forming material complying with ASTM specification C309, except that the maximum permissible water loss within 72 hours shall not exceed 0.40 kilograms per square metre.

Before any curing compound is used, the Contractor must submit a one-litre sample of the compound, with full technical details, to the Supervisor for approval. Technical details referred to shall include a recent SANS report showing the following:

- (i) Compliance with ASTM C-309.
- (ii) The relative density of the compound.
- (iii) The infrared spectrum of the compound.

Alternatively, the concrete curing compound shall be acceptable if the treated concrete retains 90% or more of its mixing water when subject to the test set out in BS 8110: Part 1, clause 6.6(c).”

### **B6404: CONCRETE QUALITY**

#### (c) Prescribed-mix concrete

*Replace clause with the following:*

The contractor shall submit samples of every constituent of the concrete in accordance with appropriate provisions of sections 8200 and 8300 and sub-clause 6404(b) for approval.

In order to enhance durability, and notwithstanding strength considerations, the concrete mixes shall satisfy one of the mixes given in the table below. Prior written approval for the mix shall be obtained from the Project Manager.

**CONCRETE MIXES**

CONCRETE TYPE	CEMENT TYPE AND % CONTENT	EXTENDER TYPE AND % CONTENT	MINIMUM CEMENT PLUS EXTENDER CONTENT kg/m <sup>3</sup>	MAXIMUM WATER/ CEMENT RATIO
Steel reinforced	CEM 1 50% - 60%	GGBS 40% - 50%	420	0.40
Steel reinforced	CEM 1 70% - 75%	FA 25% - 30%	420	0.40
Plain	CEM 1 100%	Nil	340	0.50
Plain	CEM 1 75%	FA < 25%	340	0.50
Plain	CEM 1 35% - 65%	GGBS 35% - 65%	340	0.50
Plain	CEM 1 65% - 74%	FA 26% - 35%	300	0.55

Note:

1. CEM 1 may be CEM 1 42,5 or 42,5 R
2. GGBS \_ Ground Granulated Blast furnace Slag
3. FA Fly Ash
4. Factory blended cements (CEM 11/B-V, CEM 11/B-W or CEM 111/A) are accepted provided that they conform to one of the blends specified in the table. The Contractor must supply certification thereof.

Water-reducing admixtures may be used to improve workability (see also clause 3.3 above). The water cement ratio includes the water content of admixtures.

Blends of CEM 1 and Condensed Silica Fume (CSF) are not acceptable for steel reinforced concrete. Ternary blends such as CSF with CEM 1 and FA or GGBS may be considered provided that they are shown to be equivalent in durability to the mixes given. The onus is on the Contractor to prove to the Project Manager the adequacy of the blend.

**HEAT GENERATION - LIMITING CEMENT CONTENTS**

Measures, subject to the approval of the Project Manager, must be applied to reduce heat development in concrete of which the minimum dimension to be placed during a single pour is larger than 600 mm, and the cement content exceeds the values given in table below.

STRUCTURAL ELEMENT	CEMENT TYPES I AND III/A (kg/m <sup>3</sup> )	CEMENT TYPES II/B-V AND II/B-W (kg/m <sup>3</sup> )
Reinforced Concrete	400	450
Prestressed Concrete	500	550

**SECTION 6600: NO-FINES CONCRETE, JOINTS, BEARINGS, BOLT GROUPS FOR ELECTRIFICATION, PARAPETS AND DRAINAGE FOR STRUCTURE**

**B6603: JOINTS IN STRUCTURES**

Add the following subclauses:

**“(h) Silicone joint sealant**

(i) Description

This work shall consist of furnishing labour, equipment, technical assistance and materials necessary to install the silicone joint sealer as shown on the plans and specified herein.

(i) Materials

(1) Silicone joint sealant

The silicone joint sealant shall be rapid cure, self-levelling, cold applied, two component silicone. The sealant, upon curing shall be resilient, flexible and resistant to moisture and puncture. The sealant shall also demonstrate excellent adhesion to Portland cement concrete and steel over arrange of temperature from -34° to 34°C, while maintaining a watertight seal. The sealant shall not contain any solvents or dilatants that cause shrinkage or expansion during curing. Acid cure sealants are not acceptable. The manufacturer shall certify that the sealant meets or exceeds the following test requirements before installation begins:

Physical Properties:

Specific Gravity (ASTM D1475)	1.2 - 1.4
Extrusion Rate (ML-5-8802)	200-600g/min
Flow	Self leveling
Durometer Hardness, Shore (ASTM D2240)	40-80
Ozone and UV Resistance (ASTM C793)	No chalking, cracking
After mixing	Or bond loss after 5 hrs
Tack Free Time (ASTM C679)	60 min max
Joint Cure Rate (% of total cure)	50% within 4-6 hrs 75% within 24 hrs
Upon Complete Cure:	100% within 48-160 hrs
Joint Elongation (Adhesion to concrete)	600% min
Joint Modulus	21-103 kPa @ 100% elongation

(2) Backing Rod

Backing rod to conform to STM D5249 Type 3

Construction Procedure

(1) General

Technical assistance provided by the manufacturer during surface preparation and installation shall be furnished to the engineer. The Contractor shall furnish the engineer with the manufacturer's written product information and in contractor, the manufacturer's representative and the engineer shall meet to clarify installation procedure, prior to starting the work. A technical representative must be present for the start of surface preparation and installation, for at least one day.

When placing the silicone against concrete, the concrete surface shall be dry.

(2) Surface preparation

Sandblasting:

Both faces of joint shall be sandblasted. A separate pass for each face for the full length of the joint and to the depth of the centre of the backer rod will be required. The nozzle shall be held at an angle of 30°-90° to the joint face, and at a distance of 25 – 50mm.

After sandblasting, the joint shall be cleaned of debris using compressed air at a pressure of 620kPa. The air shall be equipped with traps to prevent the inclusion of water and/or oil in the air line.

Priming:

Priming will immediately follow sandblasting and cleaning and will only be permitted for air and substrate temperatures at least 5°C and rising. Sandblasting, priming and sealing must be performed in the same day for a particular joint. The primer shall be brush applied and be allowed to dry for at least one hour or more, but shall be thoroughly dry before proceeding.

(3) Joint Installation:

Backing rod placement:

The backer rod shall be installed to a uniform depth as specified on the drawing and as recommended by the manufacturer. All splices in the backer rod shall be taped to prevent material loss during sealing. The backing rod shall be installed within 3mm tolerance.

Placement of sealant:

The sealant shall be 13mm thick, within tolerance, as measured in the centre of the joint, at the thinnest position and shall be monitored during installation at 600mm centres, with adjustment if required, implemented immediately before sealant begins to harden. Sealant placement will only be allowed when air and substrate temperatures are above 5° C, and 2.8° C above the dew point. The joint must be kept clean and dry during sealing.

Sealing shall be performed using a pneumatic gun, approved by the sealant manufacturer and shall be operated at the recommended pressure. The pneumatic gun shall demonstrate proper mixing action of the sealant. All unmixed sealant found in the joint, shall be removed and replaced at the contractor's expense."



---

**B6603: JOINTS IN STRUCTURES**

**(a) Materials**

**(3) Backup material**

Add the following paragraph:

„In instances where the contract specifies the Neoprene compression seal as detailed on the drawing, the compression seal shall comply with the requirements of ASTM 1056, Type 2, Class B, Grade 2 or AASHTO T-4—84 Modified.”

**B6604: BEARINGS FOR STRUCTURES**

**(e) Proprietary bearings**

(vi) Inspection and testing

Add the following paragraph after the third paragraph:

The Contractor must notify the Supervisor after each consignment of mechanical bearings has been delivered on site.”

### **C3.4.3 PROJECT SPECIFICATIONS: ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATIONS**

#### **CONTENTS**

- C3.4.3.1 REQUIREMENTS OF THE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT REGULATIONS
- C3.4.3.2 ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PLAN
- C3.4.3.3 PROVISION OF STRUCTURED TRAINING
- C3.4.3.4 PROVISION OF THE TEMPORARY WORKFORCE

---

### **C3.4.3.1 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT 1993: HEALTH AND SAFETY SPECIFICATION**

#### **CONTENTS**

- C3.4.3.1.1 INTRODUCTION
- C3.4.3.1.2 SCOPE
- C3.4.3.1.3 GENERAL OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY PROVISIONS
- C3.4.3.1.4 OPERATIONAL CONTROL
- ANNEXURE 1: MEASURING INJURY EXPERIENCE
- ANNEXURE 2: EXECUTIVE SHE RISK MANAGEMENT REPORT
- ANNEXURE 3: LIST OF RISK ASSESSMENTS

#### **C3.4.3.1.1 Introduction**

In terms of the Construction Regulation 4(1) (a) of the Occupational Health and Safety Act, No. 85 of 1993, Thulamela Local Municipality, as the Client, is required to compile a Health & Safety Specification for any intended project and provide such specification to any prospective tenderer. The Client's further duties are as in C3.5.1.3.1.1. below and in the Construction Regulations, 2003.

This specification has as objective to ensure that Principal Contractors entering into a Contract with the Thulamela Local Municipality achieve an acceptable level of OH&S performance. This document forms an integral part of the Contract and Principal and other Contractors should make it part of any Contracts that they may have with Contractors and/or Suppliers.

Compliance with this document does not absolve the Principal Contractor from complying with minimum legal requirements and the Principal Contractor remains responsible for the health & safety of his employees and those of his Mandataries.

#### **C3.4.3.1.2 Scope**

Development of a health & safety specification that addresses all aspects of occupational health and safety as affected by the abovementioned contract work.

The specification will provide the requirements that Principal Contractors and other Contractors will have to comply with in order to reduce the risks associated with the abovementioned contract work that may lead to incidents causing injury and/or ill health, to a level as low as reasonably practicable.

#### **C3.4.3.1.3 General Occupational Health & Safety Provisions**

- (a) Hazard Identification & Risk Assessment (Construction Regulation 7)
  - (i) Risk Assessments

Annexure 3 contains a list of Risk Assessment headings that have been identified by Thulamela Local Municipality as possibly applicable to the abovementioned contract work. It is, by no means, exhaustive and is offered as an assistance to Contractors intending to tender.

Based on the Risk Assessments, the Principal Contractor must develop a set of site specific OH&S rules that will be applied to regulate the OH&S aspects of the construction.

The Risk Assessments, together with the site-specific OH&S rules must be submitted to the Thulamela Local Municipality before mobilisation on site commences.

---

Despite the Risk Assessments listed in Annexure 3, the Principal Contractor is required to conduct a baseline Risk Assessment and the aforesaid listed Risk Assessments must be incorporated into the base-line Risk Assessment. The baseline Risk Assessment must further include the Standard Working procedures (SWP) and the applicable Method Statements based on the Risk Assessments

All out-of-scope work must be associated with a Risk Assessment.

(ii) Review of Risk Assessments

The Principal Contractor is to review the Hazard Identification, Risk Assessments and SWP's at each Production Planning and Progress Report meeting as the Contract work develops and progresses and each time changes are made to the designs, plans and construction methods and processes.

The Principal Contractor must provide the Client, other Contractors and all other concerned-parties with copies of any changes, alterations or amendments as contemplated in above.

(b) Legal Requirements

All Contractors entering into a Contract with the Thulamela Local Municipality shall, as a minimum, comply with the

- Occupational Health & Safety Act and Regulations (Act 85 of 1993). A current, up-to-date copy of the OHS Act must be available on site at all times
- Compensation for Occupational Injuries & Diseases Act (Act 130 of 1993). The principal contractor will be required to submit a letter of Registration and "good-standing" from the Compensation Insurer before being awarded the contract. A current, up-to-date copy of the COID Act must be available on site at all times.
- Where work is being carried out on mines' premises the contractor will have to comply with the Mine Health & Safety Act and Regulations (Act. 29 of 1996) and any other OH&S requirements that the mine may specify. A current, up-to-date copy of the OHS Act must be available on site at all times.

(c) Structure and Responsibilities

(i) Overall Supervision and Responsibility for OH&S

- \* It is a requirement that the Principal Contractor, when he appoints Contractors (Sub-contractors) in terms of Construction Regulations 5(3), (5), (9), (10) and (12) he includes an OHS Act Section 37 (2) agreement: "Agreement with mandatory" in his agreement with such contractors.
- \* Any OH&S Act (85/1993), Section 16(2) appointee/s as detailed in his/her/their respective appointment forms

(ii) Further (Specific) Supervision Responsibilities for OH&S

The Contractor shall appoint designated competent employees and/or other competent persons as required by the Act and Regulations. Below is a list of identified appointments and may be used to select the appropriate appointments for the current contract:

	Ref. Section/Regulation in OHSAct
Batch Plant Supervisor	(Construction Regulation 6(1))
Construction Vehicles/Mobile Plant/Machinery Supervisor	(Construction Regulation 21)
Demolition Supervisor	(Construction Regulation 12)
Drivers/Operators of Construction Vehicles/Plant	(Construction Regulation 21)
Electrical Installation and Appliances Inspector	(Construction Regulation 22)
Emergency/Security/Fire Coordinator	(Construction Regulation 27)
Excavation Supervisor	(Construction Regulation 11)
Explosive Powered Tool Supervisor	(Construction Regulation 19)
Fall Protection Supervisor	(Construction Regulation 8)
First Aider	(General Safety Regulation 3)
Fire Equipment Inspector	(Construction Regulation 27)
Formwork & Support work Supervisor	(Construction Regulation 10)
Hazardous Chemical Substances Supervisor	(HCS Regulations)
Incident Investigator	(General Admin Regulation 29)
Ladder Inspector	(General Safety Regulation 13A)
Lifting Equipment Inspector	(Construction Regulation 20)
Materials Hoist Inspector	(Construction Regulation 17)
OH&S Committee	(OHS Act Section 19)
OH&S Officer	(Construction Regulation 6(6))
OH&S Representatives	(OHS Act Section 17)
Person Responsible for Machinery	(General Machinery Regulation 2)
Scaffolding Supervisor	(Construction Regulation 14)
Stacking & Storage Supervisor	(Construction Regulation 26)
Structures Supervisor	(Construction Regulation 9)
Suspended Platform Supervisor	(Construction Regulation 15)
Tunneling Supervisor	(Construction Regulation 13)
Vessels under Pressure Supervisor	(Vessels under Pressure Regulations)
Working on/next to Water Supervisor	(Construction Regulation 24)
Welding Supervisor	(General Safety Regulation 9)

The appointments must be in writing and the responsibilities clearly stated together with the period for which the appointment is made. This information must be communicated and agreed with the appointees.

Copies of appointments must be submitted to the Thulamela Local Municipality together with concise CV's of the appointees. All appointments must be officially approved by Thulamela Local Municipality. Any changes in appointees or appointments must be communicated to Thulamela Local Municipality forthwith.

The Principal Contractor must, furthermore, provide Thulamela Local Municipality with an organogram of all Contractors that he/she has appointed or intends to appoint and keep this list updated on a weekly basis.

In addition, Thulamela Local Municipality may require that a Traffic Safety Officer be appointed for any project.

---

(iii) Designation of OH&S Representatives (Section 18 of the OHS Act)

OH&S Representatives have to be designated in writing and the designation must include the area of responsibility of the person and term of the designation.

(iv) Duties and Functions of the OH&S Representatives (Section 19 of the OHS Act)

The Principal Contractor must ensure that the designated OH&S Representatives conduct a minimum monthly inspection of their respective areas of responsibility using a checklist and report thereon to the Principal Contractor

OH&S representatives must be included in accident/incident investigations

OH&S representatives must attend all OH&S committee meetings.

(v) Appointment of OH&S Committee (Section 20 of the OHS Act)

The Principal Contractor must establish an OH&S Committee consisting of all the designated OH&S Representatives together with a number of management representatives that are not allowed to exceed the number of OH&S representatives on the committee and a representative of the Client who shall act as the chairman without a vote. The members of the OH&S committee must be appointed in writing.

The OH&S Committee must meet minimum monthly and consider, at least, the following Agenda:

1. Opening & Welcome
2. Present/Apologies/Absent
3. Minutes of previous Meeting
4. Matters Arising from the previous Minutes
5. OH&S Reps Reports
6. Incident Reports & Investigations
7. Incident/Injury Statistics
8. Other Matters
9. Endorsement of Registers and other statutory documents by a representative of the Principal Contractor
10. Close/Next Meeting

(d) Administrative Controls and the Occupational Health & Safety File

(i) The OH&S File (Construction Regulation 5 (7))

As required by Construction Regulation 5(7), the Principal Contractor and other Contractors will each keep an OH&S File on site containing the following documents as a minimum:

- \* Notification of Construction Work (Construction Regulation 3.)
- \* Copy of OH&S Act (updated) (General Administrative Regulation 4.)
- \* Proof of Registration and good standing with a COID Insurer (Construction Regulation 4 (g))
- \* OH&S Programme agreed with the Client including the underpinning Risk Assessment/s & Method Statements (Construction regulation 5 (1))
- \* Copies of OH&S Committee and other relevant Minutes

- 
- \* Designs/drawings (Construction Regulation 5 (8))
  - \* A list of Contractors (Sub-Contractors) including copies of the agreements between the parties and the type of work being done by each Contractor (Construction Regulation 9)
  - \* Appointment/Designation forms as per (a)(i) & (ii) above.
  - \* Registers as follows:
    - \* Accident/Incident Register (Annexure 1 of the General Administrative Regulations)
    - \* OH&S Representatives Inspection Register
    - \* Asbestos Demolition & Stripping Register
    - \* Batch Plant Inspections
    - \* Construction Vehicles & Mobile Plant Inspections by Controller
    - \* Daily Inspection of Vehicles. Plant and other Equipment by the Operator/ Driver/User
    - \* Demolition Inspection Register
    - \* Designer's Inspection of Structures Record
    - \* Electrical Installations, -Equipment & -Appliances (including Portable Electrical Tools)
    - \* Excavations Inspection
    - \* Explosive Powered Tool Inspection, Maintenance, Issue & Returns Register (incl. cartridges & nails)
    - \* Fall Protection Inspection Register
    - \* First Aid Box Contents
    - \* Fire Equipment Inspection & Maintenance
    - \* Formwork & Support work Inspections
    - \* Hazardous Chemical Substances Record
    - \* Ladder Inspections
    - \* Lifting Equipment Register
    - \* Materials Hoist Inspection Register
    - \* Machinery Safety Inspection Register (incl. machine guards, lock-outs etc.)
    - \* Scaffolding Inspections
    - \* Stacking & Storage Inspection
    - \* Inspection of Structures
    - \* Inspection of Suspended Platforms
    - \* Inspection of Tunnelling Operations
    - \* Inspection of Vessels under Pressure
    - \* Welding Equipment Inspections
    - \* Inspection of Work conducted on or Near Water

---

\* All other applicable records

Thulamela Local Municipality will conduct an audit on the OH&S file of the Principal Contractor from time-to-time.

(e) OH&S Goals & Objectives & Arrangements for Monitoring & Review of OH&S Performance

The Principal Contractor is required to maintain a CIFR of at least 8 (See Annexure 1. to this document: measuring Injury Experience) and report on this to Thulamela Local Municipality on a monthly basis

(f) Notification of Construction Work (Construction Regulation 3.)

The Principal Contractor must, where the Contract meets the requirements laid down in Construction Regulation 3, within 5 working days, notify the Department of Labour of the intention to carry out construction work and use the form (Annexure A in the Construction Regulations) for the purpose. A copy must be held on the OH&S File and a copy must be forwarded to Thulamela Local Municipality for record keeping purposes.

(g) Training, Awareness and Competence

The contents and syllabi of all training required by the Act and Regulations are to be included in the Principal Contractor's OH&S Plan.

(i) General Induction Training

All members of Contractor's Site management as well as all the persons appointed as responsible for OH&S in terms of the Construction and other Regulations will be required to attend a general induction session by the Client

All employees of the principal and other Contractors to be in possession of proof of General Induction training.

(ii) Site Specific Induction Training

The Principal Contractor will be required to develop Contract work project specific induction training based on the Risk Assessments for the Contract work and train all employees and other Contractors and their employees in this.

All employees of the principal and other Contractors to be in possession of proof of Site Specific OH&S Induction training at all times.

(iii) Other Training

All operators, drivers and users of construction vehicles, mobile plant and other equipment to be in possession of valid proof of training.

All employees in jobs requiring training in terms of the Act and Regulations to be in possession of valid proof of training as follows:

OH&S Training Requirements: (as required by the Construction Regulations and as indicated by the OH&S Specification & the Risk Assessment/s):

- \* General Induction (Section 8 of the Act)
- \* Site/Job Specific Induction (also visitors) (Sections 8 & 9 of the Act)
- \* Site/Project Manager
- \* Construction Supervisor



- 
- \* OH&S Representatives (Section 18 (3) of the Act)
  - \* Training of the Appointees indicated above
  - \* Operators & Drivers of Construction Vehicles & Mobile Plant (Construction Regulation 21)
  - \* Basic Fire Prevention & Protection (Environmental Regulations 9 and Construction regulation 27)
  - \* Basic First Aid (General Safety Regulations 3)
  - \* Storekeeping Methods & Safe Stacking (Construction Regulation 26)
  - \* Emergency, Security and Fire Co-coordinator

(iv) Awareness & Promotion

The Principal Contractor is required to have a promotion and awareness scheme in place to create an OH&S culture in employees. The following are some of the methods that may be used:

- Toolbox Talks
- OH&S Posters
- Videos
- Competitions
- Suggestion schemes
- Participative activities such as OH&S Safety circles.

(v) Competence

The Principal Contractor shall ensure that his and other Contractor's personnel appointed are competent and that all training required to do the work safely and without risk to health, has been completed before work commences

The Principal Contractor shall ensure that follow-up and refresher training is conducted as the contract work progresses and the work situation changes.

Records of all training must be kept on the OH&S File for auditing purposes.

(h) Consultation, Communication and Liaison

OH&S Liaison between the Client, the principal Contractor, the other Contractors, the Designer and other concerned parties will be through the OH&S committee as contemplated in above.

In addition to the above, communication may be directly to the Client or his appointed Agent, verbally or in writing, as and when the need arises.

Consultation with the workforce on OH&S matters will be through their Supervisors, OH&S Representatives, the OH&S committee and their elected Trade Union Representatives, if any.

The Principal Contractor will be responsible for the dissemination of all relevant OH&S information to the other Contractors e.g., design changes agreed with the Client and the Designer, instructions by the Client and/or his/her agent, exchange of information between Contractors, the reporting of hazardous/dangerous conditions/ situations etc.

The Principal Contractor will be required to do Site Safety Walks with Thulamela Local Municipality at least on a basis to be determined between the two parties.

---

The principal and other Contractors will be required to conduct Toolbox Talks with their employees on a weekly basis and records of these must be kept on the OH&S File. Employees must acknowledge the receipt of Toolbox Talks which record must, likewise be kept on the OH&S File.

The Principal Contractors most senior manager on site will be required to attend all Thulamela Local Municipality OH&S meetings and

a list of dates, times and venues will be provided to the Principal Contractor by Thulamela Local Municipality.

(i) Checking, Reporting and Corrective Actions

(i) Monthly Audit by Client (Construction Regulation 1(d))

Thulamela Local Municipality will be conducting a Monthly Audit to comply with Construction Regulation 4(1)(d) to ensure that the principal Contractor has implemented and is maintaining the agreed and approved OH&S Plan.

(ii) Other Audits and Inspections by Thulamela Local Municipality:

Thulamela Local Municipality reserves the right to conduct other ad hoc audits and inspections as deemed necessary. This will include Site Safety Walks.

(iii) Conducting an Audit

A representative of the Principal Contractor must accompany Thulamela Local Municipality on all Audits and Inspections and may conduct his/her own audit/inspection at the same time. Each party will, however, take responsibility for the results of his/her own audit/inspection results.

(iv) Contractor's Audits and Inspections

The Principal Contractor is to conduct his own monthly internal audits to verify compliance with his own OH&S Management system as well as of with this specification.

(v) Inspections by OH&S Representative's and other Appointees

OH&S Representatives must conduct weekly inspections of their areas of responsibility and report thereon to their foreman or supervisor whilst other appointees must conduct inspections and report thereon as specified in their appointments e.g. vehicle, plant and machinery drivers, operators and users must conduct daily inspections before start-up.

(vi) Recording and Review of Inspection Results

All the results of the abovementioned inspections to be in writing, reviewed at OH&S committee meetings, endorsed by the chairman of the meeting and placed on the OH&S File.

(vii) Reporting of Inspection Results

The Principal Contractor is required to provide the Client with a monthly report in the format as per the attached annexure 2: SHE Risk Management Report"

(j) Incident Reporting and Investigation

Reporting of Accidents and Incidents (Section 24 and General Administrative Regulation 8 of the OHS Act)

---

The Principal Contractor must report all incidents where an employee is injured on duty to the extent that he/she:

- \* dies
- \* becomes unconscious
- \* loses a limb or part of a limb
- \* is injured or becomes ill to such a degree that he/she is likely either to die or to suffer a permanent physical defect or likely to be unable for a period of at least 14 days either to work or continue with the activity for which he/she was usually employed

OR where:

- \* a major incident occurred
- \* the health or safety of any person was endangered
- \* where a dangerous substance was spilled
- \* the uncontrolled release of any substance under pressure took place
- \* machinery or any part of machinery fractured or failed resulting in flying, falling or uncontrolled moving objects
- \* machinery ran out of control

to Thulamela Local Municipality within two days and to the Provincial Director of the Department of Labour within seven days (Section 24 of the Act & General Administrative Regulation 8.) EXCEPT that, where a person has died, has become unconscious for any reason or has lost a limb or part of a limb or may die or suffer a permanent physical defect, the incident must be reported to both Thulamela Local Municipality and the Provincial Director of the Department of Labour forthwith by telephone, telefax or E-mail.

The Principal Contractor is required to provide Thulamela Local Municipality with copies of all statutory reports required in terms of the Act within 7 days of the incident occurring.

The Principal Contractor is required to provide Thulamela Local Municipality with copies of all internal and external accident/incident investigation reports including the reports contemplated below within 7 days of the incident occurring.

#### Accident and Incident Investigation (General Administrative Regulation 9)

The Principal Contractor is responsible for the investigation of all accidents/incidents where employees and non-employees were injured to the extent that he/she/they had to be referred for medical treatment by a doctor, hospital or clinic

The results of the investigation to be entered into the Accident/Incident Register listed in above.

The Principal Contractor is responsible for the investigation of all minor and non-injury incidents as described in Section 24 (1) (b) & (c) of the Act and keeping a record of the results of such investigations including the steps taken to prevent similar accidents in future.

The Principal Contractor is responsible for the investigation of all road traffic accidents and keeping a record of the results of such investigations including the steps taken to prevent similar accidents in future.

The Thulamela Local Municipality reserves the right to hold its own investigation into an incident or call for an independent external investigation.

---

#### **C3.4.3.1.4 Operational Control**

(a) Emergency Preparedness, Contingency Planning and Response

The Principal Contractor must appoint a competent person to act as Emergency Controller/Coordinator.

The Principal Contractor must conduct an emergency identification exercise and establish what emergencies could possibly develop. He/she must then develop detailed contingency plans and emergency procedures, taking into account any emergency plan that Thulamela Local Municipality may have in place.

The Principal Contractor and the other Contractors must hold regular practice drills of contingency plans and emergency procedures to test them and familiarise employees with them.

(b) First Aid (General Safety Regulation 3)

The Principal Contractor must provide First Aid equipment (including a stretcher) and have qualified First Aider/s as required by General Safety Regulation 3 of the OHS Act.

The Contingency Plan of the Principal Contractor must include the arrangements for speedily and timeously transporting injured/ill person/s to a medical facility or of getting emergency medical aid to person/s that may require it.

The Principal Contractor must have firm arrangements with his other Contractors in place regarding the responsibility of the other Contractors injured/ill employees

(c) Security

The Principal Contractor must establish site access rules and implement and maintain these throughout the construction period. Access control must include the rule that nonemployees will not be allowed on site unaccompanied.

The Principal Contractor must develop a set of Security rules and procedures and maintain these throughout the construction period

(d) Fall Protection (Working in Elevated Positions (Construction regulation 8.)

A pre-emptive Risk Assessment will be required for any work to be carried out above two metres from the ground or any floor level and will be classified as "Work in Elevated Positions".

As far as is practicable, any person working in an elevated position will work from a platform, ladder or other device that is at least as safe as if he/she is working at ground level and whilst working in this position be wearing a single belt with lanyard that will be worn to prevent the person falling from the platform, ladder or other device utilised. This safety belt will be, as far as is possible, secured to a point away from the edge over which the person might fall and the lanyard must be of such a length that the person will not be able to move over the edge.

Alternatively, any platform, slab, deck or surface forming an edge over which a person may fall may be fitted with guard rails at two different heights as prescribed in SABS 085: Code of Practice for the Design, Erection, Use and Inspection of Access Scaffolding.

Where the requirement in is not practicable, the person will be provided with a full body harness that will be worn and attached above the wearer's head at all times and the lanyard must be fitted with a shock absorbing device OR the person must be attached to an approved, by Thulamela Local Municipality, fall arrest system.

Where the requirements are not practicable, a suitable catch net must be erected.

Workers working in elevated positions must be trained to do this safely and without risk to health

Where work on roofs is carried out, the Risk Assessment must take into account the possibility of persons falling through fragile material. Skylights and openings in the roof.

#### **C3.4.3.1.5 Measurement and Payment**

Payment for the contractor's obligations in respect of the occupational Health and Safety act and Construction Regulations shall be made through three payment items described below. The three payment items together shall include full compensation for all personnel (including a dedicated full time Construction Safety Officer), cost and incidentals in respect of compliance with the enforcement of the Health and Safety Specifications, which shall include for the compilation, presentation, implementation and maintenance of the Health and Safety Plan as contemplated. In tendering rates for the three items the contractor shall ensure that the sum of the amounts for the three items shall not be less than one percent (1%) of the Tender Amount.

Item	Unit
<b>B1.1 Contractor's initial obligations in respect of the Occupational Health and Safety Act and Construction Regulations</b>	Lump Sum

The full amount will be paid in one instalment only once: -

- (a) The contractor has notified the Provincial Director of the Department of Labour in writing of the project.
- (b) The contractor has made the required initial appointments of employees and subcontractors.
- (c) The client has approved the contractor's Health and Safety Plan
- (d) The contractor has set up his Health and Safety File.

Item	Unit
<b>B1.2 Contractor's time related obligations in respect of the Occupational Health and Safety Act and Construction Regulations</b>	Month

The tendered monthly amount shall represent full compensation for that part of the contractor's general obligations in terms of the Occupational Health and Safety Act and the Construction Regulations which are mainly a function of time. This includes inter alia payment of all costs for the appointment of all staff contemplated in the construction regulations and the transport of employees on site. Payment will be monthly only after payment for Item B1.1 has been made.

Item	Unit
<b>B1.3 Submission of the Health and Safety File</b>	<b>Lump Sum</b>

The tendered lump sum shall represent full compensation for the contractor meeting all his obligations in respect of the Occupational Health and Safety Act and the Construction Regulations and for the preparation and submission of his Health and Safety File complete as envisaged on this specification to the Client's satisfaction.

This amount will be paid only once the contractor has met all his obligations in respect of the Occupational Health and Safety Act and the Construction Regulations and has submitted his Health and Safety File complete as envisaged on this specification to the client's satisfaction.

**C3.4.3.1.6 Project/Site Specific Requirements**

**See Annexure 3**

**Annexure 1: Measuring Injury Experience**

**Annexure 2: SHE Risk Management Report**

**Annexure 3. List of Risk Assessments**

---

## ANNEXURE 1: MEASURING INJURY EXPERIENCE

Injury experience has traditionally been measured by the use of a disabling injury frequency rate, the so-called "DIFR". The DIFR is calculated by multiplying the number of disabling injuries by 1million and dividing by the number of man-hours worked.

Lately the DIFR has been replaced internationally with a DIIR: disabling injury incidence rate. The only difference between the two rates is that the 10 million in the calculation is replaced with 200 000. (200 000 purported to be the number of hours and average person works in a lifetime.) The use of the two rates above has proved to be somewhat problematical as they are open to manipulation and disabling injuries are often "hidden" by returning the injured employee to the workplace so as not to lose a shift and therefore having to register a disabling injury.

The Construction Industry recently decided to promote the use of a new frequency rate based on the number of compensation injury claims as these are more difficult to hide or manipulate because the reporting of compensable injuries is a legal requirement.

The industry is hoping that adoption of this new measurement of injury experience will enable the industry to monitor itself as far as work related injuries are concerned.

Below follows an explanation of this new rating system.

### COMPENSATION INCIDENCE FREQUENCY RATE (CIFR)

#### FORMULA

No. of Compensation Claims X 200 000 /  
\*220-man hours X No. of Employees

#### DEFINITIONS

No. of Compensation

Claims: The number of claims lodged with the COID insurer for the period under review

200 000: The fixed factor to align the rate with other rates used internationally Manhours Worked

Include: \* Hourly Paid Employees  
\* Sub-contractors (No. of Employees X \*220 each)  
\* Staff (No. of Employees X \*220 hours each)

220 manhours: The \*average number of hours worked by one employee in one month in the Construction industry.

\* Overtime, absence on leave or sick leave, unrecorded after hours' time worked by senior and middle management factored into this average.

No. of Employees: The actual or average number of employees employed for the period under review.

2002/03CIFRSystem



**ANNEXURE 2: EXECUTIVE SHE RISK MANAGEMENT REPORT**

The SAFCEC OH&S committee recently developed the following report in an attempt to standardise on reporting and assist contractors in obtaining a clear picture of their SHE Risk Management performance. It is hoped that clients will also accept this standardised report. Your comments/suggestions for improvement are invited.

EXAMPLE ONLY: ALL INFORMATION IS FICTITIOUS

XYZ construction

**\*SHE RISK MANAGEMENT REPORT**

PERIOD JANUARY TO MARCH 2002

\*(SHE = Safety, Health & Environment)

1. Introduction

We hope that this new format of quarterly SHE Risk Management reporting will provide a clear picture of the company’s performance as far as occupational health & safety is concerned.

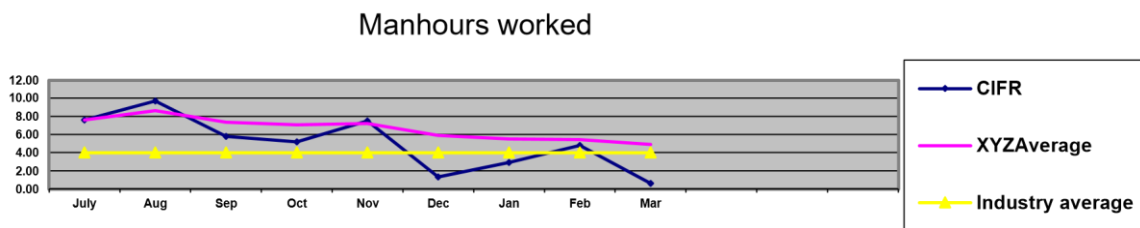
The first quarter of 2002 generally reflected an improvement in injury experience and shows a decline in the number of injuries. Although Building was the only division where there was an increase in compensation claims, figures are still well down from the average 2001 figures. A subcontractor experienced one fatality.

All divisions are eagerly awaiting the final implementation in May of the new electronic SHE Management system that will make the tools to implement the SHE programmes available to all management and supervisory staff.

2. Incident Statistics

Compensation Incident Frequency Rate (CIFR)

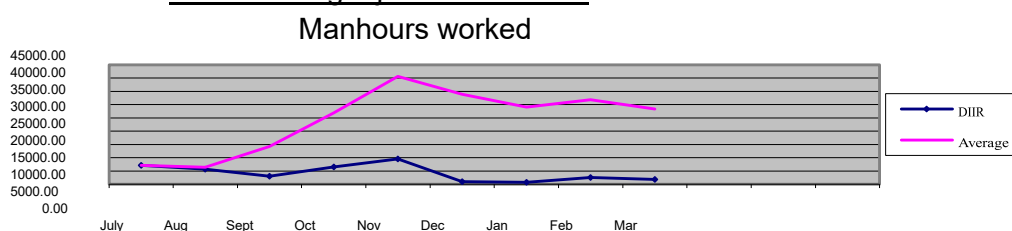
$$\text{CIFR} = \frac{\text{Total No. of Claims against the Workmen’s Compensation Fund} \times 200\,000}{\text{Manhours worked}}$$



2.2.

Disabling Injury Incidence Rate (DIIR)

$$\text{DIIR} = \frac{\text{No. Disabling Injuries} \times 200\,000}{\text{Manhours worked}}$$



### 2.3. Other Major Incidents

Three other major incidents were experienced in the period under review:

- 2.3.1. A major trench collapsed at Job. 00123: XYZ Head Office, Bochum: No personnel injured, extensive damage to foundations: 3 days delay.
- 2.3.2. A concrete dumper ran away when its brakes failed. It smashed into the glass façade of the building on Job 00332: McDonalds, Polokwane. The driver jumped off and was not injured. Cost of damage to façade: R45 000.
- 2.3.3. A storage hut on Job 00567: BP Petrol Station, Swartruggens was demolished by fire when the night watchman made a fire inside the storage hut which contained concrete vibrators and levelling machines. Cost of replacing the hut and machines: R30 000

### 3. RISK AREAS

The following items of concern need priority consideration by management:

- 3.1. New employees must undergo pre-employment medical examinations to:
  - protect XYZ from claims at a later stage ensure that
  - only healthy persons are employed
  - prevent injuries and illness in the workplace enhance XYZ
  - image
- 3.2. Vehicle drivers and plant operators must be instructed to inspect their vehicles daily before start-up using the prescribed checklists to ensure that these are safe to operate and in good condition.

### 4. AUDITS

Three SHE audits will be conducted:

- 4.1.

### 5. TRAINING

Our objective is also to train of employees on the project.

Month	No. of Employees Trained	Course	Source
January	15 15	Induction OH&S Reps	Internal Consultant
February	15 17	Induction OH&S Reps	Internal Consultant
March	30 9 3	Induction OH&S Reps Bomag Rollers	Internal Consultant Supplier

## 6. LEGAL ISSUES

- 6.1. An inspector of the Department of Labour issued an improvement notice on Job 00987: Gillooly's Mall. The notice requires that all scaffolding comply with the SABS standards for the Erection and Maintenance of Access Scaffolding (SABS 085). This is currently being attended to and the inspector will return on 15 April 2002 to ascertain if the notice has been complied with.

## 8. OCCUPATIONAL AIND OTHER HEALTH MATTERS

### 8.1. HIV Aids

The proposed SAFCEC clinic will soon be operational and we will then be able to send our employees who have tested positive to the clinic for counselling and eventual treatment when necessary

The mobile clinic saw and tested fifty employee volunteers at 3 sites this month. Eighteen of them tested positive.

### 8.2. Tuberculosis

The mobile clinic will be calling at Gillooly's mall and Cleveland station on 15 and 16 October respectively to screen employees for TB.

### 8.3. Noise

All suspected noise pollution areas have been tested and the results are awaited. Employees working in areas testing over 85dBa will be issued with suitable hearing protectors.

## 9. ENVIRONMENTAL MEASURES

Inspectors from the Botswana Department of the Environment visited Djwaneng and inspected the site and yard. They gave it a "clean bill of health" and advised that we should increase the dust control measures by spraying roads three times per day instead of the present twice per day.

## 10. ACHIEVEMENTS/AWARDS

- 10.1. The client at Djwaneng (Job 00786) awarded the XYZ site first position in the housekeeping competition conducted bimonthly by the Client's SHE managers. The project manager and his team are to be congratulated for this sterling effort.
- 10.2. Job 0987: Refurbishment of Pretoria Main Railway Station has just completed 1million compensation claim free days. This was no easy achievement if we consider the conditions being worked under after the extensive fire that caused major damage.

SHE Risk Manager

## ANNEXURE 3: LIST OF RISK ASSESSMENTS

- \* Clearing & Grubbing of the Area/Site
- \* Site Establishment including:
  - Office/s
  - Secure/safe storage for materials, plant & equipment
  - Ablutions
  - Sheltered eating area

- Maintenance workshop
- Vehicle access to the site
- \* Dealing with existing structures
- \* Location of existing services
- \* Installation and maintenance of temporary construction electrical supply, lighting and equipment
- \* Adjacent land uses/surrounding property exposures
- \* Boundary and access control/Public Liability Exposures (NB: the Employer is also responsible for the OH&S of non-employees affected by his/her work activities.)
- \* Health risks arising from neighbouring as well as own activities and from the environment e.g. threats by dogs, bees, snakes, lightning etc.
- \* Exposure to noise
- \* Exposure to vibration
- \* Protection against dehydration and heat exhaustion
- \* Protection from wet & cold conditions
- \* Dealing with HIV/Aids and other diseases
- \* Use of Portable Electrical Equipment including
  - Angle grinder
  - Electrical drilling machine
  - Skill saw
- \* Excavations including
  - Ground/soil conditions
  - Trenching
  - Shoring
  - Drainage of trench
- \* Welding including
  - Arc Welding
  - Gas welding
  - Flame cutting
  - Use of LP gas torches and appliances
- \* Loading & offloading of trucks
- \* Aggregate/sand and other materials delivery
- \* Manual and mechanical handling
- \* Lifting and lowering operations
- \* Driving & operation of construction vehicles and mobile plant including
  - Trenching machine
  - Excavator
  - Bomag roller
  - Plate compactor
  - Front end loader
  - Mobile cranes and the ancillary lifting tackle
  - Parking of vehicles & mobile plant
  - Towing of vehicles & mobile plant
- \* Use and storage of flammable liquids and other hazardous substances
- \* Layering and bedding
- \* Installation of pipes in trenches
- \* Pressure testing of pipelines

- \* Backfilling of trenches
- \* Protection against flooding
- \* Gabion work
- \* Use of explosives
- \* Protection from overhead power lines
- \* As discovered by the Principal Contractor's hazard identification exercise
- \* As discovered from any inspections and audits conducted by the Client or by the Principal Contractor or any other Contractor on site
- \* As discovered from any accident/incident investigation.

---

### **C3.4.3.2 ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PLAN**

#### CONTENTS

C3.4.3.2.1	SCOPE
C3.4.3.2.2	DEFINITIONS
C3.4.3.2.3	IDENTIFICATION OF ENVIRONMENTAL ASPECTS AND IMPACTS
C3.4.3.2.4	LEGAL REQUIREMENTS
C3.4.3.2.5	ADMINISTRATION OF ENVIRONMENTAL OBLIGATIONS
C3.4.3.2.6	TRAINING
C3.4.3.2.7	ACTIVITIES/ASPECTS CAUSING IMPACTS
C3.4.3.2.8	ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT OF CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITIES
C3.4.3.2.9	RECORD KEEPING
C3.4.3.2.10	COMPLIANCE AND PENALTIES
C3.4.3.2.11	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

#### **C3.4.3.2.1. SCOPE**

This environmental management programme (EMP) sets out the methods by which proper environmental controls are to be implemented by the contractor. The duration over which the contractor's controls shall be in place cover the construction period of the project as well as the limited time after contract completion defined by the General Conditions of Contract, and the project specifications, as the defects notification period (maintenance period).

The provisions of this EMP are binding on the contractor during the life of the contract. They are to be read in conjunction with all the documents that comprise the suite of documents for this contract. In the event that any conflict occurs between the terms of the EMP and the project specifications or Record of Decision, the terms herein shall be subordinate.

The EMP is a dynamic document subject to similar influences and changes as are brought by variations to the provisions of the project specification. Any substantial changes shall be submitted to the Thulamela Local Municipality in writing for approval.

The EMP identifies the following:

Construction activities that will impact on the environment.

Specifications with which the contractor shall comply in order to protect the environment from the identified impacts.

Actions that shall be taken in the event of non-compliance.

---

### **C3.4.3.2.2. DEFINITIONS**

**Alien Vegetation:** alien vegetation is defined as undesirable plant growth which shall include, but not be limited to, all declared category 1 and 2 listed invader species as set out in the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (CARA) regulations. Other vegetation deemed to be alien shall be those plant species that show the potential to occupy in number, any area within the defined construction area and which are declared to be undesirable.

**Construction Activity:** a construction activity is any action taken by the contractor, his subcontractors, suppliers or personnel during the construction process as defined in the South African National Roads Agency Limited and National Roads Act, 1998 (Act No. 7, 1998)

**Environment:** environment means the surroundings within which humans exist and that could be made up of -

- the land, water and atmosphere of the earth;
- micro-organisms, plant and animal life;
- any part or combination of (i) and (ii) and the interrelationships among and between them; and
- the physical, chemical, aesthetic and cultural properties and conditions of the foregoing that influence human health and well-being.

**Environmental Aspect:** an environmental aspect is any component of a contractor's construction activity that is likely to interact with the environment.

**Environmental Impact:** an impact or environmental impact is the change to the environment, whether desirable or undesirable, that will result from the effect of a construction activity. An impact may be the direct or indirect consequence of a construction activity.

**Record of Decision:** a record of decision is a written statement from the Limpopo Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism, that records its approval of a planned undertaking to improve, upgrade or rehabilitate a section of road and the mitigating measures required to prevent or reduce the effects of environmental impacts during the life of a contract.

**Road Reserve:** the road reserve is a corridor of land, defined by co-ordinates and proclamation, within which the road, including access intersections or interchanges, is situated. A road reserve may, or may not, be bounded by a fence.

**Road Width:** for the purposes of the EMP, the road width is defined as the area within the road reserve i.e. fence line to fence line, but also includes all areas beyond the road reserve that are affected by the continuous presence of the road, e.g. a reach of a water course.

### **C3.4.3.2.3. IDENTIFICATION OF ENVIRONMENTAL ASPECTS AND IMPACTS**

The contractor shall identify likely aspects before commencing with any construction activity. Examples of environment aspects include:

- waste generation
- stormwater discharge
- emission of pollutants into the atmosphere
- chemical use operations
- energy use operations
- water use operations
- use of natural resources
- noise generation

Thereafter the contractor shall programme his work in such a way that each cause and effect of a construction activity is also identified and the activity planned so as to prevent any impact from happening. If prevention is not practicable, or in the event of mishap or misapplication, the Contractor shall provide plans and measures for the Engineer's approval, which will limit and contain the magnitude, duration and intensity of the impact. The contractor shall demonstrate that he/she is capable of carrying out any repair and reinstatement of the damaged environment. These requirements shall be concurrent with the time constraints to produce an approved construction programme according to subclause 8.3 as amended by Particular Condition of the general conditions of contract and clause B1204 of these project specifications.

Listed below are some environmental impacts that could adversely alter an aspect of the environment through usual construction activities:

Pollution of atmosphere, soil or water

Destruction or removal of fauna and flora and effect on biological diversity Deformation of the landscape

Soil erosion

Destruction of historical/heritage sites

Effect on the built environment

Effect on agricultural land and wetlands

General good construction practice will play an important role in avoiding the occurrence of an Impact. The contractor's attention is drawn, in this regard, to C1008. Environmental Management of Construction Activities

#### **C3.4.3.2.4. LEGAL REQUIREMENTS**

##### **a) General**

Construction will be according to the best industry practices, as identified in the project documents. This EMP, which forms an integral part of the contract documents, informs the contractor as to his duties in the fulfilment of the project objectives, with particular reference to the prevention and mitigation of environmental impacts caused by construction activities associated with the project. The contractor should note that obligations imposed by the EMP are legally binding in terms of environmental statutory legislation and in terms of the additional conditions to the general conditions of contract that pertain to this project. In the event that any rights and obligations contained in this document contradict those specified in the standard or project specifications then the latter shall prevail. b) Statutory and other applicable legislation

The contractor is deemed to have made himself conversant with all legislation pertaining to the environment, including provincial and local government ordinances, which may be applicable to the contract.

#### **C3.4.3.2.5. ADMINISTRATION OF ENVIRONMENTAL OBLIGATIONS**

##### **a) Appointment of a Designated Environmental Officer (DEO)**

For the purposes of implementing the conditions contained herein, the contractor shall submit to the engineer for approval the appointment of a nominated representative of the contractor as the DEO for the contract. The request shall be given, in writing, at least fourteen days before the start of any work clearly setting out reasons for the nomination, and with sufficient detail to enable the engineer to make a decision. The engineer will, within seven days of receiving the request, approve, reject or call for more information on the nomination. Once a nominated representative of the contractor has been approved, he/she shall be the DEO and shall be the responsible person for ensuring that the provisions of the EMP are complied with during the life of the contract. The engineer will be responsible for issuing instructions to the contractor where environmental



considerations call for action to be taken. The DEO shall submit regular written reports to the engineer, but not less frequently than once a month.

The engineer shall have the authority to instruct the contractor to replace the DEO if, in the engineer's opinion, the appointed officer is not fulfilling his/her duties in terms of the requirements of the EMP or this specification. Such instruction will be in writing and shall clearly set out the reasons why a replacement is required.

There shall be an approved DEO on the site at all times.

b) Administration

Before the contractor begins each construction activity the DEO shall give to the engineer a written statement setting out the following:

The type of construction activity.

Locality where the activity will take place.

Identification of the environmental aspects and impacts that might result from the activity.

Methodology for impact prevention for each activity or aspect.

Methodology for impact containment for each activity or aspect.

Emergency/disaster incident and reaction procedures.

Treatment and continued maintenance of impacted environment.

The contractor may provide such information in advance of any or all construction activities provided that new submissions shall be given to the engineer whenever there is a change or variation to the original.

The engineer may provide comment on the methodology and procedures proposed by the DEO, but he shall not be responsible for the contractor's chosen measures of impact mitigation and emergency/disaster management systems. However, the contractor shall demonstrate at inception and at least once during the contract that the approved measures and procedures function properly.

c) Good Housekeeping

The Contractor shall undertake "good housekeeping" practices during construction as stated in clause 1217 of the COLTO Standard Specifications for Roads and Bridges and subclauses 4.3.1 and 4.3.2 of the General Conditions of Contract. This will help avoid disputes on responsibility and allow for the smooth running of the contract as a whole. Good housekeeping extends beyond the wise practice of construction methods that leaves production in a safe state from the ravages of weather to include the care for and preservation of the environment within which the site is situated.

C3.4.3.2.6. TRAINING

The designated environmental officer (DEO) must be conversant with all legislation pertaining to the environment applicable to this contract and must be appropriately trained in environmental management and must possess the skills necessary to impart environmental management skills to all personnel involved in the contract.

The contractor shall ensure that adequate environmental training takes place. All employees shall have been given an induction presentation on environmental awareness. Where possible, the presentation needs to be conducted in the language of the employees. The environmental training should, as a minimum, include the following:

- The importance of conformance with all environmental policies
- The environmental impacts, actual or potential, of their work activities;
- The environmental benefits of improved personal performance;

- Their roles and responsibilities in achieving conformance with the environmental policy and procedures and with the requirement of the Agency's environmental management systems, including emergency preparedness and response requirements;
- The potential consequences of departure from specified operating procedures;
- The mitigation measures required to be implemented when carrying out their work activities.

In the case of permanent staff, the contractor shall provide evidence that such induction courses have been presented. In the case of new staff (including contract labour) the contractor shall inform the engineer when and how he/she intends concluding his environmental training obligations.

---

### **C3.4.3.2.7. ACTIVITIES/ASPECTS CAUSING IMPACTS**

A list of possible causes of environmental impacts that occur during construction activities is given in Table 7/1: Aspects or Activities that Cause Environmental Impacts during Construction Activities, which is to be found at the end of this part. This list is not exhaustive, and shall be used for guideline purposes only.

### **C3.4.3.2.8. ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT OF CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITIES**

a) Site Establishment

i) Site Plan

The contractor shall establish his construction camps, offices, workshops, staff accommodation and testing facilities on the site in a manner that does not adversely affect the environment. However, before construction can begin, the contractor shall submit to the engineer for his approval, plans of the exact location, extent and construction details of these facilities and the impact mitigation measures the contractor proposes to put in place.

The plans shall detail the locality as well as the layout of the waste treatment facilities for litter, kitchen refuse, sewage and workshop-derived effluents. The site offices should not be sited in close proximity to steep areas, as this will increase soil erosion. Preferred locations would be flat areas along the route. If the route traverses water courses, streams and rivers, it is recommended that the offices, and in particular the ablution facilities, aggregate stockpiles, spoil areas and hazardous material stockpiles are located as far away as possible from any water course as possible. Regardless of the chosen site, the contractor's intended mitigation measures shall be indicated on the plan. The site plan shall be submitted not later than the first site meeting. Detailed, electronic colour photographs shall be taken of the proposed site before any clearing may commence. These records are to be kept by the engineer for consultation during rehabilitation of the site. Read with COLTO Specification 1302(a), 1402 (e).

ii) Vegetation

The contractor has a responsibility to inform his staff of the need to be vigilant against any practice that will have a harmful effect on vegetation.

The natural vegetation encountered on the site is to be conserved and left as intact as possible. Vegetation planted at the site shall be indigenous and in accordance with instructions issued by the engineer. Only trees and shrubs directly affected by the works, and such others as may be indicated by the engineer in writing, may be felled or cleared. In wooded areas where natural vegetation has been cleared out of necessity, the same species of indigenous trees as were occurring, shall be re-established.

The project specification for the rehabilitation of the grass cover shall be strictly adhered to. Any proclaimed weed or alien species that propagates during the contract period shall be cleared by hand before seeding. (Read in conjunction with COLTO Specification 5801(b), 5802(b), (c), (d) and (e), 5804, 5805, 5806 and 5807). Fires shall only be allowed in facilities or equipment specially constructed for this purpose. A firebreak shall be cleared and maintained around the perimeter of the camp and office sites.

iii) Rehabilitation

The area where the site offices were erected will require rehabilitation at the end of the contract. All construction material, including concrete slabs and braai areas shall be removed from the site on completion of the contract.

iv) Water for human consumption

Water for human consumption shall be available at the site offices and at other convenient locations on site.

All effluent water from the camp / office sites shall be disposed of in a properly designed and constructed system, situated so as not to adversely affect water sources (streams, rivers, pans dams etc). Only domestic type wastewater shall be allowed to enter this drain.

v) Heating and Cooking fuel

The contractor shall provide adequate facilities for his staff so that they are not encouraged to supplement their comforts on site by accessing what can be taken from the natural surroundings. The contractor shall ensure that energy sources are available at all times for construction and supervision personnel for heating and cooking purposes.

b) Sewage treatment

Particular reference in the site establishment plan shall be given to the treatment of sewage generated at the site offices, site laboratory and staff accommodation and at all localities on the site where there will be a concentration of labour. Sanitary arrangements should be to the satisfaction of project management, the local authorities and legal requirements.

Safe and effective sewage treatment will require one of the following sewage handling methods: septic tanks and soak-aways, dry-composition toilets such as "enviro-loos", or the use of chemical toilets which are supplied and maintained by a subcontractor. The type of sewage treatment will depend on the geology of the area selected, the duration of the contract and proximity (availability) of providers of chemical toilets. Should a soak-away system be used, it shall not be closer than 800 metres from any natural water course or water retention system. The waste material generated from these facilities shall be serviced on a regular basis. The positioning of the chemical toilets shall be done in consultation with the engineer. Read with COLTO Specifications 1402(g) and 1404(a).

Toilets and latrines shall be easily accessible and shall be positioned within walking distance from wherever employees are employed on the works. Use of the veld for this purpose shall not, under any circumstances, be allowed.

Outside toilets shall be provided with locks and doors and shall be secured to prevent them from blowing over. The toilets shall also be placed outside areas susceptible to flooding. The contractor shall arrange for regular emptying of toilets and shall be entirely responsible for enforcing their use and for maintaining such latrines in a clean, orderly and sanitary condition to the satisfaction of the engineer.

c) Waste Management

The contractor's intended methods for waste management and waste minimisation shall be implemented at the outset of the contract. All personnel shall be instructed to dispose of all waste in the proper manner.

i) Solid Waste

Solid waste shall be stored in an appointed area in covered, tip proof metal drums for collection and disposal. A refuse control system shall be established for the collection and removal of refuse to the satisfaction of the engineer. Disposal of solid waste shall be at a Department of Water Affairs and Forestry (DWAF) licensed landfill site or at a site approved by DWAF in the event that an existing operating landfill site is not within reasonable distance from the site offices and staff accommodation. No waste shall be burned or buried at or near the site offices, nor anywhere else on the site, including the approved solid waste disposal site. Read with COLTO Specification 1404(a).

ii) Litter

No littering by construction workers shall be allowed. During the construction period, the facilities shall be maintained in a neat and tidy condition and the site shall be kept free of litter.

Measures shall be taken to reduce the potential for litter and negligent behaviour with regard to the disposal of all refuse. At all places of work the contractor shall provide litter collection facilities for later safe disposal at approved sites. (Read with COLTO Specification 1302(b)).

iii) Hazardous waste

Hazardous waste such as bitumen, tar, oils etc. shall be disposed of in a Department of Water Affairs and Forestry approved landfill site. Special care shall be taken to avoid spillage of tar or bitumen products such as binders or pre-coating fluid to avoid water-soluble phenols from entering the ground or contaminating water.

Under no circumstances shall the spoiling of tar or bituminous products on the site, over embankments, in borrow pits or any burying, be allowed. Unused or rejected tar or bituminous products shall be returned to the supplier's production plant. Any spillage of tar or bituminous products shall be attended to immediately and affected areas shall be promptly reinstated to the satisfaction of the engineer.

d) Control at the workshop

The contractor's management and maintenance of his plant and machinery will be strictly monitored according to the criteria given below, regardless whether it is serviced on the site (i.e. at the place of construction activity or at a formalised workshop).

i) Safety

All the necessary handling and safety equipment required for the safe use of petrochemicals and oils shall be provided by the contractor to, and used or worn by, the staff whose duty it is to manage and maintain the contractor's and his sub-contractors and supplier's plant, machinery and equipment.

ii) Hazardous Material Storage

Petrochemicals, oils and identified hazardous substances shall only be stored under controlled conditions. All hazardous materials e.g. tar or bitumen binders shall be stored in a secured, appointed area that is fenced and has restricted entry. Storage of tar or bituminous products shall only take place using suitable containers to the approval of the engineer.

The contractor shall provide proof to the engineer that relevant authorisation to store such substances has been obtained from the relevant authority. In addition, hazard signs indicating the nature of the stored materials shall be displayed on the storage facility or containment structure. Before containment or storage facilities can be erected the contractor shall furnish the engineer with details of the preventative measures, he proposes to install in order to mitigate against pollution of the surrounding environment from leaks or spillage. The preferred method shall be a concrete floor that is bunded. Any deviation from the method will require proof from the relevant authority that the alternative method proposed is acceptable to that authority. The proposals shall also indicate the emergency procedures in the event of misuse or spillage that will negatively affect an individual or the environment.

iii) Fuel and Gas Storage

Fuel shall be stored in a secure area in a steel tank supplied and maintained by the fuel suppliers. An adequate bund wall, 110% of volume, shall be provided for fuel and diesel areas to accommodate any leakage spillage or overflow of these substances. The area inside the bund wall shall be lined with an impervious lining to prevent infiltration of the fuel into the soil. Any leakage, spillage or overflow of fuel shall be attended to without delay.

Gas welding cylinders and LPG cylinders shall be stored in a secure, well-ventilated area.

iv) Oil and Lubricant Waste

Used oil, lubricants and cleaning materials from the maintenance of vehicles and machinery shall be collected in a holding tank and sent back to the supplier. Water and oil should be separated in an oil trap. Oils collected in this manner, shall be retained in a safe holding tank and removed from site by a specialist oil recycling company for disposal at approved waste disposal sites for toxic/hazardous materials. Oil collected by a mobile servicing unit shall be stored in the service unit's sludge tank and discharged into the safe holding tank for collection by the specialist oil recycling company.

All used filter materials shall be stored in a secure bin for disposal off site. Any contaminated soil shall be removed and replaced. Soils contaminated by oils and lubricants shall be collected and disposed of at a facility designated by the local authority to accept contaminated materials.

e) Clearing the Site

In all areas where the contractor intends to, or is required to clear the natural vegetation and soil, either within the road reserve, or at designated or instructed areas outside the road reserve, a plan of action shall first be submitted to the engineer for his approval.

The plan shall contain a photographic record and chainage/land reference of the areas to be disturbed. This shall be submitted to the engineer for his records before any disturbance/stockpiling may occur. The record shall be comprehensive and clear, allowing for easy identification during subsequent inspections.

The contractor shall be responsible for the re-establishment of grass within the road reserve boundaries for all areas disturbed during road construction. This includes, for example, service roads, stockpile areas, stop/go facilities, windrows and wherever material generated for, or from, road construction has to be stored temporarily or otherwise within the road reserve, or at designated or instructed areas outside the road reserve. This responsibility shall extend until expiry of the defect's notification period.

f) Soil Management

i) Topsoil

Topsoil shall be removed from all areas where physical disturbance of the surface will occur and shall be stored and adequately protected. The contract will provide for the stripping and stockpiling of topsoil from the site for later re-use. Topsoil is considered to be the natural soil covering, including all the vegetation and organic matter. Depth may vary at each site. The areas to be cleared of topsoil shall include the storage areas. All topsoil stockpiles and windrows shall be maintained throughout the contract period in a weed-free condition. Weeds appearing on the stockpiled or windrowed topsoil shall be removed by hand. Soils contaminated by hazardous substances shall be disposed of at an approved Department of Water Affairs and Forestry waste disposal site. (Read with COLTO Specifications 3104(a), 5802(a), (g), 5804(a), (b) and (c)). The topsoil stockpiles shall be stored, shaped and sited in such a way that they do not interfere with the flow of water to cause damming or erosion, or itself be eroded by the action of water. Stockpiles of topsoil shall not exceed a height of 2m, and if they are to be left for longer than 6 months, shall be analysed, and if necessary, upgraded before replacement. Stockpiles shall be protected against infestation by weeds.

The contractor shall ensure that no topsoil is lost due to erosion either by wind or water. Areas to be topsoiled and grassed shall be done so systematically to allow for quick cover and reduction in the chance of heavy topsoil losses due to unusual weather patterns. The Contractor's programme shall clearly show the proposed rate of progress of the application of topsoil and grassing. The contractor shall be held responsible for the replacement, at his own cost, for any unnecessary loss of topsoil due to his failure to work according to the progress plan approved by the engineer. The contractor's responsibility shall also extend to the clearing of drainage or water

---

systems within and beyond the boundaries of the road reserve that may have been affected by such negligence.

ii) Subsoil

The subsoil is the layer of soil immediately beneath the topsoil. It shall be removed, to a depth instructed by the engineer, and stored separately from the topsoil if not used for road building. This soil shall be replaced in the excavation in the original order it was removed for rehabilitation purposes.

g) Drainage

The quality, quantity and flow direction of any surface water runoff shall be established prior to disturbing any area for construction purposes. Cognisance shall be taken of these aspects and incorporated into the planning of all construction activities. Before a site is developed or expanded, it shall be established how this development or expansion will affect the drainage pattern. Recognised water users / receivers shall not be adversely affected by the expansion or re-development. No water source shall be polluted in any way due to proposed changes.

Streams, rivers, pans, wetlands, dams, and their catchments shall be protected from erosion and from direct or indirect spillage of pollutants such as refuse, garbage, cement, concrete, sewage, chemicals, fuels, oils, aggregate, tailings, wash water, organic materials and bituminous or tar products.

The contractor shall submit to the engineer his proposals for prevention, containment and rehabilitation measures against environmental damage of the identified water and drainage systems that occur on the site. Consideration shall be given to the placement of sedimentation ponds or barriers where the soils are of a dispersive nature or where toxic fluids are used in the construction process. The sedimentation ponds must be large enough to contain runoff so that they function properly under heavy rain conditions.

h) Earthworks and Layer-works

This section includes all construction activities that involve the mining of all materials, and their subsequent placement, stockpile, spoil, treatment or batching, for use in the permanent works, or temporary works in the case of deviations. Before any stripping prior to the commencement of construction, the contractor shall have complied with the requirements of sections C1008 (e) and C1008 (g). In addition, the contractor shall take cognisance of the requirements set out below.

i) Quarries and borrow pits

the contractor's attention is drawn to the requirement of the Department of Minerals and Energy, that before entry into any quarry or borrow pit, an EMP for the establishment, operation and closure of the quarry or borrow pit shall have been approved by the Department. It is the responsibility of the contractor to ensure that he is in possession of the approved EMP or a copy thereof, prior to entry into the quarry or borrow pit. The conditions imposed by the relevant EMP are legally binding on the contractor and may be more extensive and explicit than the requirements of this specification. In the event of any conflict occurring between the requirements of the specific EMP and these specifications the former shall apply. The cost of complying with the requirements shall be deemed to be included in existing rates in the Bill of Quantities. (Read with COLTO Specification 3100 and 3200).

ii) Excavation, hauling and placement

The contractor shall provide the engineer with detailed plans of his intended construction processes prior to starting any cut or fill or layer. The plans shall detail the number of personnel and plant to be used and the measures by which the impacts of pollution (noise, dust, litter, fuel, oil, sewage), erosion, vegetation destruction and deformation of landscape will be prevented, contained and rehabilitated. Particular attention shall also be given to the impact that such activities will have on the adjacent built environment. The contractor shall demonstrate his "good housekeeping", particularly with respect to closure at the end of every day so that the site is left

---

in a safe condition from rainfall overnight or over periods when there is no construction activity.  
(Read with COLTO Standard Specification clauses 1217 and 3309)

iii) Spoil sites

The contractor shall be responsible for the safe siting, operation, maintenance and closure of any spoil site he uses during the contract period, including the defects notification period. This shall include existing spoil sites that are being re-entered. Before spoil sites may be used proposals for their locality, intended method of operation, maintenance and rehabilitation shall be given to the engineer for his approval. The location of these spoil sites shall have signed approval from the affected landowner before submission to the engineer. No spoil site shall be located within 500m of any watercourse. A photographic record shall be kept of all spoil sites for monitoring purposes. This includes before the site is used and after re-vegetation.

The use of approved spoil sites for the disposal of hazardous or toxic wastes shall be prohibited unless special measures are taken to prevent leaching of the toxins into the surrounding environment. Such special measures shall require the approval of the relevant provincial or national authority. The same shall apply for the disposal of solid waste generated from the various camp establishments. The engineer will assist the contractor in obtaining the necessary approval if requested by the contractor.

Spoil sites will be shaped to fit the natural topography. These sites shall receive a minimum of 75mm topsoil and be grassed with the recommended seed mixture. Slopes shall not exceed a vertical: horizontal ratio of 1:3. Only under exceptional circumstances will approval be given to exceed this ratio. Appropriate grassing measures to minimise soil erosion shall be undertaken by the contractor. This will include both strip and full sodding. The contractor may motivate to the engineer for other acceptable stabilising methods. The engineer may only approve a completed spoil site at the end of the defect's notification period upon receipt from the contractor of a landowner's clearance notice and an engineer's certificate certifying slope stability (read with COLTO standard specifications clause 1214. The contractor's cost incurred in obtaining the necessary certification for opening and closing of spoil sites shall be deemed to be included in the tendered rates for spoiling.

iv) Stockpiles

The contractor shall plan his activities so that materials excavated from borrow pits and cuttings, in so far as possible, can be transported direct to and placed at the point where it is to be used. However, should temporary stockpiling become necessary, the areas for the stockpiling of excavated and imported material shall be indicated and demarcated on the site plan submitted in writing to the engineer for his approval, together with the contractor's proposed measures for prevention, containment and rehabilitation against environmental damage.

The areas chosen shall have no naturally occurring indigenous trees and shrubs present that may be damaged during operations. Care shall be taken to preserve all vegetation in the immediate area of these temporary stockpiles. During the life of the stockpiles the contractor shall at all times ensure that they are:

- Positioned and sloped to create the least visual impact;
- Constructed and maintained so as to avoid erosion of the material and contamination of surrounding environment; and
- Kept free from all alien/undesirable vegetation.

After the stockpiled material has been removed, the site shall be re-instated to its original condition. No foreign material generated / deposited during construction shall remain on site.

Areas affected by stockpiling shall be landscaped, top soiled, grassed and maintained at the contractor's cost until clearance from the engineer and the relevant Authority is received.



---

Material milled from the existing road surface that is temporarily stockpiled in areas approved by the engineer within the road reserve, shall be subject to the same condition as other stockpiled materials. Excess materials from windrows, in-situ milling or any detritus of material from road construction activities may not be swept off the road and left unless specifically instructed to do so in the contract drawing or under instruction from the engineer

In all cases, the engineer shall approve the areas for stockpiling and disposal of construction rubble before any operation commences and shall approve their clause only when they have been satisfactorily rehabilitated. (Read with COLTO Specification 3203 and 4306).

v) Blasting activities

Wherever blasting activity is required on the site (including quarries and/or borrow pits) the contractor shall rigorously adhere to the relevant statutes and regulations that control the use of explosives. In addition, the contractor shall, prior to any drilling of holes in preparation for blasting, supply the engineer with a locality plan of the blast site on which shall be shown the zones of influence of the ground and air shock-waves and expected limits of fly-rock. The plan shall show each dwelling, structure and service within the zones of influence and record all details of the dwellings/structures/services including existing positions, lengths and widths of cracks, as well as the condition of doors, windows, roofing, wells, boreholes etc. The contractor, alone, shall be responsible for any costs that can be attributed to blasting activities, including the collection of fly-rock from adjacent lands and fields. The submission of such a plan shall not in any way absolve the contractor from his responsibilities in this regard. The contractor shall also indicate to the engineer the manner in which he intends to advertise to the adjacent communities and/or road users the times and delays to be expected for each individual blast.

i) Batching sites

Asphalt plants are considered scheduled processes listed in the second schedule to the Atmospheric Pollution Prevention Act, 1965 (Act No. 45 of 1965). Should the use of an asphalt plant be considered on site, the contractor shall be responsible to obtain the necessary permit from the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, regardless of where they are sited.

Crushing plants and concrete batching plants, whether sited inside or outside of defined quarry or borrow pit areas, shall be subject to the requirements of the Department of Minerals and Energy legislation as well as the applicable industrial legislation that governs gas and dust emissions into the atmosphere. Such sites will be the subject of regular inspections by the relative authorities during the life of the project. In addition, the selection, entry onto, operation, maintenance, closure and rehabilitation of such sites shall be the same as for those under section C1008(h)(iii), with the exception that the contractor shall provide additional measures to prevent, contain and rehabilitate against environmental damage from toxic/hazardous substances. In this regard the contractor shall provide plans that take into account such additional measures as concrete floors, bunded storage facilities, linings to drainage channels and settlement dams. Ultimate approval of these measures shall be from the relevant national authority, as shall approval of closure. The engineer will assist the contractor in his submissions to the relevant authority.

Effluent from concrete batch plants and crusher plants shall be treated in a suitable designated sedimentation dam to the legally required standards to prevent surface and groundwater pollution. The designs of such a facility should be submitted to the engineer for approval.

The contractor shall invite the relevant department to inspect the site within 2 months after any plant is commissioned and at regular intervals thereafter, not exceeding 12 months apart

j) Spillages

Streams, rivers and dams shall be protected from direct or indirect spillage of pollutants such as refuse, garbage, cement, concrete, sewage, chemicals, fuels, oils, aggregate, tailings, wash water, organic materials and tar or bituminous products. In the event of a spillage, the contractor shall be liable to arrange for professional service providers to clear the affected area.

Responsibility for spill treatment lies with the contractor. The individual responsible for, or who discovers a hazardous waste spill must report the incident to his/her DEO or to the engineer. The Designated Environmental Officer will assess the situation in consultation with the engineer and act as required. In all cases, the immediate response shall be to contain the spill. The exact treatment of polluted soil / water shall be determined by the contractor in consultation with the DEO and the engineer. Areas cleared of hazardous waste shall be re-vegetated according to the engineer's instructions.

Should water downstream of the spill be polluted, and fauna and flora show signs of deterioration or death, specialist hydrological or ecological advice will be sought for appropriate treatment and remedial procedures to be followed. The requirement for such input shall be agreed with the engineer. The costs of containment and rehabilitation shall be for the contractor's account, including the costs of specialist input.

k) Areas of Specific Importance

Any area, as determined and identified within the project document as sensitive or of special interest within the site shall be treated according to the express instructions contained in these specifications or the approved EMP. The contractor may offer alternative solutions to the engineer in writing should he consider, that construction will be affected in any way by the hindrance of the designated sensitive area or feature. However, the overriding principle is that such defined areas requiring protection shall not be changed. Every effort to identify such areas within the site will have been made prior to the project going out to tender. The discovery of other sites with archaeological or historical interest that have not been identified shall require ad hoc treatment.

i) Archaeological Sites

If an artefact on site is uncovered, work in the immediate vicinity shall be stopped immediately. The contractor shall take reasonable precautions to prevent any person from removing or damaging any such article and shall immediately upon discovery thereof inform the engineer of such discovery. The South African Heritage Research Agency (SAHRA) is to be contacted who will appoint an archaeological consultant. Work may only resume once clearance is given in writing by the archaeologist. (Read with COLTO General Condition of Contract Subclause 4.24 as amended by Particular Condition).

ii) Graves and middens

If a grave or midden is uncovered on site, or discovered before the commencement of work, then all work in the immediate vicinity of the graves/middens shall be stopped and the engineer informed of the discovery. SAHRA should be contacted and in the case of graves, arrangements made for an undertaker to carry out exhumation and reburial. The Employer will be responsible for attempts to contact family of the deceased and for the site where the exhumed remains can be re-interred. (Read with COLTO General Conditions of Contract Sub-clause 4.24 as amended by Particular Condition).

l) Noise Control

The contractor shall endeavour to keep noise generating activities to a minimum. Noises that could cause a major disturbance, for instance blasting and crushing activities, should only be carried out during daylight hours. Compliance with the appropriate legislation with respect to noise, shall be mandatory.

Should noise generating activities have to occur at night the people in the vicinity of the drilling shall be warned about the noise well in advance and the activities kept to a minimum.

m) Dust Control

Dust caused by strong winds shall be controlled by means of water spray vehicles. Dust omission from batching plants shall be subject to the relevant legislation and shall be the subject of inspection by the relevant office of the Department of Minerals and Energy.

n) Alien Vegetation

The contractor shall be held responsible for the removal of alien vegetation within the road reserve disturbed during road construction. This includes, for example, service roads, stockpile areas, stop/go facilities, windrows and wherever material generated for or from road construction has been stored temporarily or otherwise within the road reserve. This responsibility shall extend for the duration of the defect's notification period.

**C3.4.3.2.9. RECORD KEEPING**

The engineer and the DEO will continuously monitor the contractor's adherence to the approved impact prevention procedures and the engineer shall issue to the contractor a notice of noncompliance whenever transgressions are observed. The DEO should document the nature and magnitude of the non-compliance in a designated register, the action taken to discontinue the non-compliance, the action taken to mitigate its effects and the results of the actions. The noncompliance shall be documented and reported to the engineer in the monthly report.

Copies of any record of decision or EMP'S for specific borrow pits or quarries used on the project shall be kept on site and made available for inspection by visiting officials from the employer or relevant environmental departments.

**C3.4.3.2.10. COMPLIANCE AND PENALTIES**

The contractor shall act immediately when such notice of non-compliance is received and correct whatever is the cause for the issuing of the notice. Complaints received regarding activities on the construction site pertaining to the environment shall be recorded in a dedicated register and the response noted with the date and action taken. This record shall be submitted with the monthly reports and a verbal report given at the monthly site meetings.

Any avoidable non-compliance with the above-mentioned measures shall be considered sufficient ground for the imposition of a penalty

The following penalties shall apply for environmental violations:

**a) Unnecessary removal or damage to trees**

- 2600mm girth or less : R 5 000 per tree
- Greater than 2600mm, but less than 6180mm girth : R10 000 per tree
- Greater than 6180mm girth : R30 000 per tree

**b) Serious violations:**

- Hazardous chemical/oil spill and/or dumping in non-approved sites. : R10 000 per incident
- General damage to sensitive environments. : R 5 000 per incident
- Damage to cultural and historical sites. : R 5 000 per incident
- Uncontrolled/unmanaged erosion (plus rehabilitation at contractor's cost) : R1 000 to R5 000 per incident
- Unauthorised blasting activities. : R 5 000 per incident
- Pollution of water sources. : R 10 000 per incident

The engineer's decision with regard to what is considered a violation, its seriousness and the penalty imposed shall be final.

**c) Less serious violations:**

- Littering on site. : R1 000 per incident
- Lighting of illegal fires on site. : R1 000 per incident
- Persistent or un-repaired fuel and oil leaks. : R1 000 per incident
- Excess dust or excess noise emanating from site. : R1 000 per incident
- Dumping of milled material in side drains or on grassed areas: R1 000 per incident
- Possession or use of intoxicating substances on site. : R 500 per incident
- Any vehicles being driven in excess of designated speed limits. : R 500 per incident
- Urination and defecation anywhere except in designated areas. : R 500 per incident

The engineer's decision with regard to what is considered a violation, its seriousness and the penalty imposed shall be final. The calculation shall include allied construction activities in the same way as the calculation of reduced payments under section 8200. The imposition of such a penalty shall not preclude the relevant provincial or national authority from applying an additional penalty in accordance with its statutory powers. Any non-compliance with the agreed procedures of the EMP is a transgression of the various statutes and laws that define the manner by which the environment is managed.

Failure to redress the cause shall be reported to the relevant authority for them to deal with the transgression, as it deems fit.

**C3.4.3.2.11. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

The cost of complying to this specification shall be deemed to be included in the rates tendered for this project.

Item	Unit
<b>B100.01</b>	<b>Penalty for unnecessary removal or damage to trees for the following diameter sizes</b>
(a) 2600mm girth or less	number (No)
(b) Greater than 2600mm, but less than 6180mm girth	number (No)
(c) Greater than 6180mm girth	number (No)

The unit of measurement shall be the number of trees by diameter size removed unnecessary or damaged. The penalty rates applied shall be those stated in clause C3.5.2.10.

Item	Unit
<b>B100.02</b>	<b>Penalty for serious violations</b>
(a) Hazardous chemical/oil spill and/or dumping in non-approved sites	number (No)
(b) General damage to sensitive environments	
(c) Damage to cultural and historical sites	number (No)
(d) Pollution of water sources	number (No)

- |     |   |             |
|-----|---|-------------|
| (e) | Unauthorised blasting activities  | number (No) |
| (f) | Uncontrolled/unmanaged erosion per incident, depending on environment impacts, plus rehabilitation at contractor's cost | number (No) |

The unit of measurement for B100.02 (a) to (f) shall be the number of serious violation incidents. The penalty rates to be applied shall be those stated in clause C3.5.2.10.

<b>Item</b>	<b>Unit</b>
<b>B100.03</b>	
<b>Penalty for less serious violations</b>	
• Littering on site	number (No)
• Lighting of illegal fires on site	number (No)
• Persistent or un-repaired fuel and oil leaks	number (No)
• Excess dust or excess noise emanating from site	number (No)
• Dumping of milled material in side drains or on grassed areas	number (No)
• Possession or use of intoxicating substances on site	number (No)
• Any vehicles being driven in excess of designated speed limits	number (No)
• Removal and/or damage to flora or cultural or heritage objects on site, and/or killing of wildlife	number (No)
• Illegal hunting	number (No)
• Urination and defecation anywhere except in designated areas	number (No)

The unit of measurement shall be the number of less serious violation incidents. The penalty rates applied shall be those stated in clause C3.5.2.10.

The engineer's decision with regard to what is considered a violation, its seriousness and the penalty imposed shall be final. The calculation shall include allied construction activities in the same way as the calculation of reduced payments under section 8200. The imposition of such a penalty shall not preclude the relevant provincial or national authority from applying an additional penalty in accordance with its statutory powers. Any non-compliance with the agreed procedures of the EMP is a transgression of the various statutes and laws that define the manner by which the environment is managed.

Failure to redress the cause shall be reported to the relevant authority for them to deal with the transgression, as it deems fit.

Table 1: Mechanisms that Cause Environmental Impacts during Construction Activities

SECTION	CONTENTS	ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACTS				
		POLLUTION TYPE	DEFORMATION OF LANDSCAPE	SOIL EROSION	ALIEN VEGETATION	SENSITIVE AREAS (to be completed by compiler)
1300	Camp Establishment	Waste treatment Hazardous waste Water supply Spillage Storage	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil Management of weeds	
1400	Housing, Offices and laboratories	Waste treatment Hazardous waste Water supply Spillage Storage Noise/lights	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil Demarcate sensitive areas	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil Management of weeds	
1500	Accommodation of Traffic	Waste treatment Hazardous waste Water supply Spillage Storage Noise/lights Dust control	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil Demarcate sensitive areas Maintenance of windrows	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil Management of weeds	
1600	Overhaul	Spillage Storage Noise/lights Dust control Exhaust fumes	Turning circles Parking areas	Restrict access to sensitive areas	Protection of indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	

SECTION	CONTENTS	ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACTS				SENSITIVE AREAS (to be completed by compiler)
		POLLUTION TYPE	DEFORMATION OF LANDSCAPE	SOIL EROSION	ALIEN VEGETATION	
		Washing waste				
1700	Clearing and grubbing	Waste treatment Hazardous waste Water supply Noise /lights Dust control	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	Protection of indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	
2100 - 2400	Drainage	Waste treatment Hazardous waste Water supply Spillage Storage	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil Management of weeds	
3100	Borrow pits	Waste treatment Hazardous waste Water supply Spillage Storage	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil Management of weeds	
3200	Stockpiling	Waste treatment Hazardous waste Water supply Spillage Storage	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil Management of weeds	
3300	Mass Earthworks	Waste treatment Hazardous waste Water supply Spillage Storage	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil Management of weeds	

SECTION	CONTENTS	ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACTS				SENSITIVE AREAS (to be completed by compiler)
		POLLUTION TYPE	DEFORMATION OF LANDSCAPE	SOIL EROSION	ALIEN VEGETATION	
3400 3900	- Pavement layers	Waste treatment Hazardous waste Water supply Spillage Storage Noise / lights Dust control	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil Demarcate sensitive areas Maintenance of windrows	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil Management of weeds	
4100	Asphalt works / sealing operations	Waste treatment Hazardous waste Water supply Spillage Storage Noise / lights Dust control Smoke control Storage of materials	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil Turning circles Parking areas	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	
5000	Ancilliary roadworks	Waste treatment Hazardous waste Water supply Spillage Storage	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil Management of weeds	
6000	Structures	Waste treatment Hazardous waste Water supply Spillage Storage	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil Management of weeds	



SECTION	CONTENTS	ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACTS				SENSITIVE AREAS (to be completed by compiler)
		POLLUTION TYPE	DEFORMATION OF LANDSCAPE	SOIL EROSION	ALIEN VEGETATION	
7000	Concrete pavements etc	Waste treatment Hazardous waste Water supply Spillage Storage	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	Selection of site Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil	Preserve indigenous vegetation Preserve topsoil Management of weeds	

---

### **C3.4.3.3 PROVISION OF STRUCTURED TRAINING**

#### CONTENTS

- C3.4.3.3.1 SCOPE
- C3.4.3.3.2 GENERIC TRAINING
- C3.4.3.3.3 ENTREPRENEURIAL SKILLS TRAINING
- C3.4.3.3.4 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

#### **C3.4.3.3.1 SCOPE**

This specification covers the requirements for the provision of structured training to be arranged by the contractor over the period of this contract.

#### **C3.4.3.3.2 GENERIC TRAINING**

C3.4.3.3.2.1 The contractor shall, from the commencement of the contract, implement a structured progressive training programme.

C3.4.3.3.2.2 Training shall be at or by an approved accredited organisation and shall be delivered by suitably qualified and experienced trainers.

C3.4.3.3.2.3 The contractor shall be responsible for the provision of everything necessary for the delivery of the generic training programme, including the following:

- (a) A suitable venue with sufficient furniture, lighting and power.
- (b) All necessary stationery consumables and study material.
- (c) Transport of the students (as necessary).

C3.4.3.3.2.4 Generic training courses shall commence within one month of possession of site and be completed before the end of the contract period. The Training Schedule should form part of the section 12 programme to be approved by the Engineer at the start of the project.

C3.4.3.3.2.5 The contractor's training programme shall be subject to the approval of Thulamela Local Municipality and the contractor shall if so, instructed by Thulamela Local Municipality alter or amend the programme and course content if a need is identified once the contract commences.

C3.4.3.3.2.6 The contractor shall keep comprehensive records of the training given to each student and whenever required shall provide copies of such records to the engineer. At the successful completion of each course each student shall be issued with a certificate indicating the course contents as proof of attendance and completion.

In addition to the above, a monthly return shall be submitted by the contractor. An example of the form is illustrated in Part C5 of this document (form RDP 11 (E))

---

### **C3.4.3.3.3 ENTREPRENEURIAL SKILLS TRAINING**

C3.4.3.3.3.1 Small contractors, subcontractors and the Project Steering Committee (PSC) will be entitled to receive a structured training programme, which will comprise both management skills as well as business development skills.

C3.4.3.3.3.2 The contractor shall closely monitor the performance of all small subcontractors in the execution of their contracts and shall identify all such subcontractors who, in his opinion, display the potential to benefit from structured training as may be provided for in the contract and where required by the engineer, shall make recommendations in this regard. The final list of candidates will be decided between the contractor and the engineer.

C3.4.3.3.3.3 The training will be delivered by trainers who are accredited by the Civil Engineering Training Scheme (CEITS) or other institutions recognised by the Department of Labour. Accredited training refers to both the trainers as well as to the training material.

C3.4.3.3.3.4 The contractor shall facilitate in the delivery thereof, by instructing and motivating the subcontractor regarding attendance and participation therein.

C3.4.3.3.3.5 The contractor shall further make all reasonable efforts to co-ordinate the programming of the subcontractor's work with that of the delivery of the structured training.

C3.4.3.3.3.7 The contractor shall be responsible for the provision of everything necessary for the delivery of the entrepreneurial training programme, including the following:

- (a) A suitably furnished venue (if required) with lighting and power.
- (b) All necessary consumables, stationery and study material.
- (c) Transport of the subcontractors (as necessary).

C3.4.3.3.3.7 All entrepreneurial training shall take place within normal working hours.

C3.4.3.3.3.8 The contractor's training programme shall be subject to the approval of Thulamela Local Municipality and the contractor shall if so instructed by Thulamela Local Municipality alter or amend the programme and course content if a need is identified once the contract commences.

C3.4.3.3.3.10 The contractor shall keep comprehensive records of the training given to each subcontractor and whenever required shall provide copies of such records to the engineer. At the successful completion of each course each subcontractor shall be issued with a certificate indicating the course contents as proof of attendance and completion.

In addition to the above, a monthly return shall be submitted by the contractor. An example of the form to be used is illustrated in Part C5 of this document, (form RDP 12 (E)).

---

#### **C3.4.3.3.4 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

<b><u>ITEM</u></b>	<b><u>UNIT</u></b>
C12.05 Provision for accredited training	
(a) Generic skills	Provisional sum
(b) Entrepreneurial skills	Provisional sum
(c) Handling cost and profit in respect of sub-item C12.05(a) and (b) above	percentage (%)
(d) Training venue (only if required)	lump sum

The prime cost sums are provided to cover the actual costs (including wages and the daily PSC reimbursement) for attendance of accredited training courses as agreed with the engineer and shall be expended in accordance with the provisions of sub-clause 48(2) of the general conditions of contract. The tendered percentage in sub-item C12.05 (c) is a percentage of the amount actually spent under sub-items C12.05(a) and (b) which shall include full compensation for the contractor's handling cost, profit, mentoring, record keeping, reporting and all other costs in connection therewith.

The lump sum tendered for C12.05(d) shall include full compensation for the provision of the training venue, for all necessary lighting, power, furniture, stationery, consumables and study material and for transportation of the students to and from the training venue.

Payment of the lump sum will be made after the provision of all the accredit training, issuing of all certificates and submission of all records as specified in the document.

---

### **C3.4.3.4 PROVISION OF THE TEMPORARY WORKFORCE**

#### CONTENTS

##### C3.4.3.4.1 SCOPE

##### C3.4.3.4.2 INTERPRETATIONS

##### C3.4.3.4.3 PERMITTED SOURCES OF TEMPORARY WORKERS

##### C3.4.3.4.4 EMPLOYMENT RECORDS TO BE PROVIDED

##### C3.4.3.4.5 VARIATIONS IN WORKER PRODUCTION RATES

##### C3.4.3.4.6 TRAINING OF THE TEMPORARY WORKFORCE

##### C3.4.3.4.7 RECRUITMENT AND SELECTION PROCEDURES

##### C3.4.3.4.8 TERMS AND CONDITIONS PERTAINING TO THE EMPLOYMENT OF THE TEMPORARY WORKFORCE

##### C3.4.3.4.9 LABOUR RELATIONS AND WORKER GRIEVANCE PROCEDURES

##### C3.4.3.4.10 THE SUBCONTRACTORS' WORKFORCES

##### C3.4.3.4.11 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

#### C3.4.3.4.1 SCOPE

This Specification covers the provisions and requirements relating to the provision of the temporary workforce. Reference is also made to the Basic Conditions of Employment Act (Act 75 of 1997) with specific reference to the Sectoral Determination 2: Civil Engineering Sector

#### C3.4.3.4.2 INTERPRETATIONS

##### C3.4.3.4.2.1 Supporting documents

The Tender Rules, Conditions of Contract, Standard and Project Specifications, Drawings and statutory minimum requirements relating to the employment and remuneration of labour shall inter alia be read in conjunction with this Specification.

##### C3.4.3.4.2.1.2 Definitions and abbreviations

For the purposes of this specification, the definitions given in the Conditions of Contract, the Standard Specifications and the Project Specifications, together with the following additional definitions shall, unless the context dictates otherwise, apply:

- (a) "Key Personnel" means all contracts managers, site agents, materials and survey technicians, trainers, supervisors, foremen, skilled plant operators, artisans and the like, and all other personnel in the permanent employ of the Contractor or Subcontractor who possess special skills and/or who play key roles in the Contractor's or Subcontractor's operation
- (b) "Project Committee" means a committee consisting of the Employer, the Engineer, the Contractor, (or their nominated representatives) as well as representatives of the temporary workforce, which is convened from time to time at the discretion of the Engineer, for the purposes of acting as an avenue for effective communication and liaison between all the parties referred to, in all matters pertaining to the Contract
- (c) "Subcontractor" means any person or group of persons in association, or firm, or body corporate (whether formally constituted or otherwise) not being the Contractor, to whom

specific portions or aspects of the Works are sublet or subcontracted by the Contractor in accordance with the provisions of the Contract

- (d) "Worker" for the purposes of this Specification means any person, not being one of the Contractor's key personnel, nor any key personnel of any Subcontractor, who is engaged by the Contractor, a Subcontractor or the Employer to participate in the execution of any part of the Contract Works and shall include unskilled labour, semi-skilled and skilled labour, clerical workers and the like
- (e) "Workforce" means the aggregate body comprising all workers and shall, unless the context dictates otherwise, include the workforces of the Contractor and all Subcontractors
- (f) "Project Steering Committee (PSC) means a committee comprising mainly of representatives (to a maximum of 10) of the affected communities with additional members from Thulamela Local Municipality, the Contractor, Consultants and the Municipality. The PSC convenes at least once a month as well as when the need so dictates, for the purpose of recruiting labour for the project, to address community issues and for acting as an avenue for effective communication and liaison between all the parties.
- (g) "Liaison Officer" means a local representative of the temporary workforce, duly appointed through the PSC processes, to act on behalf of the workers and through whom all matters pertaining to the temporary workforce can be channelled.

#### C3.4.3.4.2.1.3 Status

Where any provisions or requirements of this Specification are in conflict with anything elsewhere set out in the Contract, the provisions and requirements of this Specification shall take precedence and prevail.

#### C3.4.3.4.3 PERMITTED SOURCES OF TEMPORARY WORKERS

The Contractor shall as far as possibly make optimum use of the human resources outside his own workforce and the workforces of all subcontractors. The temporary workforce that is to be used in the execution of the Works in terms of Part C3 may consist of the workers of local communities, and shall not be bound to one particular community.

#### C3.4.3.4.4 EMPLOYMENT RECORDS TO BE PROVIDED

- (a) The Contractor shall maintain accurate and comprehensive records of all workers engaged on the Contract and shall provide the Engineer at monthly intervals from the commencement of the Contract, with interim records substantiating the actual numbers of employment opportunities that shall have been generated to date and the amounts actually paid in respect thereof. Such interim records shall be in a Thulamela Local Municipality approved format. An example of the forms to be used is illustrated in Part C5 of this document, (forms RDP 9 and 10 (E).
- (b) The Contractor shall, on completion of the Contract, and as a pre-requisite event to the release of any retention money in terms of the Conditions of Contract, provide the Engineer with copies of the Terms of Employment as well as independently audited documentary evidence of the total number of temporary and permanent employment opportunities actually generated during the Contract.

#### C3.4.3.4.5 VARIATIONS IN WORKER PRODUCTION RATES

Notwithstanding anything to the contrary as may be stated in or inferred from any other provision of this Contract, the Contractor shall not be entitled to any additional payment or compensation whatever, in respect of any differences as may result between the production rates actually achieved by workers in the course of the execution of the Contract Works and those production rates on which he has based his tender.

---

#### C3.4.3.4.6 TRAINING OF THE TEMPORARY WORKFORCE

- (a) Selected members of the workforce are to be provided with structured training in accordance with the provisions of Part C3.4.3.3.
- (b) The Contractor shall make all necessary allowances in his programme of work to accommodate and facilitate the delivery of such structured training and shall comply fully with the requirements of Part C3.4.3.3.
- (c) The provision of structured training as described in Part C3.4.3.3. shall not relieve the Contractor of any of his obligations in terms of the Conditions of Contract and the Contractor shall remain fully liable for the provision, at his own cost, of all training of the workforce, additional to that as provided for in Part C3.4.3.3, as may be necessary to achieve the execution and completion of the works strictly in accordance with the provisions of the Contract.

#### C3.4.3.4.7 RECRUITMENT AND SELECTION PROCEDURES

C3.4.3.4.7.1 The Project Steering Committee, through the assistance of the Social Facilitator and the Contractor, shall be responsible for the recruitment and selection of the Community Liaison Officer and the workers to constitute the temporary workforce.

C3.4.3.4.7.2 The Contractor shall advise the Engineer in writing of the numbers of each category of temporary worker which he requires, together with the personal attributes which he considers desirable that each category of worker shall possess (taking due cognisance of the provisions of the Contract relating to training).

C3.4.3.4.7.3 The Social Facilitator shall take the necessary actions to advertise within the affected local communities comprising the personnel resources, the fact that temporary employment opportunities exist and the time and place where recruiting will occur

C3.4.3.4.7.4 The Social Facilitator shall record in writing, the details of all persons applying for employment, including inter alia:

- (a) Name, Identity Number, Date of Birth, age and sex
- (b) Marital status and number of dependants
- (c) Qualifications and previous work experience (whether substantiated or not)
- (d) On the job training programmes attended
- (e) Period since last economically active
- (f) Preference for type of work or task.

C3.4.3.4.7.5 The selection of workers from amongst the applicants should take into cognizance the Contractor's requirements for the workforce and the provisions of the contract in regard to the provision of training to the workforce and in accordance with the following principle:

- (a) No potential temporary worker shall be precluded from being employed by the Contractor on the execution of the Works, by virtue of his lack of skill in any suitable operation forming part of the Works, unless -
  - (i) all available vacancies have been or can be filled by temporary workers who already possess suitable skills, or
  - (ii) the Time for Completion allowed in the Contract, or the remaining portion of the Contract Period (as the case may be) is insufficient to facilitate the creation of the necessary skills.
- (b) Preference shall be given to the unemployed and single heads of households.

- (c) The Contractor shall, in so far as is reasonably practicable, give priority to accommodating the applicants' expressed preferences regarding the types of work for which they are selected.
- (d) The selection process shall not be prejudicial to youth (over the age of fifteen years) and women. The Contractor should strive to achieve the participation target for employment set for this project which is 60% female and 20% youth.

C3.4.3.4.7.6 After making the selection, the Social Facilitator shall forward the list in writing and without undue delay, to the Engineer for record keeping.

C3.4.3.4.7.7 The provisions of this clause shall apply mutatis mutandis in respect of the selection of additional or replacement members of the workforce as may be necessary from time to time during the Contract.

C3.4.3.4.7.8 The Contractor shall, after appointing his temporary workforce, arrange at his own cost for the appointment of the Liaison Officer as representative of the workforce to act on their behalf with regards to all matters pertaining to the workforce.

#### C3.4.3.4.8 TERMS AND CONDITIONS PERTAINING TO THE EMPLOYMENT OF THE TEMPORARY WORKFORCE

C3.4.3.4.8.1 All temporary workers engaged in accordance with the provisions of Part A of the Project Specifications, shall be employed on the terms and conditions of employment as are consistent with those as set out in this Contract. The Contractor shall implement and adhere strictly to such terms and conditions relating to the employment of the temporary workforce, and subject only to the provisions of this Contract, shall not employ any temporary worker on terms and conditions which are less favourable to the worker or inconsistent with the standards and norms generally applicable to temporary workers in the Civil Engineering Industry and applicable to the particular area. Refer to the Contract of Employment drafted/published by Department of Labour.

C3.4.3.4.8.2 RATE OF REMUNERATION. The Contractor shall pay to all workers engaged in terms of the contract, not less than the applicable gazetted minimum rate of remuneration in terms of the Sectorial Determination 2: Civil Engineering Sector.

The remuneration of the CLO shall be paid monthly at the rate equivalent to Task Grade 3 in accordance with the provisions of the Basic Conditions of Employment Act, No. 75 of 1997, Amendment i.t.o Sectorial Determination 2: Civil Engineering Sector, South Africa

Compensation for transport for the members of the Project Steering Committee shall be made at a rate of R75 / month. This will cover for transport cost to and from the PSC meeting, site meeting and any other meeting deemed necessary to fulfil their obligations.

C3.4.3.4.8.3 NON-PAYMENT OF LABOURERS. Under this contract it is expected of the Main Contractor to ensure that all labourers are paid in time on a monthly basis, whether they are employed by him/her directly or by any of his/her subcontractors. In the event of noncompliance, the employer reserves the right to use any remedies available at its disposal.

#### C3.4.3.4.9 LABOUR RELATIONS AND WORKER GRIEVANCE PROCEDURES

C3.4.3.4.9.1 The Contractor, as the Employer of the workforce, shall be fully responsible for the establishment and maintenance at his own cost, of satisfactory labour relations on site and the resolution of all grievances of temporary workers as may occur. Refer to Disciplinary Procedures for Small Business drafted/published by Department of Labour.

C3.4.3.4.9.2 The Contractor shall at all times adhere to the accepted norms and standards of labour relations prevailing generally in the Civil Engineering Construction Industry and shall conduct himself in a fair and reasonable manner, within the constraints as may be imposed upon him by the terms of the Contract.



---

C3.4.3.4.9.3 In the event of any temporary worker engaged by the Contractor in terms of the Contract, being aggrieved with regard to his Terms of Employment, working conditions and

training, he shall have the right, at his discretion, to be supported in any inquiry or disciplinary hearing or investigation instituted by the Contractor in terms of Subclause C3.4.3.4.9.2 above, by one member of the temporary workforce and one member of the Project Committee, which persons shall be nominated by the worker.

C3.4.3.4.9.4 In the event of any grievance not being satisfactorily resolved through the application of normal dispute resolution procedures in accordance with Sub clauses C3.4.3.4.9.2 and C3.4.3.4.9.3, then either the Contractor or the worker concerned may require that the matter be referred to the Project Committee for further consideration, with a view to facilitate the resolution thereof.

#### C3.4.3.4.10 THE SUBCONTRACTORS' WORKFORCES

C3.4.3.4.10.1 The provisions of this Part C shall apply mutatis mutandis to the workforces employed by all subcontractors engaged by the Contractor and the Contractor shall be fully responsible for ensuring, at his own cost, that the terms of every subcontract agreement entered into are such as to facilitate the application of these provisions in respect of the workforces of all subcontractors.

C3.4.3.4.10.2 The Contractor shall at his own cost and to the extent necessary, assist and monitor all subcontractors in the application of the provisions of this Specification, and shall, in terms of the Conditions of Contract, remain fully liable in respect of the acts, omissions and neglects of all subcontractors, in respect of the application of the provisions of this Specification.

#### C3.4.3.4.11 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

The Contractor will not be separately reimbursed or compensated in respect of the provision of the workforce and creation of temporary employment opportunities and all the Contractor's costs associated with compliance with the provisions of this part of the Project Specifications shall, except to the extent provided for in Part C3.4.3.3. as relevant, be deemed to be included in the rates tendered for the various items of work listed in the Schedule of Quantities.

### **C3.5 MANAGEMENT**

#### **C3.5.1 MANAGEMENT MEETINGS**

The following meetings will be required as minimum for the management of the contract.

- (a) Monthly client site meeting (using standard agenda for management control).
- (b) Technical meetings as required for each phase of the work.
- (c) Monthly safety meetings in terms of the OHS requirements.
- (d) Weekly progress meetings

#### **C3.5.2 QUALITY CONTROL**

Contractor to supply details of quality plan and procedures. These shall include:

- Accommodation of traffic.
- Inspection and test plans.
- Approval process.
- Hold-points.
- Milestones.

## **PART C4: SITE INFORMATION**

C4.1	SITE INFORMATION .....	C.296
C4.2	LOCALITY PLAN .....	C.298

## **C4.1 SITE INFORMATION**

### **C4.1.1 General**

The study area for this investigation is in the North-eastern portions of the Limpopo Province of South Africa. On a more localised scale, the study area is located approximately 10 km north of the Thohoyandou Settlement.

### **C4.1.2 Climate and Weather**

The area receives about 752 mm of rain per year, with most rainfall occurring during summer. It receives the lowest rainfall (4 mm) in June and the highest (154 mm) in January. The average midday temperatures for Thohoyandou range from 22.9°C in June to 30.3°C in January. The region is the coldest during July when the mercury drops to 7.5°C on average during the night.

### **C4.1.3 Topography**

The study area is situated on the Southern edge of the Soutpansberg Mountain Range. The Soutpansberg is characterised by highly undulating surface topography, with steep southern scarp slopes, in combination with shallower northern dip slopes. The change or difference in slope morphology can be attributed to the Northerly dipping strata of the Soutpansberg group, in conjunction with regional erosional processes.

### **C4.1.4 Material site investigation**

The center line materials on the existing gravel road the laboratory test indicates that from a depth of zero mm to 400mm depth average, the average class of G6, as per the standard specification COLTO, 1998. The Plastic index (PI) ranges from 7 to NonPlastic (NP), with an average passing 5mm sieve as a sandy material. The material is suitable for selected and can be used for stabilization for C4 or C3 material class. Below 400mm upto1000mm the material laboratory tests indicate the average of G9 as per COLTO, 1998. The Plastic index (PI) ranges from 7 to 9.

### **C4.1.5 Pavement and layer-works design**

- Roadbed (G8, 150mm thick, compacted to 93% Mod AASHTO)
- Gravel Selected layer (G7, 150mm thick, compacted to 93% Mod AASHTO)
- Cement Stabilized Sub-Base (C4, 150mm thick, compacted to 95% Mod AASHTO)
- 150 mm G2 Crushed Stone base
- 30mm AC Surfacing

#### **C4.1.6 Structures**

The structures to be constructed are as follows:

- There will be no major culvert crossing on the streets
- There will be concrete culvert for stormwater control of the following sizes (450mm, 600mm, 750mm, 900mm, 1 200mm and 1 500mm)

#### **C4.1.6 Services**

##### **Water Pipelines and Sewer-lines:**

The as-built drawings for existing water pipelines are not available. Where pipes are crossing the streets, pipe sleeves will be constructed for future maintenance.

##### **Electricity Lines:**

The streets consist of overhead electrical cables. Electrical pole which are on the road will be relocated where necessary. The underground cables will be marked and care will be taken when excavating.

##### **Fences:**

Fences which are encroaching to the streets will be relocated. The social consultant will be involved to negotiate with the landowners for the expropriation of land.

##### **Telkom lines**

All Telkom lines are overheads. Telephone poles or stay found to be on the road will be relocated.

##### **Graves**

There are no visible graves/tombstones with the roads reserves.

## C4.2 LOCALITY PLAN

Locality Map is attached under separate book of drawings.”



## **PART C5: ANNEXURES**

- C5.1      PROFORMA DOCUMENTS
- C5.2      CONTRACT DRAWINGS
- C5.3      GOVERNMENT PROCUREMENT: GENERAL CONDITION OF CONTRACT-  
              JULY 2010

## **C5.1 PROFORMA DOCUMENTS**

The following is a list of proforma documents and examples that are required to be completed by the successful tenderer.

C5.1.1	RETENTION MONEY GUARANTEE PROFORMA .....	C.303
C5.1.2	MUNICIPALITY HEALTH AND SAFETY SPECIFICATION .....	C.305



**C5.1.1 RETENTION MONEY GUARANTEE PROFORMA**

**EXAMPLE**

THULAMELA LOCAL MUNICIPALITY  
Private Bag x 5066  
Thohoyandou  
0950

FOR INFORMATION ONLY:  
This Guarantee is not to be completed and signed by the Guarantor.  
A separate form will be issued to the successful Tenderer

Notes to Tenderer

1. **This pro forma is for information only. The successful tenderer's guarantor** will need to reproduce it without amendment, omission or addition for completion and lodgement with the Employer.
2. **The tenderer's guarantee will have to be on letterheads indicating the** contact details of the guarantor, shareholders/board of directors, guarantee number and the company registration number.

Bid No.: 40/2023/2024

Upgrading of Shayandima Ext 3 Streets

The guarantee is issued on behalf of .....

Registration No .....

(hereinafter referred to as "the Contractor") in connection with the above mentioned contract (hereinafter referred to as "the Contract").

Whereas you have agreed that the Contractor may provide a guarantee in lieu of the retention monies provided for under the Contract.

Now therefore we, the undersigned, being duly authorised to represent the .....

.....  
(full name of guarantor) registration number .....

undertake to pay you such amounts as you may from time to time demand from us, immediately upon receipt of a written demand from you.

1. Each demand shall be in writing and delivered to us at .....  
or such other address as we shall in writing notify to you.
2. Our liability to make the payments herein referred to shall be unconditional and not be affected or diminished by any disputes, claims or counterclaims between you and the Contractor.
3. Our aggregate liability under this guarantee is limited to .....  
(R.....) and is restricted to payment of monies only.
4. This guarantee shall expire on the date on which the last of the retention monies, which but for this guarantee would have been retained by you, becomes payable to the Contractor.

5. This guarantee is neither negotiable nor transferable and must be returned to us against final payment of our aggregate liability or on the date of the expiry of the guarantee in terms of Clause 4 (above), whichever is the earlier.

Signed at ..... for and on behalf of ..... on  
this the ..... day of ..... in the year .....

GUARANTOR: .....

AS WITNESS:

1. .... 2. ....

NAME(Print): ..... NAME(Print): .....

ADDRESS ..... ADDRESS .....

.....  
.....

**C5.1.2 MUNICIPALITY HEALTH AND SAFETY SPECIFICATION**



# ***THULAMELA MUNICIPALITY***

## **HEALTH AND SAFETY SPECIFICATION**

### **1. Introduction**

In terms of the Construction Regulation, 2003 4 (1) (a) of the Occupational Health and Safety Act, No. 85 of 1993,

Thulamela Municipality, refer as the Client, is required to compile a Health & Safety specification for any intended project and provide such specification to any prospective tenderer.

The specification has as objective to ensure that Principal Constructors entering into a Contract with Thulamela Municipality achieve an acceptable level of compliance in terms Occupational Health & Safety performance. This document forms an integral part of the Contract and/or Suppliers.

Compliance with this document doesn't absolve the Principal Contractor from complying with minimum legal requirements and the Principal Contractor remains responsible for the Health and Safety of his employees and for his or here mandatories unless the agreements has been reached in terms of section 37(2) of the Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993.

The following legislations have been considered:

1. National Environmental Management Act No. 107 of 1998
  - 1.1 National Environment Management: Air Quality Act, 39 of 2004
2. Occupational Health and Safety Act No. 85 of 1993
  - 2.1 Construction Regulations, 2003
  - 2.2 Asbestosis Regulations, 2001
  - 2.3 General Administration Regulations, 2003
  - 2.4 Electrical Installation Regulations, 1992
  - 2.5 Noise-Induced Hearing Loss Regulations, R307, 07 March 2003
  - 2.6 Environmental Regulations for Workplaces, R2281, 16 October 1987
3. Employment Equity Act No. 55 of 1998
  - 3.1 Employment Equity Policy
4. Compensations for Occupational Injuries and diseases Act No. 130 of 1993
5. National Health Act No. 61 of 2003
6. Amendment- Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act 1997
7. ISO Standards including SABS or SANS Code of Practice

## FORM OF AGREEMENT IN TERMS OF THE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT, 85 OF 1993

THIS AGREEMENT made at \_\_\_\_\_ on this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ in the year \_\_\_\_\_ between THULAMELA MUNICIPALITY (hereinafter) called "the client" of the one part, herein represented by \_\_\_\_\_ in his capacity as \_\_\_\_\_ and delegate of the employer in terms of the employer's standard powers of delegation pursuant to the provision of the Act and \_\_\_\_\_ (hereinafter called "the mandatory") of the other part, herein represented by \_\_\_\_\_ as \_\_\_\_\_ and as being duly authorized by virtue of resolution.

WHEREAS the Employer is desirous that certain works be constructed, viz. \_\_\_\_\_ and has accepted a tender by the Mandatory for the construction, completion and maintenance of such works and whereas the Client and the Mandatory have agreed to certain arrangements and procedures to be followed in order to ensure compliance by the Mandatory with the provisions of the Occupational Health and Safety Act 1993 (Act No. 85 of 1993)

**NOW THEREFORE THIS AGREEMENT WITNESSETH AS FOLLOWS:**

1. The mandatory declares himself to be conversant with the following÷
  - a) All the requirements, regulations and standards of the Act hereinafter together with its amendments.
  - b) The procedures and safety rules of the Client as pertaining to the Mandatory and all his sub-contractors
2. In addition to all requirements, the Mandatory agrees to execute all the works forming part of this contract and to operate and utilize all machinery, plant and equipment in accordance with the Act.
3. The Mandatory is responsible for the compliance with the Act by all his sub-contractors, whether or selected and/or approved by the Client.
4. The Mandatory warrants that all his Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act 1993 which covers shall remain in force whilst any such workmen are present on site. A letter of good standing from the Compensation Commissioner to this effect must be produced to the Client upon signature of the agreement.
5. The mandatory undertakes to ensure that he/she and/or subcontractors and/or their respective employees will at all times comply with the following conditions:
  - a) The mandatory shall assume the responsibility in terms of section 16.1 of the Act. The Mandatory shall not delegate any duty in terms of section 16.2 of this Act without the prior written approval of the Employer. If the Mandatory obtains such approval and delegates any duty in terms of section 16.2, a copy of such written delegation shall immediately be forwarded to the Client.
  - b) All incidents referred to in the Act shall be reported by the Mandatory to the Department of Labour as well as to the Client. The Client will further be provided with copies of all written documentation relating to any incident (Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 and COIDA).
  - c) The Employer hereby obtains an interest in the issue of any formal enquiry and informal conducted in terms of sections 31 and 32 of the Act into any incident involving the Mandatory and/or his/her employees and/or his/her subcontractors.

In witness thereof the parties hereto have set their signatures hereon in the presence of the subscribing witnesses:

**SIGNED FOR AND ON BEHALF OF THE CLIENT:** \_\_\_\_\_

**WITNESSES:** 1. \_\_\_\_\_ 2. \_\_\_\_\_

**NAME (IN CAPITAL)** 1. \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_

**SIGNED FOR AND ON BEHALF OF THE MANDATORY** \_\_\_\_\_

**WITNESSES:** 1 \_\_\_\_\_ 2. \_\_\_\_\_

**NAME (IN CAPITAL)** 1. \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_

## Scope

This specification details the Health & Safety requirements associated with the work.

## INTERPRETATIONS

Occupational Health and Safety Act, No 85 of 1993 shall apply to this Contract. The construction regulation promulgated on 18 July 2003 and incorporated into the said Act by Government Notice R1010, published in Government Gazette 25207 apply to any person involved in construction work. These regulations are hereinafter referred to as “the Construction Regulations” and the said Act as “the Act”.

Construction work is defined as:

Any work in connection with:

1. the erection, maintenance, alteration, renovation, repair, demolition or dismantling of or addition to a building or similar structure;
2. the installation, erection, dismantling or maintenance of a fixed plant where such work includes the risk of a person falling;
3. the construction, maintenance, demolition or dismantling of any bridge, dam, canal, road sewer or water reticulation system or any similar civil engineering structure; or
4. the moving of earth, clearing of land, the making of an excavation, piling or any similar type of work.

## GENERAL

The Client will appoint the Contractor in writing for execution of the Works. The Contractor shall accept its appointment under the terms and conditions of the Contract. The Contractor shall sign and agree to those terms and conditions and shall before commencing work, notify the Department of Labour of the intended construction work in terms of Regulation 3 of the Construction Regulations. The Contractor shall submit the notification in writing prior to commencement with work.

The Contractor shall ensure that is fully conversant with the requirements of this specification. This specification is not intended to supersede the Act nor the Construction Regulations. Those sections of the Act and the Construction Regulations which apply to the scope of work to be performed by the Contractor in terms of this Contract continue to be a legal requirement of the Contractor.

Should the Contractor at any stage in execution of the Works÷

- Fail to implement or maintain Client’s health and safety plan.
- Execute construction work which is not in accordance with Client’s health and safety specification. (Check regulation 4(1)(e) of Construction Regulation; or
- Act in any way which may pose a threat to the health and safety of persons.

The Client or the Engineer will, by written order, suspend the progress of the Works. The Contractor shall, during the suspension, properly protect the Works so far as is necessary.

The contractor shall, in submitting his tender, demonstrate that he has made provision for the cost of compliance with the specified **Health and Safety** requirements, the Act and the Construction Regulations, all in terms of sub-clause 4(1) of the Construction Regulations. The costs of compliance shall clearly be demonstrated separately under the appropriate items of measurement, both under “fixed charge items” and “time related items”.



The Contractor shall consistently demonstrate his competence and adequacy of resources to perform the duties imposed on the Contractor in terms of this Specification, the Act and the Construction Regulations.

The Contractor shall, throughout execution of the Contract, ensure that all conditions imposed on his sub-contractors in terms of the Act and Construction Regulations are complied with, as they were the Contractor.

## GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

### Contract's Health and Safety plan

1. The Client shall provide and demonstrate to the Contractor, a suitable and sufficient documented health and safety plan based on the Specifications, the Act and the Construction Regulations, which shall be supplied from the date of commencement of and duration of execution of the Works.
2. The **health and safety plan** includes the following principles:
  - A proper risk assessment of the construction work
  - Pro-active identification of potential hazards and unsafe working conditions  Informing and/or training of employees in hazards and risk area.  Provision of a safe working environment and safety equipment
  - Ensure the safety of sub-contractors through the safety plans.
  - Monitoring the health and safety on the construction works on a regular basis.
  - Use of competent safety officers.
3. The health and safety plan will cover the following details:
  - 3.1 Method to ensure the approval, implementation and maintenance of all health and safety aspects regarding sub-contractors through the Contractor
  - 3.2 Supervision of construction work, with
    - Details of the construction supervisor as well as his appointed assistants  Details of the construction safety officer.
    - Details of the suitability and competency of the above persons regarding the health and safety aspects of the construction works.
    - Details of a proper risk assessment on which the health and safety plan is based.
    - Details of the design, management, responsibilities, procedures, work methods, commissioning, maintenance, and any other requirement necessary for the Contractor and Sub-contractor to work safely and in a healthy environment.
    - Ways in which all construction employees are informed, instructed and trained regarding hazards and related work procedures.
4. The Client will take reasonable steps to ensure that **health and safety plan** is implemented and maintained. The steps taken will include periodic audits and regular monitoring.
5. The Contractor shall ensure that a copy of this **Health and Safety plan** is kept in the site office for further references or when requested by the Client, an inspector, employee or sub-contractors.
6. Upon completion of the Works, the Contractor shall hand over a consolidated Health and Safety file to the Client.

### **Consultation, Communication and Liaison**

- Occupational Health and Safety Liaison between the Client, the principal Contractor, the other Contractors, the Designer and other concerned parties will be through the OH&S Representative/ committee.
- In addition to the above, communication may be directly to the Client or his appointed Agent, verbally or in writing as and when the need arises.
- Consultation with the workforce on OH&S matters will be through their Supervisors, OH&S Representatives, the OH&S committee and their elected Trade Union Representatives, if any.
- The Principal Contractor will be responsible for the dissemination of all relevant OH&S information to the other Contractors through the appointed Safety Officers.
- The Principal Contractor will be required to do Site Safety Walks with THULAMELA MUNICIPALITY at least on a basis to be determined between the two parties.
- The Principal and other Contractors will be required to conduct Toolbox Talks with their employees on weekly basis and records of these must be kept on the OH&S file. Employees must acknowledge the receipt of Toolbox Talks which record must, likewise be kept on the OH&S file.
- The Principal Contractors most senior manager on site may be required to attend all THULAMELA MUNICIPALITY OH&S meetings.

### **Training, Awareness and Competence**

The Principal Contractor is required to have a promotion and awareness scheme in place to create an OH&S culture in employees. The following are some of the methods that may be used:

- Toolbox Talks
- OH&S Posters
- Videos
- Competitions
- Suggestion schemes
- Participative activities such as OH&S circles.

### **HIV/AIDS Awareness Campaign**

The Principal Contractor will see to it that all the employees are made aware of HIV/AIDS; thus include preventive measures (by providing condoms) and encouraged them for voluntary testing and counselling.

### **Safety Health Environment and Quality Audit (SHEQ Audit)**

- Thulamela Municipality will be conducting a Monthly Audit to comply with Construction Regulation 4(1) (d) to ensure that the Principal Contractor has implemented and is maintaining the agreed and approved plan.
- Thulamela Municipality reserves the right to conduct other ad hoc audits and inspections as deemed necessary. This will include Site Safety Walks.
- The Principal Contractor shall conduct his own monthly internal audits to verify compliance with his own OH&S Management system as well as of with this specification including mandatory (Read section 37(2) of Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993.

### **Contractor's Construction Supervisor**

The Contractor shall appoint in writing a full-time construction supervisor with the duty of supervising construction of the Works (Construction Regulation 6(1) and 6(2)).

### **Contractor's Construction Safety Officer**

Before commencing with the Works, the Contractor shall designate in writing a competent Construction Safety Officer (CSO) who shall be acceptable to the Engineer, to represent and act for the Contractor. The Contractor shall inform the Engineer in writing of the name and address of the Contractor's CSO and of any subsequent changes in the name and address of the Officer, together with the scope and limitation of the CSO's authority to act on behalf of the Contractor. The Contractor's CSO shall make available to the Employer an all-hours telephone number at which the CSO can be contacted at any given time in the event of an emergency involving any of the Contractor's employees, or other persons at the Works.

### **Log Books**

The contractor shall keep the following log books and shall make them available to the Engineer on request:

- A record of the weekly inspection of first aid boxes.
- A record of the weekly inspection of ladders.
- A record of the weekly inspection of fire-fighting equipment.
- A record of the names and addresses of its employees who are registered as trained fire-fighting personnel and who are available on site for fire-fighting duties.
- A record of the monthly inspection of welding machines.
- A record of the monthly inspections of oxy-acetylene equipment.
- A record of the weekly inspections of scaffolding structure.
- A record of the monthly inspections of builder's hoist.
- A record of the monthly inspections of mobile and tower cranes.
- A record of the monthly inspections of lifting gear.
- A record of the inspections of electrical equipment.
- A record of the monthly tests of earth leakage units.

### **First Aid**

The Contractor shall appoint in writing, before commencing with the Works, a person(s) who is well trained in First Aid and being in a possession of a valid certificate of competency issued by an organization approved for the purposes by the Chief Inspector of the Department of Labour.

### **Safety Notice Board**

The Contractor shall provide a safety notice board where safety notices, site regulations concerning safe working practices and information on the location of the nearest first aid station, can be conspicuously displayed to its entire staff. The size of the notice board shall be at least (600 x 800) mm.

### **First Aid Equipment**

The contractor may provide for its employees a stretcher for emergencies and an approved first aid box. The first aid box shall be checked weekly by a responsible person, appointed by the Contractor and a record shall be kept of the contents. Any deficient medical supplies shall be promptly replenished by the Contractor. The said first aid box should be in compliance with regulation 3(2)(a) of General Administration Regulation.

### **Hazard Notices**

The Contractor shall display hazard notices in all areas where hazardous conditions prevail or may occur.  
(Warning notices)

### **Reporting of Incidents and/or injuries**

All incidents in respect of damage to Works, property or machinery, or injury to persons, shall be reported by the Contractor's Safety Officer or Site Representative to the Engineer by the quickest means possible. Thereafter should be reported in terms of section 24 of the Occupational Health and Safety Act to the Provincial Executive Manager of the Department of Labour jointly with the Compensation Commissioner in terms COIDA.

A mandatory incident report form, containing full details of the incident, shall be completed and submitted to the Engineer within twenty-four (24) hours of the occurrence of the incident.

The Engineer shall have the right to make all or any enquiries as to the cause and result of any such incident. The Contractor shall provide the Engineer with full facilities for carrying out such enquiries.

### **Good Housekeeping and Safety Policy**

The Contractor shall at all times carry out the Works in a manner to avoid the risk of bodily harm to persons or risk of damage to any property. The Contractor shall take all precautions which are necessary and adequate to eliminate any conditions which contribute to the risk of injury to persons or damage to property. The Contractor shall continuously inspect all work, materials and equipment to discover and determine any such conditions and shall be solely responsible for the discovery, determination and elimination of such conditions.

During the period of this contract, the Contractor shall be responsible for the safe storage of all materials and equipment required for the execution of the Contract, and for disposal of all non-usable waste material in an orderly manner.

All materials, whether stored on the construction site or within the Contractor's designated area, shall be stored neatly and safely to prevent possible injury to any personnel. The material shall be stored to facilitate safe access to, and removal of the material from the storage area.

Any flammable material, such as paint, diesel fuel and oil, shall be stored in lockable no-combustible structures, which shall be clearly marked to indicate the hazardous nature of the materials stored within. The flammable materials stored shall be located in safe areas away from hazardous surroundings and adequate and suitable fire-fighting equipment shall be provided with easy reach of the materials stores and a "no smoking" sign should be displayed in that area.

### **Toilets**

In terms of the National Building Regulations and Construction Regulation 28, the provision of Toilets is required. Chemical toilets are allowed instead of the water borne sewerage type. Toilets have to be provided at ratio of 1 toilet per 30 workers and a sign indicating to the recommendations made in the risk assessment.

### **Exposed Danger Area**

All exposed danger area shall be demarcated by the Contractor with appropriate barrier tape and hazard notices to prevent unauthorized persons entering the danger area.

## **Personal Protective Clothing**

The Contractor shall provide the necessary personal protective clothing for its employees in hazard areas, appropriate to the nature of the hazard.

### **Hard Hats**

All employees of the Contractor shall wear hard hats in area where appropriate hazard notices are displayed. The Engineer shall have the right to ban certain colours if they are similar to the Employer's identifying colours. Hard hats shall not be painted or otherwise defaced.

### **Eye Protection**

Suitable eye protection shall be worn in areas where appropriate hazard notices are displayed, or when grinding, chipping, breaking, drilling, arc-welding, cutting with oxy-acetylene equipment or similar activities are taking place.

### **Hearing Protection**

Suitable hearing protection shall be worn in areas where appropriate hazard notices are displayed.

### **Foot Wear**

All employees of the Contractor shall wear undamaged, laced-up safety boots or safety shoes, suitable for the intended purpose, in prescribed areas where appropriate hazard notices are displayed.

### **Gloves**

All employees of the Contractor shall wear suitable protective gloves in areas where appropriate hazard notices are displayed, or when handling hot or hazardous materials or chemicals.

### **Overhead Power lines**

Regulations of the Electricity Supply Authority in connection with prohibition of operations in the vicinity of overhead power lines shall be observed by the Contractor at all times.

### **Machine Guarding**

All power tools and machinery driven by belts, gears, ropes, chains, couplings and similar drives shall be adequately guarded. The Contractor shall prohibit the use of any equipment with a damaged, missing or inadequate guard.

### **Prevention of Uncontrolled Collapse**

The Contractor shall ensure that ÷

- All reasonable practicable steps are taken to prevent the uncontrolled collapse of any new or existing structure or any part thereof, which may become unstable or is in a temporary state of weakness or instability due to the carrying out of construction work; and
- No structure or part of a structure is loaded in a manner that would render it unsafe.

### **Safe Working Loads**

The Contractor shall ensure that ÷

- The safe working loads of hoist, load-bearing beams and cranes are prominently displayed at all times.
- The safe working loads are not exceeded under any circumstances
- All lifting gear is marked with a unique identity number and recorded in a register.

### **Commissioning Safety Precautions**

The Contractor shall ensure that wherever repairs, adjustments or any other work are undertaken on any plant or machinery, the power supply is switched off, disconnected or the plant/machinery disengaged until the work or repairs have been completed.

### **Toxic Materials**

The Contractor shall exercise all necessary care in the handling of toxic compound and shall be able to identify the major chemical components in the event of medical treatment being required.

### **Hazardous Chemical and Materials**

- The Contractor shall provide suitable and adequate protective equipment when working in an area where hazardous chemical and materials are being used.
- The Contractor shall ensure that its employees have familiarized themselves with the hazardous material data sheets applicable to the specific site as well as the location of fire-fighting equipment, safety showers/baths and other washing facilities prior to commencement of work.

### **INDEMNITY OF CLIENT AND HIS AGENTS**

1. The annexure to this Contract Document contains a "Mandatory Form of Authority and Agreement in terms of section 37(2) of the Occupational Health and Safety Act, No. 85 of 1993" which agreement shall be entered into and duly signed by both the Employer and Contractor prior to commencement with work.

A copy of the signed agreement shall be included in the Employer's Health and safety plan.

2. Any acceptance, approval, check, certificate, consent, examination, inspection, instruction, notice, observation, proposal, request, test or similar act by either the Employer, any of his agents or the Engineer (including absence of disapproval) shall not relieve the Contractor from any responsibility he has under the Contract, the Act and the Construction Regulations, including responsibility for errors, omissions, discrepancies and non-compliance.



**C5.2 CONTRACT DRAWINGS**

THE FOLLOWING IS A LIST OF CONTRACT DRAWINGS (SEE DRAWING BOOK 2 OF 2)

Item	Description	Drawing No
1	LAYOUT	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-01
2	LAYOUT AND LONGITUDINAL SECTION <b>STREET 10</b> : CH 0 TO CH 455 & <b>STREET 11</b> : CH 0 TO CH 144	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-02
3	LAYOUT AND LONGITUDINAL SECTION <b>STREET 12</b> : CH 0 TO CH 385	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-03
4	LAYOUT AND LONGITUDINAL SECTION <b>STREET 13</b> : CH 0 TO CH 313 & <b>STREET 14</b> : CH 0 TO CH 213	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-04
5	LAYOUT AND LONGITUDINAL SECTION <b>STREET 15</b> : CH 0 TO CH 224 & <b>STREET 16</b> : CH 0 TO CH 191	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-05
6	LAYOUT AND LONGITUDINAL SECTION <b>STREET 17</b> : CH 0 TO CH 212 & <b>STREET 18</b> : CH 0 TO CH 66	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-06
7	LAYOUT AND LONGITUDINAL SECTION <b>STREET 20</b> : CH 0 TO CH 113 & <b>STREET 21</b> : CH 0 TO CH 38	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-07
8	ROAD CROSS SECTION: <b>STREET 10</b> : CH 0 – CH 456 & <b>STREET 11</b> : CH 0 - 144	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-08
9	ROAD CROSS SECTION: <b>STREET 12</b> : CH 0 – CH 385 & <b>STREET 13</b> : CH 0 - 314	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-09
10	ROAD CROSS SECTION: <b>STREET 14</b> : CH 0 – CH 213 & <b>STREET 15</b> : CH 0 – 225 & <b>STREET 16</b> : CH 0 – CH 192	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-10
11	ROAD CROSS SECTION: <b>STREET 17</b> : CH 0 – CH 200 & <b>STREET 18</b> : CH 0 - 67	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-11
12	ROAD CROSS SECTION: <b>STREET 20</b> : CH 0 – CH 113 & <b>STREET 21</b> : CH 0 - 38	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-12
13	TYPICAL CROSS SECTION & PAVEMENT DESIGN	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-13
14	STORMWATER LONGITUDINAL SECTION: SHEET 1	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-14
15	STORMWATER LONGITUDINAL SECTION: SHEET 2	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-15
16	STORMWATER LONGITUDINAL SECTION: SHEET 3	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-16
17	STORMWATER LONGITUDINAL SECTION: SHEET 4	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-17
18	STORMWATER LONGITUDINAL SECTION: SHEET 5	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-18



Item	Description	Drawing No
19	DETAIL OF KERB INLET, STORMWATER PIPE BEDDING AND MANHOLES	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-19
20	DETAIL: GABION AND STONE PITCHING AT STORMWATER OUTLETS	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-20
21	STOP AND ROAD SIGN DETAILS	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-21
22	ROAD MARKING DETAILS	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-22
23	ROAD SIGN ERECTION DETAIL	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-23
24	DETAIL OF SPEED HUMPS	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-24
25	CONTRACT NAMEBOARD	TLM 56-2014-2015-PH1-25

**C5.3 GOVERNMENT PROCUREMENT: GENERAL CONDITION OF CONTRACT-  
JULY 2010**

**THE NATIONAL TREASURY**

**Republic of South Africa**



---

**GOVERNMENT PROCUREMENT:  
GENERAL CONDITIONS OF CONTRACT**

July 2010

## TABLE OF CLAUSES

1. Definitions
2. Application
3. General
4. Standards
5. Use of contract documents and information inspection
6. Patent Rights
7. Performance security
8. Inspections, tests and analyses
9. Packing
10. Delivery and documents
11. Insurance
12. Transportation
13. Incidental Services
14. Spare parts
15. Warranty
16. Payment
17. Prices
18. Variation orders
19. Assignment
20. Subcontracts
21. Delays in the supplier's performance
22. Penalties
23. Termination for default
24. Anti-dumping and countervailing duties and rights
25. Force Majeure
26. Termination for insolvency
27. Settlement of Disputes
28. Limitation of Liability
29. Governing language
30. Applicable law
31. Notices
32. Taxes and duties
33. Transfer of contracts
34. Amendments of contracts
35. Prohibition of restrictive practices

## General Conditions of Contract

### 1. Definitions

1. The following terms shall be interpreted as indicated:
  - 1.1 "Closing time" means the date and hour specified in the bidding documents for the receipt of bids.
  - 1.2 "Contract" means the written agreement entered into between the purchaser and the supplier, as recorded in the contract form signed by the parties, including all attachments and appendices thereto and all documents incorporated by reference therein.
  - 1.3 "Contract price" means the price payable to the supplier under the contract for the full and proper performance of his contractual obligations.
  - 1.4 "Corrupt practice" means the offering, giving, receiving, or soliciting of any thing of value to influence the action of a public official in the procurement process or in contract execution.
  - 1.5 "Countervailing duties" are imposed in cases where an enterprise abroad is subsidized by its government and encouraged to market its products internationally.
  - 1.6 "Country of origin" means the place where the goods were mined, grown or produced or from which the services are supplied. Goods are produced when, through manufacturing, processing or substantial and major assembly of components, a commercially recognized new product results that is substantially different in basic characteristics or in purpose or utility from its components.
  - 1.7 "Day" means calendar day.
  - 1.8 "Delivery" means delivery in compliance of the conditions of the contract or order.
  - 1.9 "Delivery ex stock" means immediate delivery directly from stock actually on hand.
  - 1.10 "Delivery into consignees store or to his site" means delivered and unloaded in the specified store or depot or on the specified site in compliance with the conditions of the contract or order, the supplier bearing all risks and charges involved until the goods are so delivered and a valid receipt is obtained.
  - 1.11 "Dumping" occurs when a private enterprise abroad market its goods on own initiative in the RSA at lower prices than that of the country of origin and which have the potential to harm the local industries in the RSA.

- 1.12 "Force majeure" means an event beyond the control of the supplier and not involving the supplier's fault or negligence and not foreseeable. Such events may include, but is not restricted to, acts of the purchaser in its sovereign capacity, wars or revolutions, fires, floods, epidemics, quarantine restrictions and freight embargoes.
- 1.13 "Fraudulent practice" means a misrepresentation of facts in order to influence a procurement process or the execution of a contract to the detriment of any bidder, and includes collusive practice among bidders (prior to or after bid submission) designed to establish bid prices at artificial non-competitive levels and to deprive the bidder of the benefits of free and open competition.
- 1.14 "GCC" means the General Conditions of Contract.
- 1.15 "Goods" means all of the equipment, machinery, and/or other materials that the supplier is required to supply to the purchaser under the contract.
- 1.16 "Imported content" means that portion of the bidding price represented by the cost of components, parts or materials which have been or are still to be imported (whether by the supplier or his subcontractors) and which costs are inclusive of the costs abroad, plus freight and other direct importation costs such as landing costs, dock dues, import duty, sales duty or other similar tax or duty at the South African place of entry as well as transportation and handling charges to the factory in the Republic where the goods covered by the bid will be manufactured.
- 1.17 "Local content" means that portion of the bidding price, which is not included in the imported content provided that local manufacture does take place.
- 1.18 "Manufacture" means the production of products in a factory using labour, materials, components and machinery and includes other related value-adding activities.
- 1.19 "Order" means an official written order issued for the supply of goods or works or the rendering of a service.
- 1.20 "Project site," where applicable, means the place indicated in bidding documents.
- 1.21 "Purchaser" means the organization purchasing the goods.
- 1.22 "Republic" means the Republic of South Africa.
- 1.23 "SCC" means the Special Conditions of Contract.
- 1.24 "Services" means those functional services ancillary to the

supply of the goods, such as transportation and any other incidental services, such as installation, commissioning, provision of technical assistance, training, catering, gardening, security, maintenance and other such obligations of the supplier covered under the contract.

- 1.25 "Supplier" means the successful bidder who is awarded the contract to maintain and administer the required and specified service(s) to the State.
- 1.26 "Tort" means in breach of contract.
- 1.27 "Turnkey" means a procurement process where one service provider assumes total responsibility for all aspects of the project and delivers the full end product / service required by the contract.
- 1.28 "Written" or "in writing" means hand-written in ink or any form of electronic or mechanical writing.

## **2. Application**

- 2.1 These general conditions are applicable to all bids, contracts and orders including bids for functional and professional services (excluding professional services related to the building and construction industry), sales, hiring, letting and the granting or acquiring of rights, but excluding immovable property, unless otherwise indicated in the bidding documents.
- 2.2 Where applicable, special conditions of contract are also laid down to cover specific goods, services or works.
- 2.3 Where such special conditions of contract are in conflict with these general conditions, the special conditions shall apply.

## **3. General**

- 3.1 Unless otherwise indicated in the bidding documents, the purchaser shall not be liable for any expense incurred in the preparation and submission of a bid. Where applicable a non-refundable fee for documents may be charged.
- 3.2 Invitations to bid are usually published in locally distributed news media and on the municipality/municipal entity website.

## **4. Standards**

- 4.1 The goods supplied shall conform to the standards mentioned in the bidding documents and specifications.

## **5. Use of contract documents and information inspection**

- 5.1 The supplier shall not, without the purchaser's prior written consent, disclose the contract, or any provision thereof, or any specification, plan, drawing, pattern, sample, or information furnished by or on behalf of the purchaser in connection therewith, to any person other than a person employed by the supplier in the performance of the contract. Disclosure to any such employed person shall be made in confidence and shall

extend only so far as may be necessary for purposes of such performance.

- 5.2 The supplier shall not, without the purchaser's prior written consent, make use of any document or information mentioned in GCC clause 5.1 except for purposes of performing the contract.
- 5.3 Any document, other than the contract itself mentioned in GCC clause 5.1 shall remain the property of the purchaser and shall be returned (all copies) to the purchaser on completion of the supplier's performance under the contract if so required by the purchaser.
- 5.4 The supplier shall permit the purchaser to inspect the supplier's records relating to the performance of the supplier and to have them audited by auditors appointed by the purchaser, if so required by the purchaser.

## **6. Patent Rights**

- 6.1 The supplier shall indemnify the purchaser against all third-party claims of infringement of patent, trademark, or industrial design rights arising from use of the goods or any part thereof by the purchaser.
- 6.2 When a supplier developed documentation / projects for the municipality / municipal entity, the intellectual, copy and patent rights or ownership of such documents or projects will vest in the municipality / municipal entity.

## **7. Performance security**

- 7.1 Within thirty (30) days of receipt of the notification of contract award, the successful bidder shall furnish to the purchaser the performance security of the amount specified in SCC.
- 7.2 The proceeds of the performance security shall be payable to the purchaser as compensation for any loss resulting from the supplier's failure to complete his obligations under the contract.
- 7.3 The performance security shall be denominated in the currency of the contract, or in a freely convertible currency acceptable to the purchaser and shall be in one of the following forms:
  - (a) a bank guarantee or an irrevocable letter of credit issued by a reputable bank located in the purchaser's country or abroad, acceptable to the purchaser, in the form provided in the bidding documents or another form acceptable to the purchaser; or
  - (b) a cashier's or certified cheque.
- 7.4 The performance security will be discharged by the purchaser and returned to the supplier not later than thirty (30) days following the date of completion of the supplier's performance obligations under the contract, including any warranty obligations, unless otherwise specified.



**8. Inspections, tests and analyses**

- 8.1 All pre-bidding testing will be for the account of the bidder.
- 8.2 If it is a bid condition that goods to be produced or services to be rendered should at any stage be subject to inspections, tests and analyses, the bidder or contractor's premises shall be open, at all reasonable hours, for inspection by a representative of the purchaser or organization acting on behalf of the purchaser.
- 8.3 If there are no inspection requirements indicated in the bidding documents and no mention is made in the contract, but during the contract period it is decided that inspections shall be carried out, the purchaser shall itself make the necessary arrangements, including payment arrangements with the testing authority concerned.
- 8.4 If the inspections, tests and analyses referred to in clauses 8.2 and 8.3 show the goods to be in accordance with the contract requirements, the cost of the inspections, tests and analyses shall be defrayed by the purchaser.
- 8.5 Where the goods or services referred to in clauses 8.2 and 8.3 do not comply with the contract requirements, irrespective of whether such goods or services are accepted or not, the cost in connection with these inspections, tests or analyses shall be defrayed by the supplier.
- 8.6 Goods and services which are referred to in clauses 8.2 and 8.3 and which do not comply with the contract requirements may be rejected.
- 8.7 Any contract goods may on or after delivery be inspected, tested or analysed and may be rejected if found not to comply with the requirements of the contract. Such rejected goods shall be held at the cost and risk of the supplier who shall, when called upon, remove them immediately at his own cost and forthwith substitute them with goods, which do comply with the requirements of the contract. Failing such removal the rejected goods shall be returned at the suppliers cost and risk. Should the supplier fail to provide the substitute goods forthwith, the purchaser may, without giving the supplier further opportunity to substitute the rejected goods, purchase such goods as may be necessary at the expense of the supplier.
- 8.8 The provisions of clauses 8.4 to 8.7 shall not prejudice the right of the purchaser to cancel the contract on account of a breach of the conditions thereof, or to act in terms of Clause 22 of GCC.

**9. Packing**

- 9.1 The supplier shall provide such packing of the goods as is required to prevent their damage or deterioration during transit to their final destination, as indicated in the contract. The packing shall be sufficient to withstand, without limitation, rough handling during transit and exposure to extreme temperatures, salt and precipitation during transit, and open storage. Packing, case size

weights shall take into consideration, where appropriate, the remoteness of the goods' final destination and the absence of heavy handling facilities at all points in transit.

- 9.2 The packing, marking, and documentation within and outside the packages shall comply strictly with such special requirements as shall be expressly provided for in the contract, including additional requirements, if any, and in any subsequent instructions ordered by the purchaser.

**10. Delivery and documents**

- 10.1 Delivery of the goods and arrangements for shipping and clearance obligations, shall be made by the supplier in accordance with the terms specified in the contract.

**11. Insurance**

- 11.1 The goods supplied under the contract shall be fully insured in a freely convertible currency against loss or damage incidental to manufacture or acquisition, transportation, storage and delivery in the manner specified.

**12. Transportation**

- 12.1 Should a price other than an all-inclusive delivered price be required, this shall be specified.

**13. Incidental Services**

- 13.1 The supplier may be required to provide any or all of the following services, including additional services, if any:

- (a) performance or supervision of on-site assembly and/or commissioning of the supplied goods;
- (b) furnishing of tools required for assembly and/or maintenance of the supplied goods;
- (c) furnishing of a detailed operations and maintenance manual for each appropriate unit of the supplied goods;
- (d) performance or supervision or maintenance and/or repair of the supplied goods, for a period of time agreed by the parties, provided that this service shall not relieve the supplier of any warranty obligations under this contract; and
- (e) training of the purchaser's personnel, at the supplier's plant and/or on-site, in assembly, start-up, operation, maintenance, and/or repair of the supplied goods.

- 13.2 Prices charged by the supplier for incidental services, if not included in the contract price for the goods, shall be agreed upon in advance by the parties and shall not exceed the prevailing rates charged to other parties by the supplier for similar services.

**14. Spare parts**

- 14.1 As specified, the supplier may be required to provide any or all of the following materials, notifications, and information pertaining to spare parts manufactured or distributed by the supplier:

- (a) such spare parts as the purchaser may elect to purchase from the supplier, provided that this election shall not relieve the supplier of any warranty obligations under the contract; and;
- (b) in the event of termination of production of the spare parts:
  - (i) advance notification to the purchaser of the pending termination, in sufficient time to permit the purchaser to procure needed requirements; and
  - (ii) following such termination, furnishing at no cost to the purchaser, the blueprints, drawings, and specifications of the spare parts, if requested.

**15. Warranty**

- 15.1 The supplier warrants that the goods supplied under the contract are new, unused, of the most recent or current models, and that they incorporate all recent improvements in design and materials unless provided otherwise in the contract. The supplier further warrants that all goods supplied under this contract shall have no defect, arising from design, materials, or workmanship (except when the design and/or material is required by the purchaser's specifications) or from any act or omission of the supplier, that may develop under normal use of the supplied goods in the conditions prevailing in the country of final destination.
- 15.2 This warranty shall remain valid for twelve (12) months after the goods, or any portion thereof as the case may be, have been delivered to and accepted at the final destination indicated in the contract, or for eighteen (18) months after the date of shipment from the port or place of loading in the source country, whichever period concludes earlier, unless specified otherwise.
- 15.3 The purchaser shall promptly notify the supplier in writing of any claims arising under this warranty.
- 15.4 Upon receipt of such notice, the supplier shall, within the period specified and with all reasonable speed, repair or replace the defective goods or parts thereof, without costs to the purchaser.
- 15.5 If the supplier, having been notified, fails to remedy the defect(s) within the period specified, the purchaser may proceed to take such remedial action as may be necessary, at the supplier's risk and expense and without prejudice to any other rights which the purchaser may have against the supplier under the contract.

**16. Payment**

- 16.1 The method and conditions of payment to be made to the supplier under this contract shall be specified.
- 16.2 The supplier shall furnish the purchaser with an invoice accompanied by a copy of the delivery note and upon fulfillment of other obligations stipulated in the contract.

- 16.3 Payments shall be made promptly by the purchaser, but in no case later than thirty (30) days after submission of an invoice or claim by the supplier.
- 16.4 Payment will be made in Rand unless otherwise stipulated.
- 17. Prices**
- 17.1 Prices charged by the supplier for goods delivered and services performed under the contract shall not vary from the prices quoted by the supplier in his bid, with the exception of any price adjustments authorized or in the purchaser's request for bid validity extension, as the case may be.
- 18. Variation orders**
- 18.1 In cases where the estimated value of the envisaged changes in purchase does not vary more than 15% of the total value of the original contract, the contractor may be instructed to deliver the goods or render the services as such. In cases of measurable quantities, the contractor may be approached to reduce the unit price, and such offers may be accepted provided that there is no escalation in price.
- 19. Assignment**
- 19.1 The supplier shall not assign, in whole or in part, its obligations to perform under the contract, except with the purchaser's prior written consent.
- 20. Subcontracts**
- 20.1 The supplier shall notify the purchaser in writing of all subcontracts awarded under this contracts if not already specified in the bid. Such notification, in the original bid or later, shall not relieve the supplier from any liability or obligation under the contract.
- 21. Delays in the supplier's performance**
- 21.1 Delivery of the goods and performance of services shall be made by the supplier in accordance with the time schedule prescribed by the purchaser in the contract.
- 21.2 If at any time during performance of the contract, the supplier or its subcontractor(s) should encounter conditions impeding timely delivery of the goods and performance of services, the supplier shall promptly notify the purchaser in writing of the fact of the delay, its likely duration and its cause(s). As soon as practicable after receipt of the supplier's notice, the purchaser shall evaluate the situation and may at his discretion extend the supplier's time for performance, with or without the imposition of penalties, in which case the extension shall be ratified by the parties by amendment of contract.
- 21.3 The right is reserved to procure outside of the contract small quantities or to have minor essential services executed if an emergency arises, the supplier's point of supply is not situated at or near the place where the goods are required, or the supplier's services are not readily available.

21.4 Except as provided under GCC Clause 25, a delay by the supplier in the performance of its delivery obligations shall render the supplier liable to the imposition of penalties, pursuant to GCC Clause 22, unless an extension of time is agreed upon pursuant to GCC Clause 22.2 without the application of penalties.

21.5 Upon any delay beyond the delivery period in the case of a goods contract, the purchaser shall, without cancelling the contract, be entitled to purchase goods of a similar quality and up to the same quantity in substitution of the goods not supplied in conformity with the contract and to return any goods delivered later at the supplier's expense and risk, or to cancel the contract and buy such goods as may be required to complete the contract and without prejudice to his other rights, be entitled to claim damages from the supplier.

## **22. Penalties**

22.1 Subject to GCC Clause 25, if the supplier fails to deliver any or all of the goods or to perform the services within the period(s) specified in the contract, the purchaser shall, without prejudice to its other remedies under the contract, deduct from the contract price, as a penalty, a sum calculated on the delivered price of the delayed goods or unperformed services using the current prime interest rate calculated for each day of the delay until actual delivery or performance. The purchaser may also consider termination of the contract pursuant to GCC Clause 23.

## **23. Termination for default**

23.1 The purchaser, without prejudice to any other remedy for breach of contract, by written notice of default sent to the supplier, may terminate this contract in whole or in part:

- (a) if the supplier fails to deliver any or all of the goods within the period(s) specified in the contract, or within any extension thereof granted by the purchaser pursuant to GCC Clause 21.2;
- (b) if the supplier fails to perform any other obligation(s) under the contract; or
- (c) if the supplier, in the judgement of the purchaser, has engaged in corrupt or fraudulent practices in competing for or in executing the contract.

23.2 In the event the purchaser terminates the contract in whole or in part, the purchaser may procure, upon such terms and in such manner, as it deems appropriate, goods, works or services similar to those undelivered, and the supplier shall be liable to the purchaser for any excess costs for such similar goods, works or services. However, the supplier shall continue performance of the contract to the extent not terminated.

23.3 Where the purchaser terminates the contract in whole or in part, the purchaser may decide to impose a restriction penalty on the supplier by prohibiting such supplier from doing business with the public sector for a period not exceeding 10 years.

**THE NATIONAL TREASURY: Republic of South Africa**

- 23.4 If a purchaser intends imposing a restriction on a supplier or any person associated with the supplier, the supplier will be allowed a time period of not more than fourteen (14) days to provide reasons why the envisaged restriction should not be imposed. Should the supplier fail to respond within the stipulated fourteen (14) days the purchaser may regard the supplier as having no objection and proceed with the restriction.
- 23.5 . Any restriction imposed on any person by the purchaser will, at the discretion of the purchaser, also be applicable to any other enterprise or any partner, manager, director or other person who wholly or partly exercises or exercised or may exercise control over the enterprise of the first-mentioned person, and with which enterprise or person the first-mentioned person, is or was in the opinion of the purchaser actively associated.
- 23.6 If a restriction is imposed, the purchaser must, within five (5) working days of such imposition, furnish the National Treasury, with the following information:
- (i) the name and address of the supplier and / or person restricted by the purchaser;
  - (ii) the date of commencement of the restriction
  - (iii) the period of restriction; and
  - (iv) the reasons for the restriction.

These details will be loaded in the National Treasury's central database of suppliers or persons prohibited from doing business with the public sector.

- 23.7 . If a court of law convicts a person of an offence as contemplated in sections 12 or 13 of the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act, No. 12 of 2004, the court may also rule that such person's name be endorsed on the Register for Tender Defaulters. When a person's name has been endorsed on the Register, the person will be prohibited from doing business with the public sector for a period not less than five years and not more than 10 years. The National Treasury is empowered to determine the period of restriction and each case will be dealt with on its own merits. According to section 32 of the Act the Register must be open to the public. The Register can be perused on the National Treasury website

**24. Anti-dumping and countervailing duties and rights**

24.1 When, after the date of bid, provisional payments are required, or anti-dumping or countervailing duties are imposed, or the amount of a provisional payment or anti-dumping or countervailing right is increased in respect of any dumped or subsidized import, the State is not liable for any amount so required or imposed, or for the amount of any such increase. When, after the said date, such a provisional payment is no longer required or any such anti-dumping or countervailing right is abolished, or where the amount of such provisional payment or any such right is reduced, any such favourable difference shall on demand be paid forthwith by the supplier to the purchaser or the purchaser may deduct such amounts from moneys (if any) which may otherwise be due to the supplier in regard to goods or services which he delivered or rendered, or is to deliver or render in terms of the contract or any other contract or any other amount which may be due to him.

**25. Force Majeure**

25.1 Notwithstanding the provisions of GCC Clauses 22 and 23, the supplier shall not be liable for forfeiture of its performance security, damages, or termination for default if and to the extent that his delay in performance or other failure to perform his obligations under the contract is the result of an event of force majeure.

25.2 If a force majeure situation arises, the supplier shall promptly notify the purchaser in writing of such condition and the cause thereof. Unless otherwise directed by the purchaser in writing, the supplier shall continue to perform its obligations under the contract as far as is reasonably practical, and shall seek all reasonable alternative means for performance not prevented by the force majeure event.

**26. Termination for insolvency**

26.1 The purchaser may at any time terminate the contract by giving written notice to the supplier if the supplier becomes bankrupt or otherwise insolvent. In this event, termination will be without compensation to the supplier, provided that such termination will not prejudice or affect any right of action or remedy, which has accrued or will accrue thereafter to the purchaser.

**27. Settlement of Disputes**

27.1 If any dispute or difference of any kind whatsoever arises between the purchaser and the supplier in connection with or arising out of the contract, the parties shall make every effort to resolve amicably such dispute or difference by mutual consultation.

27.2 If, after thirty (30) days, the parties have failed to resolve their dispute or difference by such mutual consultation, then either the purchaser or the supplier may give notice to the other party of his intention to commence with mediation. No mediation in respect of this matter may be commenced unless such notice is given to the other party.

27.3 Should it not be possible to settle a dispute by means of mediation, it may be settled in a South African court of law.

27.4 Notwithstanding any reference to mediation and/or court proceedings herein,

(a) the parties shall continue to perform their respective obligations under the contract unless they otherwise agree; and

(b) the purchaser shall pay the supplier any monies due the supplier for goods delivered and / or services rendered according to the prescripts of the contract.

## **28. Limitation of Liability**

28.1 Except in cases of criminal negligence or willful misconduct, and in the case of infringement pursuant to Clause 6;

(a) the supplier shall not be liable to the purchaser, whether in contract, tort, or otherwise, for any indirect or consequential loss or damage, loss of use, loss of production, or loss of profits or interest costs, provided that this exclusion shall not apply to any obligation of the supplier to pay penalties and/or damages to the purchaser; and

(b) the aggregate liability of the supplier to the purchaser, whether under the contract, in tort or otherwise, shall not exceed the total contract price, provided that this limitation shall not apply to the cost of repairing or replacing defective equipment.

## **29. Governing language**

29.1 The contract shall be written in English. All correspondence and other documents pertaining to the contract that is exchanged by the parties shall also be written in English.

## **30. Applicable law**

30.1 The contract shall be interpreted in accordance with South African laws, unless otherwise specified.

## **31. Notices**

31.1 Every written acceptance of a bid shall be posted to the supplier concerned by registered or certified mail and any other notice to him shall be posted by ordinary mail to the address furnished in his bid or to the address notified later by him in writing and such posting shall be deemed to be proper service of such notice.

31.2 The time mentioned in the contract documents for performing any act after such aforesaid notice has been given, shall be reckoned from the date of posting of such notice.

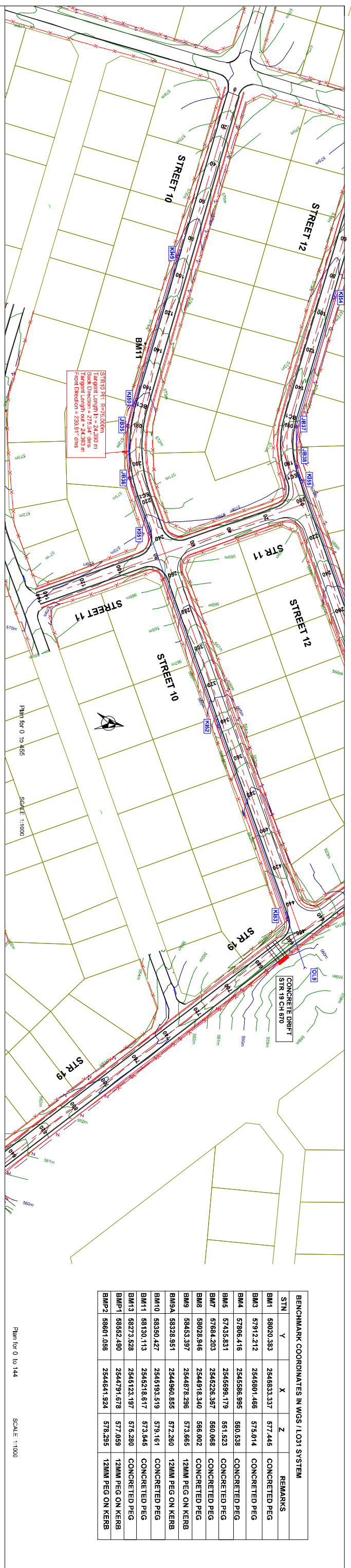
## **32. Taxes and duties**

32.1 A foreign supplier shall be entirely responsible for all taxes, stamp duties, license fees, and other such levies imposed outside the purchaser's country.



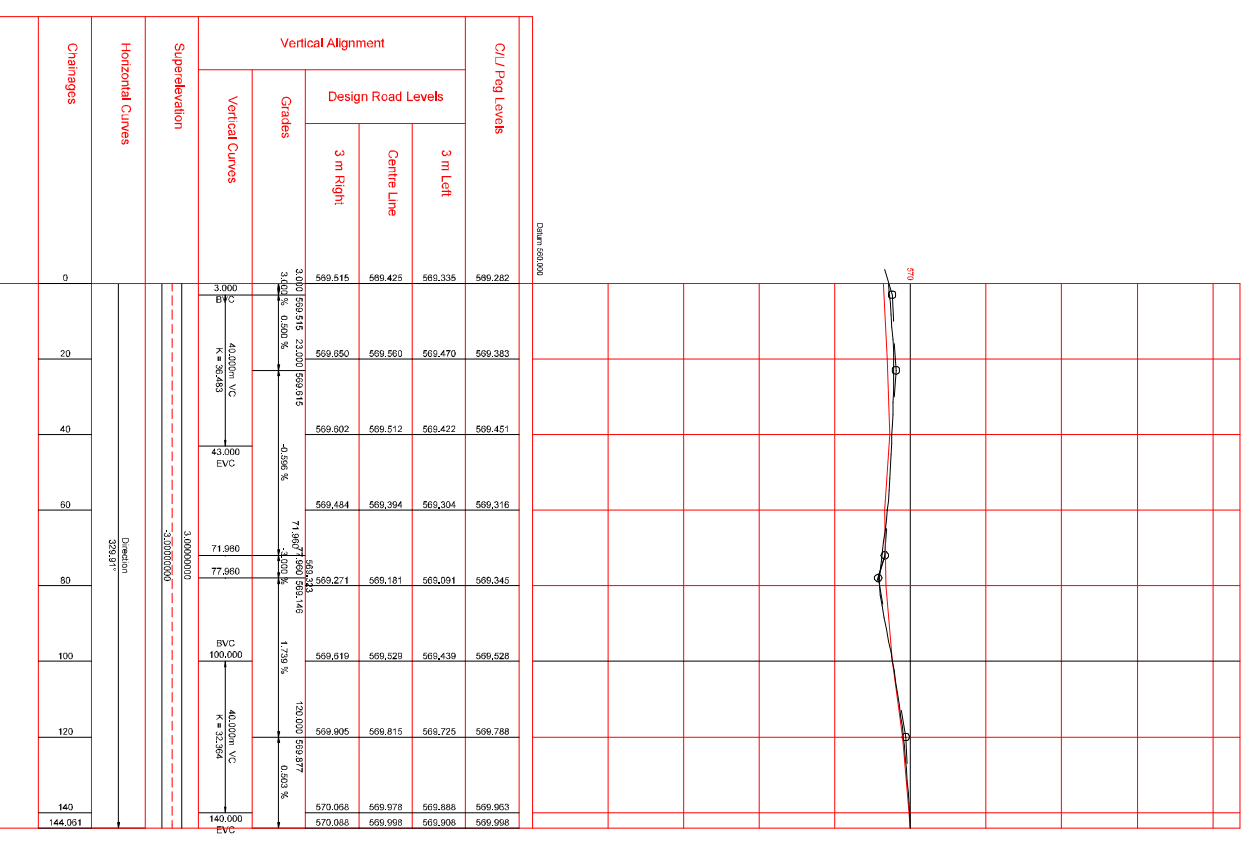
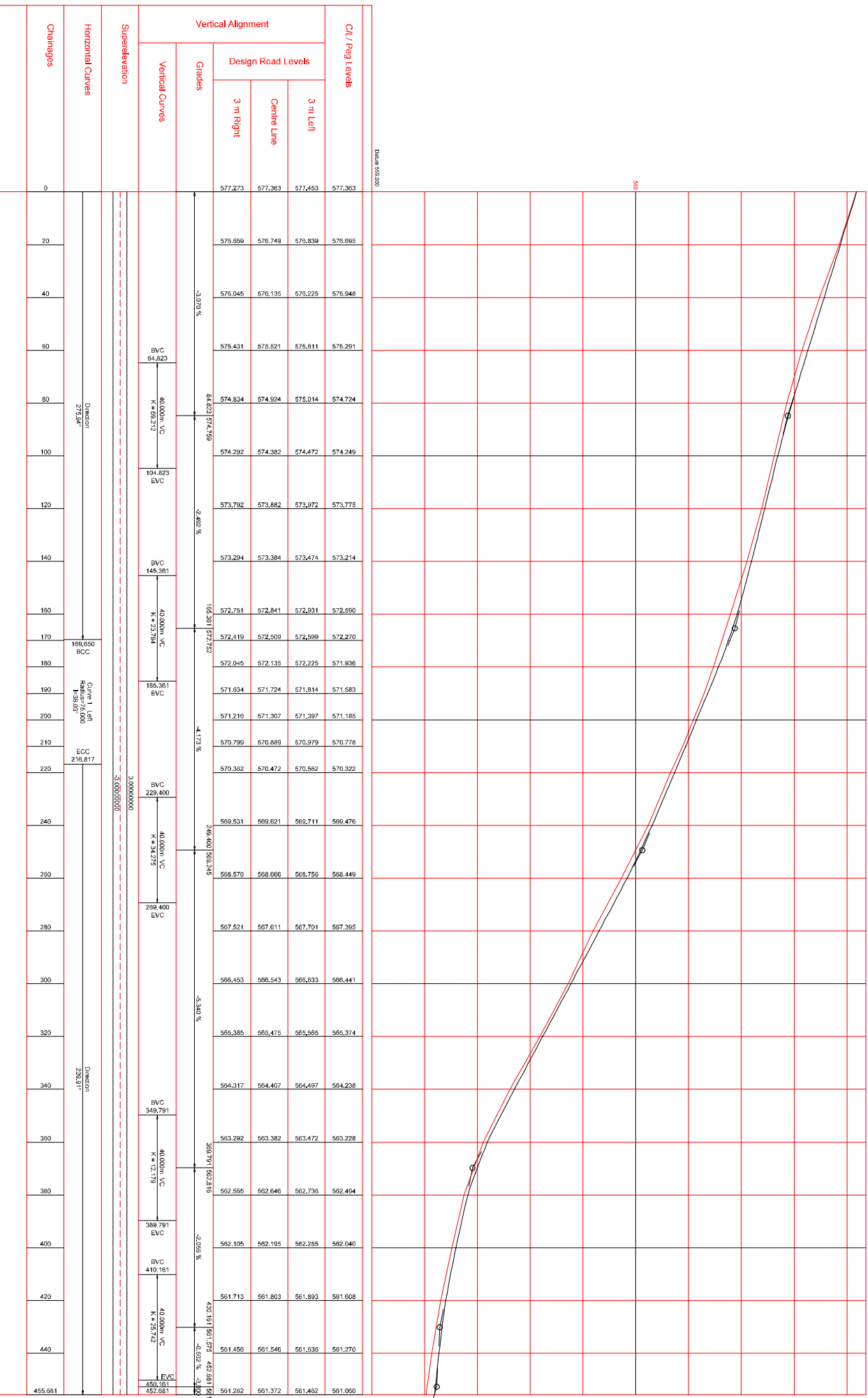
- 32.2 A local supplier shall be entirely responsible for all taxes, duties, license fees, etc., incurred until delivery of the contracted goods to the purchaser.
- 32.3 No contract shall be concluded with any bidder whose tax matters are not in order. Prior to the award of a bid SARS must have certified that the tax matters of the preferred bidder are in order.
- 32.4 No contract shall be concluded with any bidder whose municipal rates and taxes and municipal services charges are in arrears.
- 33. Transfer of contracts**
- 33.1 The contractor shall not abandon, transfer, cede assign or sublet a contract or part thereof without the written permission of the purchaser
- 34. Amendment of contracts**
- 34.1 No agreement to amend or vary a contract or order or the conditions, stipulations or provisions thereof shall be valid and of any force unless such agreement to amend or vary is entered into in writing and signed by the contracting parties. Any waiver of the requirement that the agreement to amend or vary shall be in writing, shall also be in writing.
- 35. Prohibition of restrictive practices**
- 35.1 In terms of section 4 (1) (b) (iii) of the Competition Act No. 89 of 1998, as amended, an agreement between, or concerted practice by, firms, or a decision by an association of firms, is prohibited if it is between parties in a horizontal relationship and if a bidder(s) is / are or a contractor(s) was / were involved in collusive bidding.
- 35.2 If a bidder(s) or contractor(s) based on reasonable grounds or evidence obtained by the purchaser has / have engaged in the restrictive practice referred to above, the purchaser may refer the matter to the Competition Commission for investigation and possible imposition of administrative penalties as contemplated in section 59 of the Competition Act No 89 Of 1998.
- 35.3 If a bidder(s) or contractor(s) has / have been found guilty by the Competition Commission of the restrictive practice referred to above, the purchaser may, in addition and without prejudice to any other remedy provided for, invalidate the bid(s) for such item(s) offered, and / or terminate the contract in whole or part, and / or restrict the bidder(s) or contractor(s) from conducting business with the public sector for a period not exceeding ten (10) years and / or claim damages from the bidder(s) or contractor(s) concerned.





**BENCHMARK COORDINATES IN WGS 1984 SYSTEM**

STN	Y	X	Z	REMARKS
BM1	58020.333	2849633.337	577.445	CONCRETED PEG
BM3	57912.212	2845801.488	575.014	CONCRETED PEG
BM4	57806.416	2845586.995	580.538	CONCRETED PEG
BM5	57435.831	2845898.179	581.523	CONCRETED PEG
BM7	57684.203	2845228.387	580.068	CONCRETED PEG
BM8	58028.946	2844918.340	588.002	CONCRETED PEG
BM9	58453.397	2844878.296	573.865	12MM PEG ON KERB
BM9A	58328.951	2844960.855	572.260	12MM PEG ON KERB
BM10	58380.427	2845193.519	578.161	CONCRETED PEG
BM11	58130.113	2845218.617	573.545	CONCRETED PEG
BM13	58273.528	2845123.197	575.280	CONCRETED PEG
BMP1	58552.450	2844791.678	577.059	12MM PEG ON KERB
BMP2	58601.058	2844641.924	578.295	12MM PEG ON KERB



**FOR DESIGN PURPOSES**

**THULAMELA MUNICIPALITY**  
Thulamela Municipality  
Private Bag 25066  
Thonoyandou  
0950

**TSHASHU CONSULTING & PROJECT MANAGERS**  
P.O. BOX 607  
POTDAMMORONG  
TEL: 091 444 444  
FAX: 091 281 882

**PROFESSIONAL ENGINEERING SERVICES FOR SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS WITHIN THE THULAMELA MUNICIPALITY - PHASE 1 LAYOUT AND LONGITUDINAL SECTION:**  
STREET 10: CH 0 TO CH 455 & STREET 11: CH 0 TO CH 144

Horizontal Scale: 1:1000  
Vertical Scale: 1:100

AS BUILT PLAN

Scale: 1 of 1  
HOR 1:1000  
VER 1:100

DATE: \_\_\_\_\_  
REVISION: \_\_\_\_\_  
NO: \_\_\_\_\_

DESIGNED BY: \_\_\_\_\_  
CHECKED BY: \_\_\_\_\_  
DRAWN BY: \_\_\_\_\_  
CHECKED BY: \_\_\_\_\_

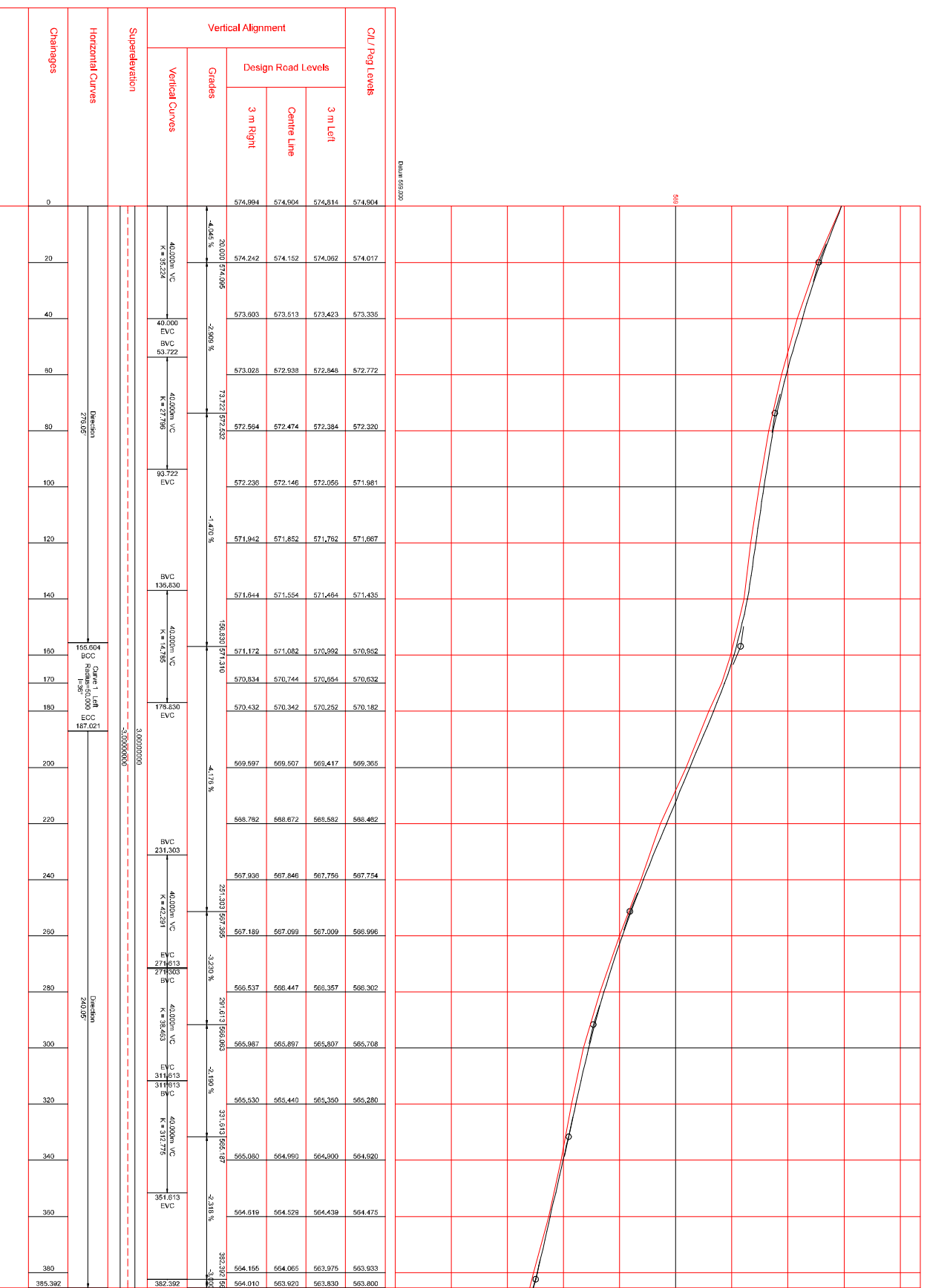
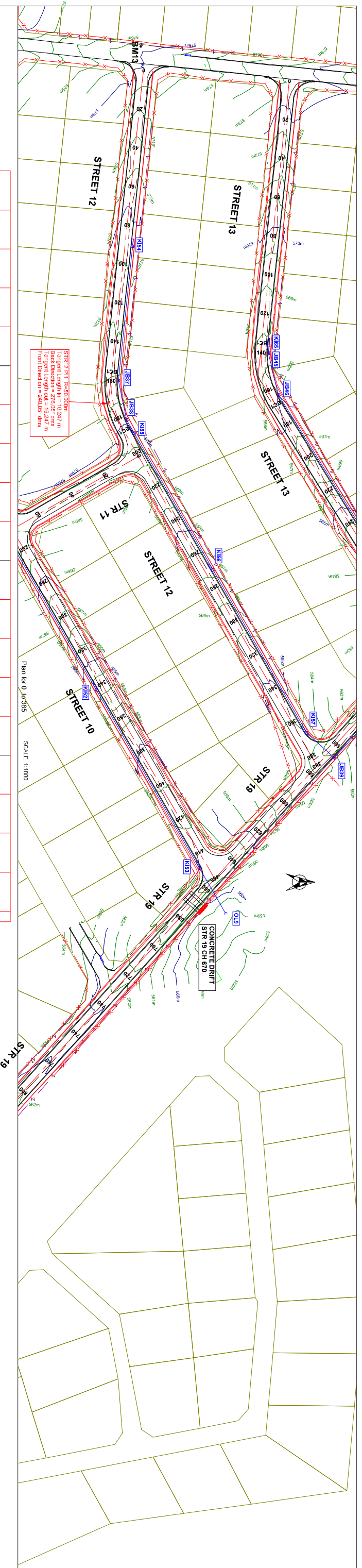
SCALE ON REDUCED DRAWING

DATE: \_\_\_\_\_  
REVISION: \_\_\_\_\_  
NO: \_\_\_\_\_

CONSULTING ENGINEER: \_\_\_\_\_  
DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

TS/40/2023/2024/PH/102

TS/40/2023/2024/PH/102



STN	Y	X	Z	REMARKS
BM1	58020.383	2545833.337	577.445	CONCRETED PEG
BM3	57912.212	2545801.466	575.014	CONCRETED PEG
BM4	57806.416	2545586.995	560.538	CONCRETED PEG
BM5	57435.831	2545699.179	551.523	CONCRETED PEG
BM7	57684.203	2545226.357	560.068	CONCRETED PEG
BM8	58028.946	2544918.340	566.002	CONCRETED PEG
BM9	58453.397	2544878.296	573.665	12MM PEG ON KERB
BM9A	58328.951	2544960.855	572.260	12MM PEG ON KERB
BM10	58350.427	2546193.819	579.161	CONCRETED PEG
BM11	58130.113	2545218.817	573.545	CONCRETED PEG
BM13	58273.528	2546123.197	575.280	CONCRETED PEG
BM1P1	58552.490	2544791.678	577.059	12MM PEG ON KERB
BM1P2	58601.066	2544664.924	578.295	12MM PEG ON KERB

Longeation CH 0 to CH 385  
Horizontal Scale: 1:1000  
Vertical Scale: 1:100

CU / Peg Levels	Design Road Levels		
	3 m Left	Centre Line	3 m Right
	Grades	Grades	Grades
574.904	574.904	574.904	4.04% %
574.017	574.242	574.242	-2.90% %
573.335	573.603	573.613	73.722 572.522
572.772	573.026	572.938	158.830 571.310
572.320	572.564	572.474	4.17% %
571.981	572.236	572.146	178.830 571.310
571.667	571.942	571.852	4.000m VC K = 32.234
571.435	571.644	571.554	4.000m VC K = 27.789
570.952	571.172	571.082	4.000m VC K = 74.795
570.632	570.834	570.744	4.000m VC K = 42.291
570.182	570.432	570.342	4.000m VC K = 36.403
569.355	569.597	569.507	3.000m VC K = 200.000
568.482	568.792	568.672	4.000m VC K = 42.291
567.754	567.936	567.846	4.000m VC K = 22.291
566.996	567.189	567.099	4.000m VC K = 36.403
566.302	566.537	566.447	4.000m VC K = 36.403
565.708	565.987	565.897	4.000m VC K = 31.715
565.280	565.530	565.440	4.000m VC K = 31.715
564.920	565.080	564.990	4.000m VC K = 31.715
564.475	564.619	564.529	4.000m VC K = 31.715
563.933	564.165	564.065	4.000m VC K = 31.715
563.800	563.920	563.830	4.000m VC K = 31.715

Superelevation	
Direction	270.05°
Direction	240.05°

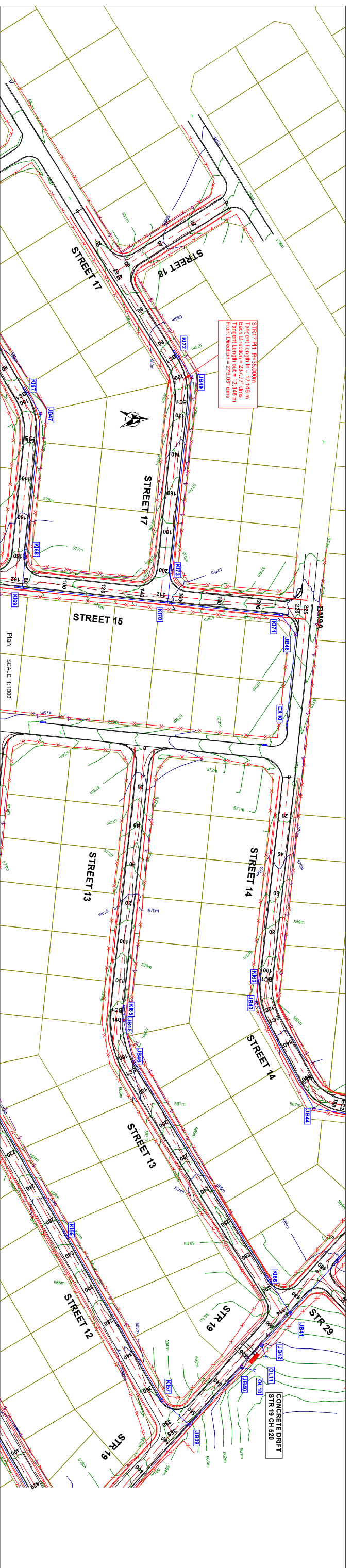
Horizontal Curves	
Direction	270.05°
Direction	240.05°

Changages	
0	20
40	80
120	160
200	280
300	320
340	360
380	395

<b>FOR DESIGN PURPOSES</b>		DESIGNED BY CHECKED BY		DRAWN BY CHECKED BY	
<b>THULAMELA MUNICIPALITY</b> Thulamela Municipality Private Bag X5066 Thononyandou 0950 TEL: (019) 982-7500 FAX: (019) 982-4020		<b>TSHASHU CONSULTING &amp; PROJECT MANAGERS</b> P.O. BOX 607 PHOENIXWATERHOFF TEL: 019 444 4444 FAX: 019 281 8882		CONTRACT NUMBER: 40/2023/2024 <b>PROFESSIONAL ENGINEERING SERVICES FOR SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS WITHIN THE THULAMELA MUNICIPALITY - PHASE 1 LAYOUT AND LONGITUDINAL SECTION: STREET 12: CH 0 TO CH 385</b>	
AS BUILT PLAN TSH/40/2023/2024/PH/103		SHEET 1 OF 1		SCALE HOR 1:1000 VER 1:100 DRAWING NUMBER: TLM 40/2023/2024/PH/103	







**BENCHMARK COORDINATES IN WGS 1984 SYSTEM**

STN	Y	X	Z	REMARKS
BM1	58020.383	2545833.337	577.445	CONCRETED PEG
BM3	57912.212	2545801.466	575.914	CONCRETED PEG
BM4	57806.416	2545888.996	580.538	CONCRETED PEG
BM5	57435.831	2545699.179	561.523	CONCRETED PEG
BM7	57684.203	2545228.367	580.068	CONCRETED PEG
BM6	58028.946	2544918.340	566.002	CONCRETED PEG
BM9	58453.397	2544878.296	573.865	12MM PEG ON KERB
BM9A	58328.951	2544860.856	572.260	12MM PEG ON KERB
BM10	58350.427	2545193.519	579.161	CONCRETED PEG
BM11	58130.713	2545218.617	573.545	CONCRETED PEG
BM13	58273.528	2545123.197	575.280	CONCRETED PEG
BM17	58552.490	2544791.678	577.899	12MM PEG ON KERB
BM18	58601.056	2544841.924	578.295	12MM PEG ON KERB

**Vertical Alignment**

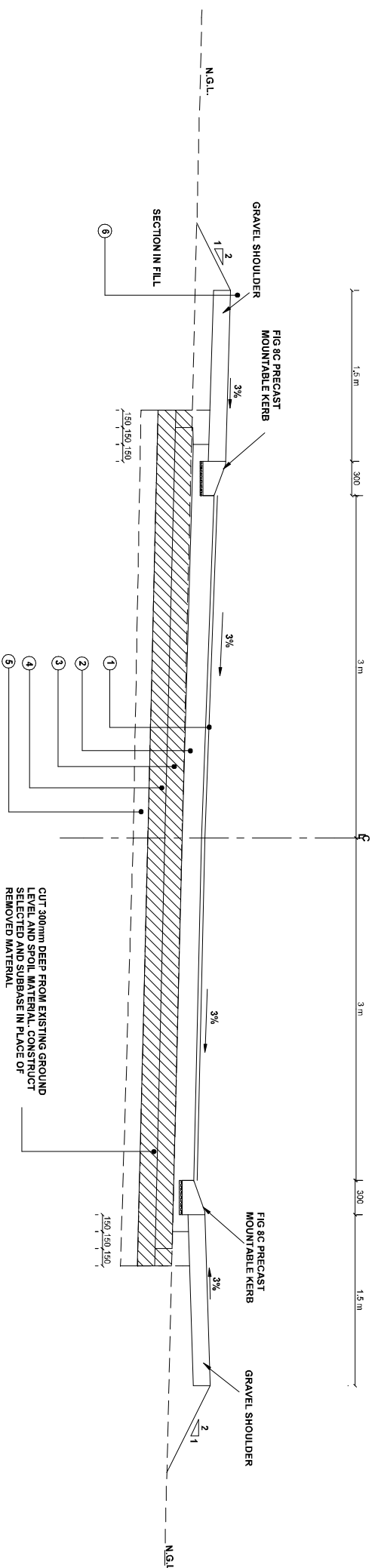
Design Road Levels

Station	3 m Left		Centre Line	3 m Right	
	Level	Level	Level	Level	Level
581.795	581.544	581.211	580.772	579.889	579.002
581.469	581.211	580.482	579.543	578.659	577.772
581.176	579.709	578.927	578.300	577.416	576.532
580.810	579.250	578.474	577.851	576.967	576.082
579.591	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
579.170	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
578.732	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
578.322	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
577.904	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
577.486	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
577.068	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
576.650	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
576.232	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
575.814	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
575.396	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
574.978	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
574.560	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
574.142	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
573.724	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
573.306	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
572.888	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
572.470	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
572.052	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
571.634	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
571.216	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
570.798	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
570.380	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
569.962	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
569.544	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
569.126	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
568.708	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
568.290	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
567.872	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
567.454	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
567.036	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
566.618	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
566.200	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
565.782	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
565.364	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
564.946	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
564.528	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
564.110	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
563.692	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
563.274	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
562.856	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
562.438	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
562.020	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
561.602	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
561.184	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
560.766	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
560.348	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
559.930	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
559.512	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
559.094	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
558.676	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
558.258	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
557.840	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
557.422	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
557.004	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
556.586	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
556.168	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
555.750	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
555.332	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
554.914	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
554.496	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
554.078	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
553.660	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
553.242	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
552.824	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
552.406	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
551.988	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
551.570	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
551.152	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
550.734	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
550.316	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
549.898	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
549.480	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
549.062	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
548.644	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
548.226	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
547.808	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
547.390	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
546.972	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
546.554	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
546.136	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
545.718	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
545.300	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
544.882	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
544.464	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
544.046	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
543.628	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
543.210	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
542.792	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
542.374	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
541.956	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
541.538	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
541.120	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
540.702	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
540.284	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
539.866	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
539.448	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
539.030	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
538.612	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
538.194	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
537.776	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
537.358	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
536.940	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
536.522	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
536.104	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
535.686	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
535.268	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
534.850	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
534.432	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
534.014	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
533.596	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
533.178	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
532.760	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
532.342	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
531.924	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
531.506	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
531.088	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
530.670	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
530.252	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
529.834	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
529.416	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
528.998	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
528.580	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
528.162	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
527.744	579.250	578.827	578.236	577.501	576.765
527.326	579.250	578.827			



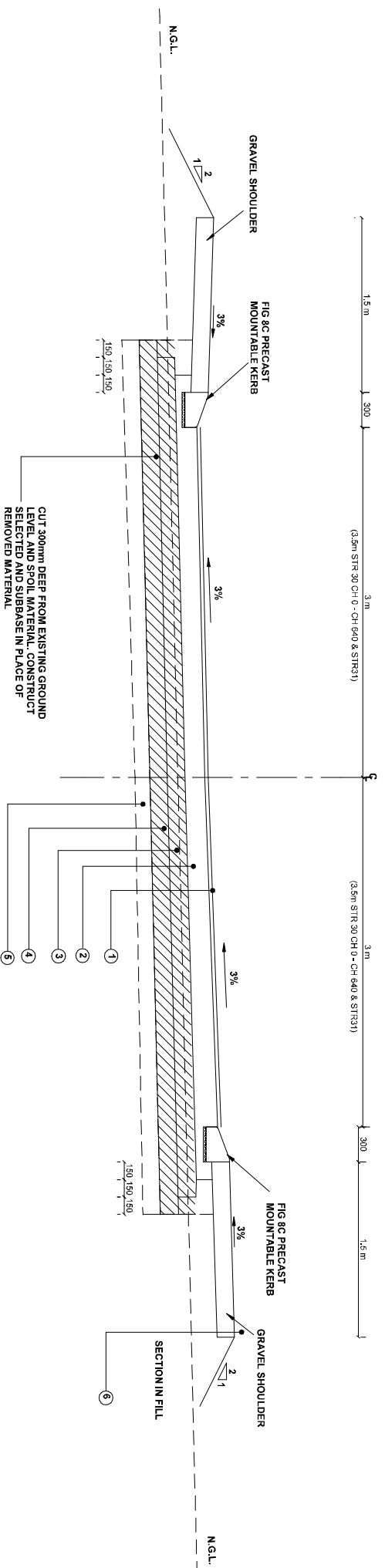


MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS						
LAYER NO.	LAYER	THICKNESS (mm)	MIN UCS (KPa)	MIN CBR	TRH 4	DESCRIPTION
1	SURFACE TREATMENT	40			S	CONTINUOUS GRADED ASPHALT
2	BASE	150			G2	MATERIAL OBTAINED FROM COMMERCIAL SOURCES AND COMPACTED TO 85% OF APPARENT RELATIVE DENSITY
3	SUB-BASE	150	750	15	C4	STABILISED LAYER @ 95% MOD AASHTO DENSITY
4	SELECTED LAYER	150		15	G7	NATURAL GRAVEL COMPACTED TO 93% MOD AASHTO DENSITY
5	IN-SITU ROADBED	150				IN-SITU RIP & RECOMPACT TO 90% MOD AASHTO DENSITY
6	FILL				G10	COMPACT TO 98% MOD AASHTO DENSITY



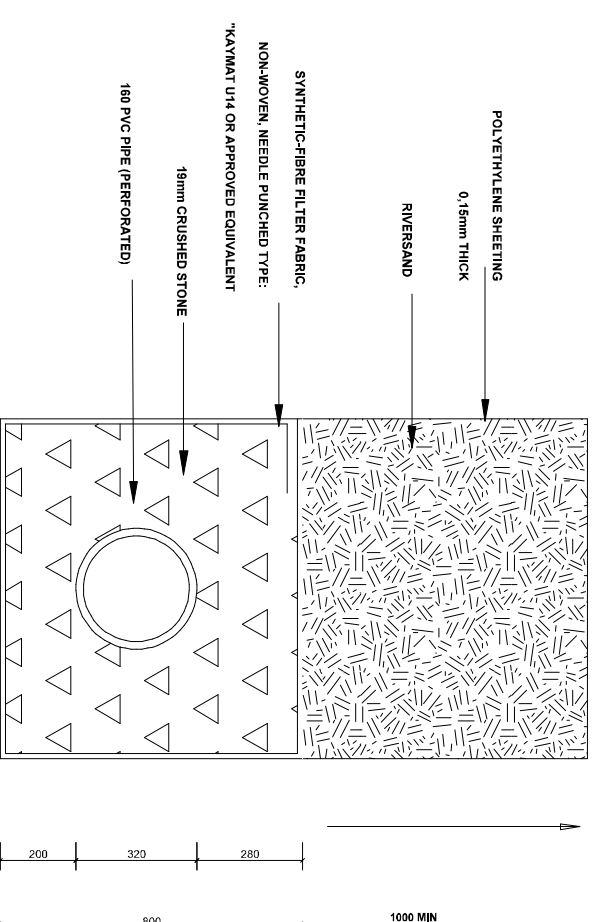
TYPICAL CROSS SECTION: RIGHT SIDE LOW

SCALE 1 : 25



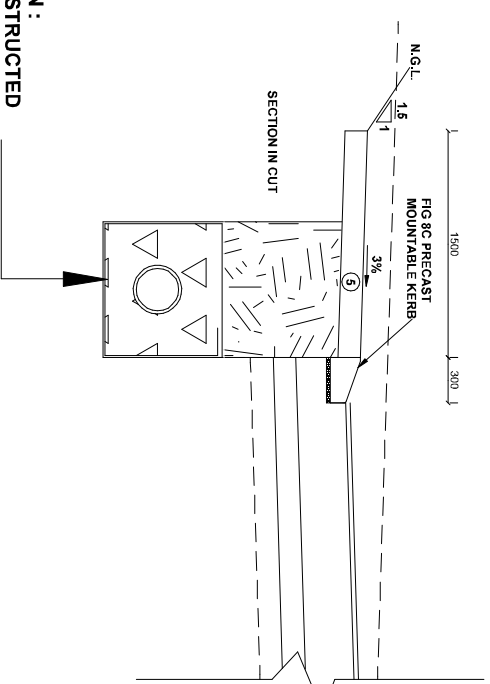
TYPICAL CROSS SECTION: LEFT SIDE LOW

SCALE 1 : 25



DETAIL OF SUBSOIL-DRAIN

SCALE 1 : 10



SUBSOIL DRAIN :  
ONLY WHEN INSTRUCTED  
BY THE ENGINEER  
(SEE TYPICAL DETAIL)

EDGE IN CUT WHERE SUBSOIL DRAIN IS NEEDED

SCALE 1 : 25

FOR DESIGN PURPOSES		DESIGNED BY	THULAMELA MUNICIPALITY	TSHASHU CONSULTING & PROJECT MANAGERS		CONTRACT NUMBER: 40/2023/2024		AS BUILT PLAN	SHEET 1 OF 1
SCALE ON REDUCED DRAWING		CHECKED BY	Thulamela Municipality Private Bag 2585 Tlokoeng 0950	P.O. BOX 887 P.O. BOX 1014 Tlokoeng 0950		PROFESSIONAL ENGINEERING SERVICES FOR SHAYANDIMA EXT 3 STREETS WITHIN THE THULAMELA MUNICIPALITY - PHASE 1		DATE	SCALE
		DRAWN BY		TEL: (015) 952-7500 FAX: (015) 952-4020		TYPICAL CROSS SECTION & PAVEMENT DESIGN		DATE	AS SHOWN
		CHECKED BY						DATE	
		CONSULT						DATE	
		OR						DATE	
		REVISION						DATE	
		DATE						DATE	
		No						DATE	